2005 Cadillac Escalade/Escalade ESV Owner Manual

Seats and Restraint Systems 1-1
Front Seats 1-3
Rear Seats 1-8
Safety Belts 1-28
Child Restraints 1-48
Airbag System 1-72
Restraint System Check 1-86

Features and Controls 2-1
Keys 2-3
Doors and Locks 2-8
Windows 2-14
Theft-Deterrent Systems 2-16
Starting and Operating Your Vehicle 2-18
Mirrors 2-30
OnStar® System 2-35
HomeLink® Transmitter 2-37
Storage Areas 2-41
Sunroof 2-45
Vehicle Personalization 2-46

Instrument Panel 3-1
Instrument Panel Overview 3-4
Climate Controls 3-22
Warning Lights, Gages, and Indicators 3-31
Driver Information Center (DIC) 3-49
Audio System(s) 3-69

Driving Your Vehicle 4-1
Your Driving, the Road, and Your Vehicle 4-2
Towing 4-53

Service and Appearance Care 5-1
Service 5-3
Fuel 5-5
Checking Things Under the Hood 5-10
All-Wheel Drive 5-45
Rear Axle 5-46
Front Axle 5-47
Headlamp Aiming 5-48
Bulb Replacement 5-51
Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement 5-59
Tires 5-60
Appearance Care 5-99
Vehicle Identification 5-107
Electrical System 5-108
Capacities and Specifications 5-119

Maintenance Schedule 6-1
Maintenance Schedule 6-2

Customer Assistance and Information 7-1
Customer Assistance and Information 7-2
Reporting Safety Defects 7-12

Index 1

GENERAL MOTORS, GM, the GM Emblem, CADILLAC, the CADILLAC Crest & Wreath, and the names ESCALADE ESCALADE/ESV are registered trademarks of General Motors Corporation.

This manual includes the latest information at the time it was printed. We reserve the right to make changes after that time without notice. For vehicles first sold in Canada, substitute the name “General Motors of Canada Limited” for Cadillac Motor Car Division whenever it appears in this manual.

Keep this manual in the vehicle, so it will be there if it is ever needed while you are on the road. If the vehicle is sold, leave the manual in the vehicle.

Canadian Owners

A French language copy of this manual can be obtained from your dealer or from:

Helm, Incorporated
P.O. Box 07130
Detroit, MI 48207

How to Use This Manual

Many people read the owner manual from beginning to end when they first receive their new vehicle. If this is done, it can help you learn about the features and controls for the vehicle. Pictures and words work together in the owner manual to explain things.

Index

A good place to quickly locate information about the vehicle is the Index in the back of the manual. It is an alphabetical list of what is in the manual and the page number where it can be found.

Litho in U.S.A.
Part No. 05ESCALADE A First Edition

©2004 General Motors Corporation. All Rights Reserved.

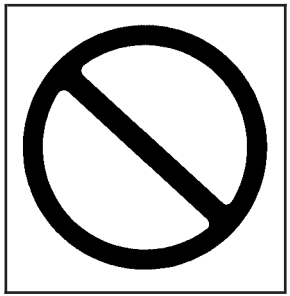
Safety Warnings and Symbols

There are a number of safety cautions in this book. We use a box and the word CAUTION to tell about things that could hurt you if you were to ignore the warning.

⚠ CAUTION:

These mean there is something that could hurt you or other people.

In the caution area, we tell you what the hazard is. Then we tell you what to do to help avoid or reduce the hazard. Please read these cautions. If you do not, you or others could be hurt.



You will also find a circle with a slash through it in this book. This safety symbol means “Do Not,” “Do Not do this” or “Do Not let this happen.”

Vehicle Damage Warnings

Also, in this manual you will find these notices:

Notice: **These mean there is something that could damage your vehicle.**

A notice tells about something that can damage the vehicle. Many times, this damage would not be covered by your vehicle's warranty, and it could be costly. But the notice will tell what to do to help avoid the damage.

When you read other manuals, you might see CAUTION and NOTICE warnings in different colors or in different words.

There are also warning labels on the vehicle. They use the same words, CAUTION or NOTICE.

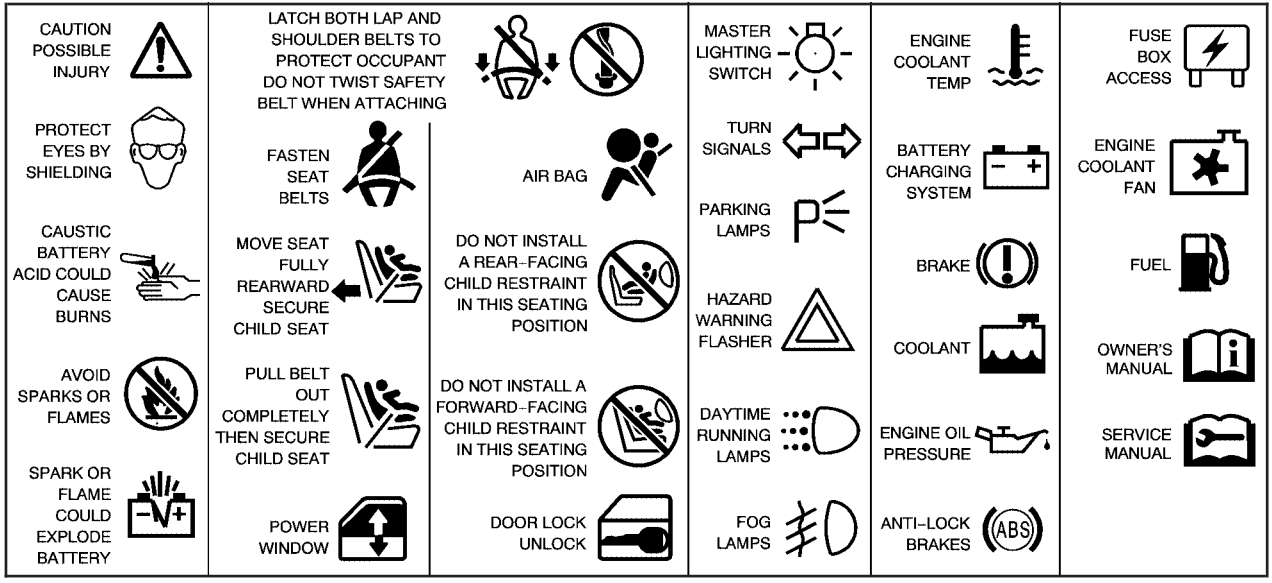
Vehicle Symbols

The vehicle has components and labels that use symbols instead of text. Symbols are shown along with the text describing the operation or information relating to a specific component, control, message, gage, or indicator.

If you need help figuring out a specific name of a component, gage, or indicator, reference the following topics:

- Seats and Restraint Systems in Section 1
- Features and Controls in Section 2
- Instrument Panel Overview in Section 3
- Climate Controls in Section 3
- Warning Lights, Gages, and Indicators in Section 3
- Audio System(s) in Section 3
- Engine Compartment Overview in Section 5

These are some examples of symbols that may be found on the vehicle:



NOTES

Section 1 Seats and Restraint Systems

Front Seats 1-3
Power Seats 1-3
Power Lumbar 1-4
Heated Seats 1-4
Heated and Cooled Seats 1-5
Reclining Seatbacks 1-6
Head Restraints 1-7

Rear Seats 1-8
Rear Seat Operation 1-8
Heated Seats 1-10
Heated and Cooled Seats 1-10
60/40 Split Bench Seat 1-11
50/50 Split Bench Seat 1-13
Bench Seat 1-19
Bucket Seats 1-25

Safety Belts 1-28
Safety Belts: They Are for Everyone 1-28
Questions and Answers About Safety Belts 1-32
How to Wear Safety Belts Properly 1-33
Driver Position 1-33
Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy 1-40
Right Front Passenger Position 1-41
Center Passenger Position 1-41
Rear Seat Passengers 1-42
Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides for Children and Small Adults 1-45
Safety Belt Extender 1-47

Child Restraints 1-48
Older Children 1-48
Infants and Young Children 1-50
Child Restraint Systems 1-54
Where to Put the Restraint 1-57
Top Strap 1-58
Top Strap Anchor Location 1-60
Lower Anchorages and Top Tethers for Children (LATCH System) 1-62
Securing a Child Restraint Designed for the LATCH System 1-64
Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Outside Seat Position 1-65
Securing a Child Restraint in a Center Rear Seat Position 1-67
Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position 1-68

Airbag System 1-72
Where Are the Airbags? 1-74
When Should an Airbag Inflate? 1-77
What Makes an Airbag Inflate? 1-78
How Does an Airbag Restrain? 1-78
What Will You See After an Airbag Inflates? 1-79
Passenger Sensing System 1-80
Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 1-85
Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 1-86

Restraint System Check 1-86
Checking Your Restraint Systems 1-86
Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash 1-87

Front Seats

Power Seats

The power seat controls are located on the outboard edge of the front seats.

Horizontal Control: This control adjusts the seat cushion.

- Raise or lower the front of the seat by raising or lowering the forward edge of the control. Raise or lower the rear of the seat by raising or lowering the rear edge of the control.
- Move the seat forward or rearward by moving the whole control toward the front or toward the rear of the vehicle.
- Lower or raise the entire seat cushion by moving the whole control up or down.

Vertical Control: This control adjusts the seatback.

Move the reclining front seatback rearward or forward by moving the control toward the rear or toward the front of the vehicle. This adjusts the angle of the seatback.

For more information on the reclining seatbacks, see *Reclining Seatbacks on page 1-6*.

Your vehicle may have a memory function which allows seat settings to be saved and recalled. See *Memory Seat on page 2-46* for more information.

Power Lumbar

Your vehicle's seats may be equipped with power lumbar.

You can increase or decrease lumbar support in an area of the lower seatback with this control, located on the outboard sides of the front seat(s).

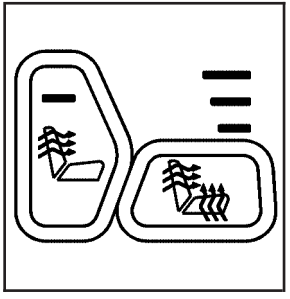
To increase support, press and hold the front of the control. To decrease support, press and hold the rear of the control. Let go of the control when the lower seatback reaches the desired level of support.

You can also reshape the side wing area of the lower seatback for more lateral support.

To increase support, press and hold the top of the control. To decrease support, press and hold the bottom of the control. Let go of the control when the lower seatback reaches the desired level of support.

Your vehicle may have a memory function which allows seat settings to be saved and recalled. See *Memory Seat on page 2-46* for more information.

Heated Seats



The buttons used to control this feature are located on the front doors. The engine must be running for the heated seat feature to work.

To heat the entire seat, press the horizontal button with the heated seat symbol. Press the button to cycle through the temperature settings of high, medium and low and to turn the heated seat off. Indicator lights will glow to designate the level of heat selected, three for high, two for medium, and one for low.

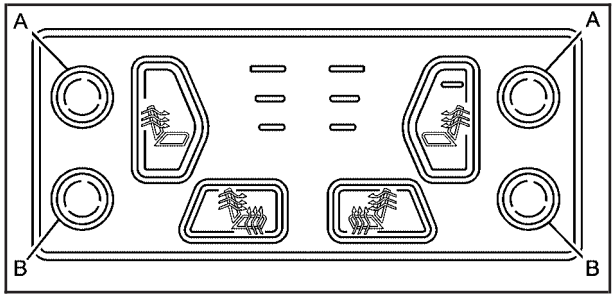
The low setting warms the seatback and cushion until the seat temperature is near body temperature. The medium and high settings heat the seatback and seat cushion to a slightly higher temperature. You will be able to feel heat in about two minutes.

To heat only the seatback, press the vertical button with the heated seatback symbol. An indicator light on the seatback button will glow to designate that only the seatback is being heated. Additional presses of the seatback button will cycle through the heat levels for the seatback only. Press the horizontal button again to heat the whole seat.

The heated front seats will shut off automatically when the ignition is turned off.

Your vehicle also has heated rear seats. See *Heated Seats on page 1-10*.

Heated and Cooled Seats



Your vehicle may be equipped with this feature. The buttons used to control this feature are located on the instrument panel, under the radio.

With the heated and cooled seats you can choose high, medium or low heat or cool settings. The seats will only operate either in the heat or cool mode; for example, you cannot cool the seat cushion while heating the seatback. An amber light will flash when a setting cannot be selected.

To operate the heated and cooled seats, do the following:

1. Press the red heat button (A) or the blue cool button (B).
2. Choose one of the following:

(Seatback Only): This can only be used for the heat feature. Press this button to heat the seatback and cycle through the heat settings of high, medium, low and off. Red indicator lights will glow for each heat setting chosen: three lights for high, two for medium and one for low. A light in the button will also glow to indicate the seatback heat is on.

(Entire Seat): Press this button to heat or cool the entire seat and cycle through the settings of high, medium, low and off. Red (for heat) or blue (for cool) indicator lights will glow for each setting chosen: three lights for high, two for medium and one for low.

Reclining Seatbacks

Your vehicle's front seatbacks have a recline feature which is described earlier. See *Power Seats on page 1-3*.

But don't have a seatback reclined if your vehicle is moving.

⚠ CAUTION:

Sitting in a reclined position when your vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even if you buckle up, your safety belts can not do their job when you are reclined like this.

The shoulder belt can not do its job. In a crash, you could go into it, receiving neck or other injuries.

The lap belt can not do its job either. In a crash the belt could go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not at your pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries.

For proper protection when the vehicle is in motion, have the seatback upright. Then sit well back in the seat and wear your safety belt properly.

Head Restraints

Adjust your head restraint so that the top of the restraint is closest to the top of your head. This position reduces the chance of a neck injury in a crash.

Pull straight up on the head restraint to raise it and push it down to lower it.

The front head restraints can also be tilted forward in addition to being slid up or down. To tilt either of the front head restraints do the following:

Pull the head restraint toward you until you hear a click. Then let go. The head restraint will stay in this position unless you pull it forward more until another click is heard. There are four positions available: initial position, first click, second click, and third click. After the third position (three clicks) is reached, pulling the head restraint farther will release it back to the normal upright position.

The rear head restraints can be slid up or down just as the front head restraints, but they do not tilt.

Rear Seats

Rear Seat Operation

Entering or Exiting the Third Row Seats

Escalade: To enter or exit the third row seat you must fold the second row seat down following the instructions later in this section. See “Folding the Seatback” under *60/40 Split Bench Seat on page 1-11*. If you are exiting the third row seat with no assistance do the following:

1. Reach over the second row seat and pull up on the strap loop. Then pull the seat cushion up and push it forward.

2. Next, push the seatback forward until it is flat with the floor.

Be sure to return the seat to the passenger position when finished. Pull forward and push rearward on the seat to make sure it is locked in place.

Escalade ESV: The passenger's side of the second row 60/40 or rear bucket seat has an easy entry/exit feature. This makes it easy to get in and out of the third row seat.

To operate the easy entry seat, do the following:

1. Lift the release lever on the back of the seat, upward.
2. Tilt the seatback toward the front of the vehicle and the seat will release.
3. Pull (push if you are exiting the third row with no assistance) the seat forward until it stops.

⚠ CAUTION:

If the seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always press rearward on the seatback to be sure it is locked.

⚠ CAUTION:

A safety belt that is improperly routed, not properly attached, or twisted will not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. After raising the rear seatback, always check to be sure that the safety belts are properly routed and attached, and are not twisted.

Be sure to return the seat to the passenger position when finished. Pull forward and push rearward on the seat to make sure it is locked in place.

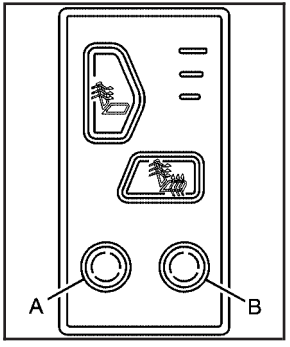
Heated Seats

If your vehicle has this feature, the buttons used to control this feature are located on the back of the center console. The engine must be running for the heated seat feature to work.

To heat the seat, press the button to cycle through the temperature settings of high and low. Press the button a third time to turn the feature off. An indicator light will glow for each heat setting when the feature is operating.

The heated rear seats will shut off automatically when the ignition is turned off.

Heated and Cooled Seats



Your vehicle may be equipped with this feature. The buttons used to control this feature are located on the back of the center console.

With the heated and cooled seats you can choose high, medium or low heat or cool settings. The seats will only operate either in the heat or cool mode; for example, you cannot cool the seat cushion while heating the seatback. An amber light will flash when a setting cannot be selected.

To operate the heated and cooled seats, do the following:

1. Press the red heat button (A) or the blue cool button (B).
2. Choose one of the following:

(Seatback Only): This can only be used for the heat feature. Press this button to heat the seatback and cycle through the heat settings of high, medium, low and off. Red indicator lights will glow for each heat setting chosen: three lights for high, two for medium and one for low. A light in the button will also glow to indicate the seatback heat is on.

(Entire Seat): Press this button to heat or cool the entire seat and cycle through the settings of high, medium, low and off. Red (for heat) or blue (for cool) indicator lights will glow for each setting chosen: three lights for high, two for medium and one for low.

60/40 Split Bench Seat

If your vehicle has a 60/40 split bench, the seatbacks can be folded to give you more cargo space.

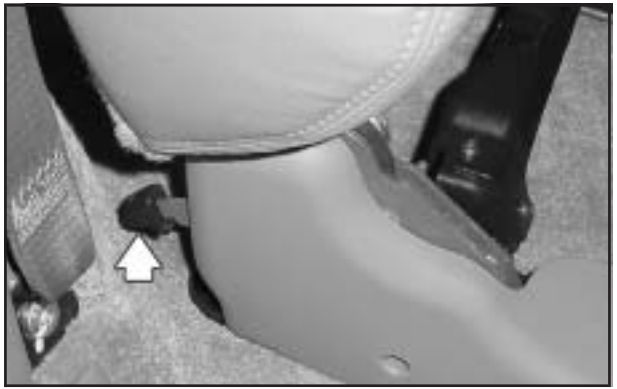
Folding the Seatbacks (60/40 Split Bench Seat)

The rear seat may have a 60/40 split seat which may be folded down to create a load floor and give you more cargo space. On the Escalade, the rear seatbacks are equipped with rearward folding head restraints. When the seatback is being folded down, the head restraint will automatically fold rearward.

To fold the rear seat, do the following:

1. Make sure that nothing is under or in front of the seat.

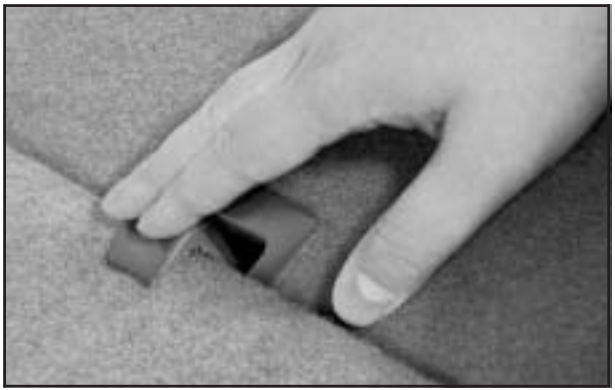
2. Pull up on the strap loop located at the rear of the seat cushion and flip the seat cushion forward.
3. **Escalade:** Pull the seatback forward and fold it down until it is flat.



Escalade ESV: On the passenger side of Escalade ESV models, the lever at the base of the seat must be pulled up to release the seatback. Pull the seatback forward and fold it down until it is flat.

If the seatback cannot fold flat because it interferes with the cushion, try moving the front seat forward and/or bringing the front seatback more upright.

Once the seatbacks are folded down, on Escalade ESV models only, the rear seat footwell area will be exposed and will have to be covered by the load floor panel(s). To create a load floor, do the following:



1. Release the panels from the seatbacks by pushing forward on the latches.
2. Then fold the panels back to cover the rear seat footwell area.

Returning the Seats to an Upright Position

⚠ CAUTION:

If the seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always press rearward on the seatback to be sure it is locked.

⚠ CAUTION:

A safety belt that is improperly routed, not properly attached, or twisted will not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. After raising the rear seatback, always check to be sure that the safety belts are properly routed and attached, and are not twisted.

To return the seat to the upright position, do the following:

1. On Escalade ESV models, lift the load floor panels and latch them into the seatback.
2. Lift the seatback up and push it rearward all the way.
3. Lower the seat cushion until it latches into position.
4. Pull forward on the seatback and up on the seat cushion to make sure the seat is securely in place.
5. On Escalade models, return the head restraints to the upright position.
6. Check to see that the safety belt buckles on the driver's side seat are accessible to the outboard and center occupants and are not under the seat cushions.

50/50 Split Bench Seat

If your vehicle has a 50/50 split bench, the seatback(s) can be folded and the entire seat(s) tilted or removed from the vehicle.

Folding the Seatbacks

To fold the seatbacks, do the following:

1. Pull up on the release lever labeled 1 located on the rear of the seatback, and push the seatback forward.

Unfolding the Seatbacks

⚠ CAUTION:

If the seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always press rearward on the seatback to be sure it is locked.

To return the seatbacks to the passenger position, do the following:

1. Pull up on the release lever labeled 1 and then pull up on the seatback or the assist strap located on the outboard side of the seat until the seatback locks into the upright position.

2. Push forward on the seatback to make sure it is locked into position.

Tilting the 50/50 Split Bench Seat

1. Fold the seatbacks forward using the instructions listed previously.

2. Unlatch the seat from the floor by pulling up on the lever labeled 2 located on the rear of the seat.

3. Lift the rear of the seat up from the floor and push it forward until it locks into place. You will not be able to unlatch the seat from the floor unless the seatback is folded down.

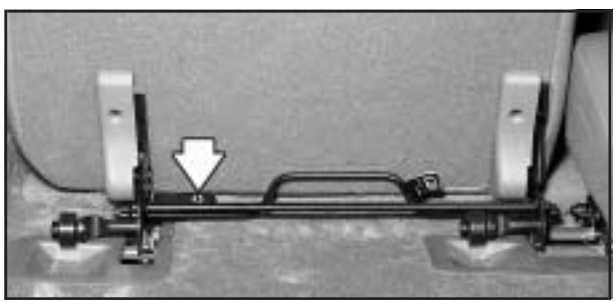
The seat will now remain locked in the upright position.

Returning the Seat(s) to an Upright Position

⚠ CAUTION:

If the seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always press rearward on the seatback to be sure it is locked.

To return the seatback to an upright position, do the following:



1. Pull the lever labeled 3 toward you.

2. While still holding the lever 3 toward you, grasp the top of the seat and pull it toward you slightly.
3. Let go of lever 3 and pull the seat completely down.
4. Push down on the seat firmly. Try pulling it up to be sure it is locked into place.

5. Pull up on the release lever labeled 1 and then pull up on the seatback or the assist strap located on the outboard side of the seat until the seatback locks into the upright position.

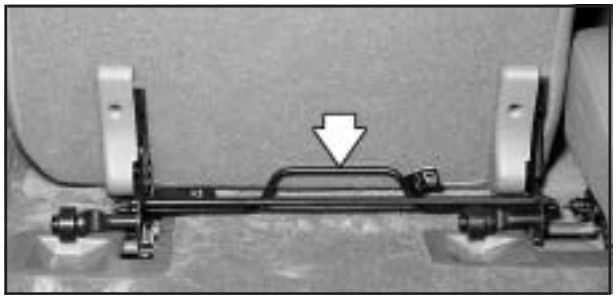
Removing the 50/50 Split Bench Seats

To remove the 50/50 split bench seat, do the following:

1. Open the liftgate.

2. Fold the seatback forward onto the seat cushion by using the lever labeled 1. The seat cannot be removed unless the seatback is folded.

3. To unlatch the rear of the seat from the floor, pull up on the release lever labeled 2 at the rear of the seat, and lift the rear of the seat up from the floor.



4. Squeeze the release handle while pulling the seat out.
5. While holding the rear of the seat up, roll the seat out of the vehicle.

Replacing the 50/50 Split Bench Seat

⚠ CAUTION:

If the seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always press rearward on the seatback to be sure it is locked.

⚠ CAUTION:

A seat that is not locked into place properly can move around in a collision or sudden stop. People in the vehicle could be injured. Be sure to lock the seat into place properly when installing it.

⚠ CAUTION:

A safety belt that is improperly routed, not properly attached, or twisted will not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. After raising the rear seatback, always check to be sure that the safety belts are properly routed and attached, and are not twisted.

To replace the 50/50 split bench, do the following:

1. While holding the rear of the seat up, slide the front wheels into the slots on the floor. The front latches should lock into place. If the latches do not lock, try tilting the rear of the seat upwards.

2. Once the latches are engaged, let the seat drop into place. Release the lever labeled 1 and pull the seatback up using the assist strap on the outboard side of the seat to return it to its upright position.

3. Push and pull on the seat to make sure it is locked into place. The seatback cannot be raised to the upright position unless the seat is secured to the floor.

Bench Seat

If your vehicle has a full bench, the seatback can be folded and the seat can be tilted or removed from the vehicle.

Folding the Seatback

⚠ CAUTION:

If the seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always press rearward on the seatback to be sure it is locked.

To fold the seatback on the bench seat, do the following:

Pull up on the release lever labeled 1 located on the rear of the seatback and push the seatback forward.

Unfolding the Seatback

1. To return the seatback to an upright position, pull up on the release lever labeled 1 and then pull up on the seatback until it locks into the upright position.

2. Push and pull on the seatback to check that it is locked into place.

Tilting the Full Bench Seat

⚠ CAUTION:

If the seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always press rearward on the seatback to be sure it is locked.

1. Fold the seatbacks forward using the instructions listed previously.

2. Unlatch the seat from the floor by pulling up on the lever labeled 2 located on the rear of the seat.

3. Lift the rear of the seat up from the floor and push it forward. You will not be able to unlatch the seat from the floor unless the seatback is folded down.

⚠ CAUTION:

If the support rod is not properly engaged, the folded third row seat could come loose in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to people and damage to your vehicle. Always be sure the support rod is properly engaged when the third row seat is folded forward.

4. While holding the seat forward, pull the support rod out from the retainer clips and flip it down until it latches into place.

The seat will now remain in the upright position.

Returning the Seat to an Upright Position

To return the seatback to the upright position, do the following:

1. Pull the lever on the support rod bracket until it unlatches from the seat bracket.
2. Place the support rod back into the storage position.
3. Pull the seat toward you and push firmly down until the seat latches in the floor.
4. Try pulling it up to be sure it is locked into place.
5. Pull up on the release lever labeled 1 and then pull up on the seatback until the seatback locks into the upright position.

Removing the Bench Seat

To remove the bench seat, do the following:

1. Open the liftgate.

2. Fold the seatback forward onto the seat cushion by using the lever labeled 1. The seat cannot be removed unless the seatback is folded.

3. To unlatch the rear of the seat from the floor, pull up on the release lever labeled 2 at the rear of the seat and lift the rear of the seat up from the floor.

4. Pull on the release strap located in the lower middle of the seat to unlatch the seat from the floor and pull the seat out. Use one hand to pull the release strap and the other on the handle to pull the seat out.

5. While holding the rear of the seat up, roll the seat out of the vehicle.

Replacing the Bench Seat

⚠ CAUTION:

If the seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always press rearward on the seatback to be sure it is locked.

⚠ CAUTION:

A seat that is not locked into place properly can move around in a collision or sudden stop. People in the vehicle could be injured. Be sure to lock the seat into place properly when installing it.

⚠ CAUTION:

A safety belt that is improperly routed, not properly attached, or twisted will not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. After raising the rear seatback, always check to be sure that the safety belts are properly routed and attached, and are not twisted.

To replace the bench seat, do the following:

1. While holding the rear of the seat up, slide the front wheels into the slots on the floor. The front latches should lock into place. If the latches do not lock, try tilting the rear of the seat upwards.
2. Once the latches are engaged, let the seat drop into place. Release the lever labeled 1 to return the seatback to its upright position.
3. Push and pull on the seat to make sure it is locked into place. The seatback cannot be raised to the upright position unless the seat is secured to the floor.

Bucket Seats

If your vehicle has bucket seats, the seatbacks can be reclined and the seats can be folded to give you more cargo room.

Reclining the Seatbacks

To recline the seatback, do the following:

1. Pull up the lever located under the seat cushion. Escalade lever shown, Escalade ESV lever similar.

2. Release the lever to lock the seatback where you want it. Pull the lever again without pushing on the seatback and the seatback will go to an upright position.

Folding the Seatbacks

The seatbacks on the bucket seats may be folded forward to give you more cargo space.

To fold the seatbacks on the bucket seats, do the following:

1. Pull up on the strap loop located at the rear of the seat cushion and pull the seat cushion up and fold it forward.

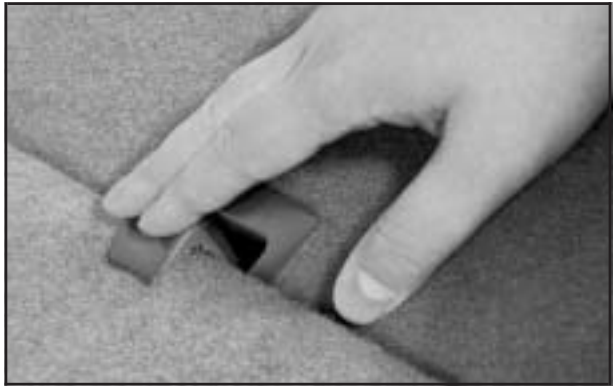
2. Pull the seatback release lever upward and pull the seatback up and fold it down until it is flat. Escalade lever shown, Escalade ESV lever similar. On the Escalade ESV models, first remove the headrest and store it on the top of the seat cushion as shown next.

Escalade ESV Only

Pull the headrest out from the seatback and slide the pins into the holes provided in the top of the seat cushion.

If the seatback cannot fold flat because it interferes with the cushion, try moving the front seat forward and/or bringing the front seatback more upright.

Once the seatbacks are folded down, on Escalade ESV models only, the rear seat footwell area will be exposed and will have to be covered by the load floor panel. To create a load floor, do the following:



1. Release the panels from the seatbacks by pushing forward on the latches.
2. Then fold the panels back to cover the rear seat footwell area.

Returning the Seatbacks to an Upright Position

⚠ CAUTION:

If the seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always press rearward on the seatback to be sure it is locked.

To return the seatbacks to the upright position, do the following:

1. On Escalade ESV models, lift the load floor panels and latch them into the seatback.
2. Lift the seatback up and push it rearward all the way. On Escalade ESV models, move the headrest to the seatback.
3. Lower the seat cushion until it latches into position.
4. Pull forward on the seatback and up on the seat cushion to make sure the seat is securely in place.
5. On Escalade models, return the headrests to the upright position.

Safety Belts

Safety Belts: They Are for Everyone

This part of the manual tells you how to use safety belts properly. It also tells you some things you should not do with safety belts.

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not let anyone ride where he or she can not wear a safety belt properly. If you are in a crash and you are not wearing a safety belt, your injuries can be much worse. You can hit things inside the vehicle or be ejected from it. You can be seriously injured or killed. In the same crash, you might not be, if you are buckled up. Always fasten your safety belt, and check that your passengers' belts are fastened properly too.

⚠ CAUTION:

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.

Your vehicle has a light that comes on as a reminder to buckle up. See *Safety Belt Reminder Light on page 3-33*.

In most states and in all Canadian provinces, the law says to wear safety belts. Here is why: *They work*.

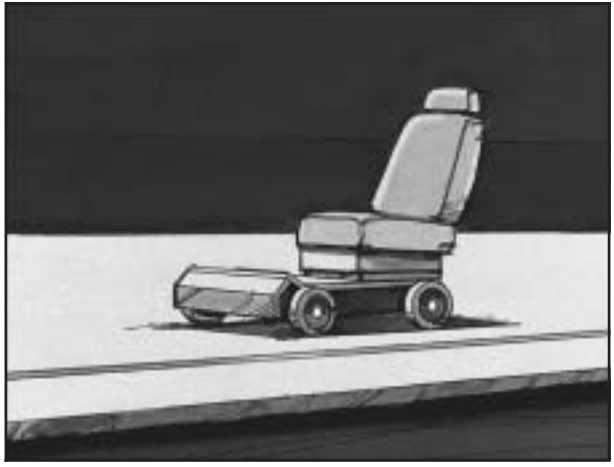
You never know if you will be in a crash. If you do have a crash, you do not know if it will be a bad one.

A few crashes are mild, and some crashes can be so serious that even buckled up, a person would not survive. But most crashes are in between. In many of them, people who buckle up can survive and sometimes walk away. Without belts they could have been badly hurt or killed.

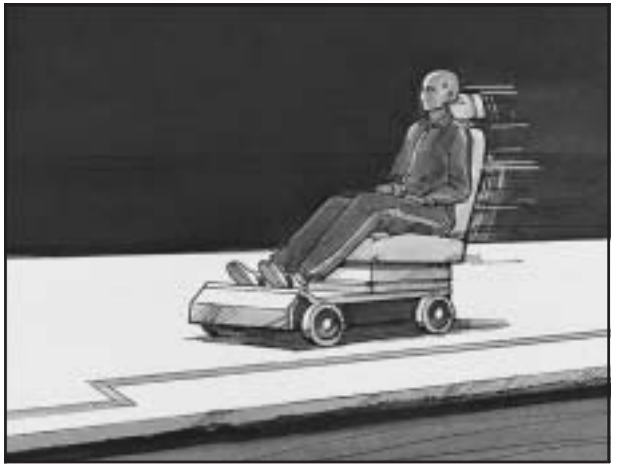
After more than 30 years of safety belts in vehicles, the facts are clear. In most crashes buckling up does matter...a lot!

Why Safety Belts Work

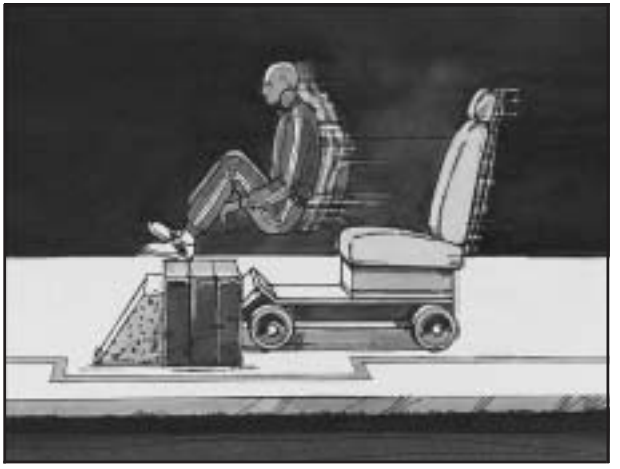
When you ride in or on anything, you go as fast as it goes.



Take the simplest vehicle. Suppose it is just a seat on wheels.

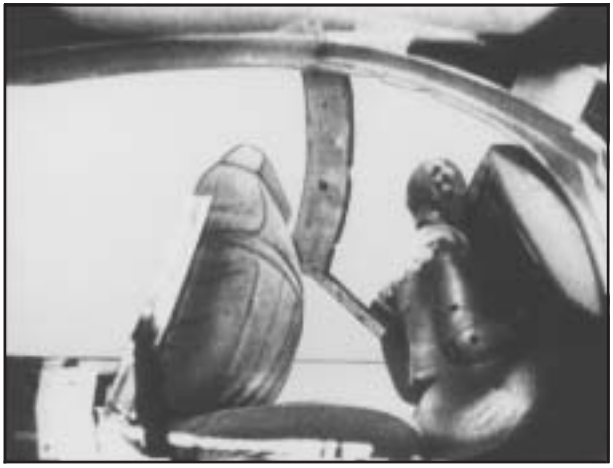


Put someone on it.



Get it up to speed. Then stop the vehicle. The rider does not stop.

The person keeps going until stopped by something. In a real vehicle, it could be the windshield...



or the instrument panel...

or the safety belts!

With safety belts, you slow down as the vehicle does. You get more time to stop. You stop over more distance, and your strongest bones take the forces. That is why safety belts make such good sense.

Questions and Answers About Safety Belts

Q: Will I be trapped in the vehicle after an accident if I am wearing a safety belt?

A: You *could* be — whether you are wearing a safety belt or not. But you can unbuckle a safety belt, even if you are upside down. And your chance of being conscious during and after an accident, so you *can* unbuckle and get out, is *much* greater if you are belted.

Q: If my vehicle has airbags, why should I have to wear safety belts?

A: Airbags are in many vehicles today and will be in most of them in the future. But they are supplemental systems only; so they work *with* safety belts — not instead of them. Every airbag system ever offered for sale has required the use of safety belts. Even if you are in a vehicle that has airbags, you still have to buckle up to get the most protection. That is true not only in frontal collisions, but especially in side and other collisions.

Q: If I am a good driver, and I never drive far from home, why should I wear safety belts?

A: You may be an excellent driver, but if you are in an accident — even one that is not your fault — you and your passengers can be hurt. Being a good driver does not protect you from things beyond your control, such as bad drivers.

Most accidents occur within 25 miles (40 km) of home. And the greatest number of serious injuries and deaths occur at speeds of less than 40 mph (65 km/h).

Safety belts are for everyone.

How to Wear Safety Belts Properly

This part is only for people of adult size.

Be aware that there are special things to know about safety belts and children. And there are different rules for smaller children and babies. If a child will be riding in your vehicle, see *Older Children on page 1-48* or *Infants and Young Children on page 1-50*. Follow those rules for everyone's protection.

First, you will want to know which restraint systems your vehicle has.

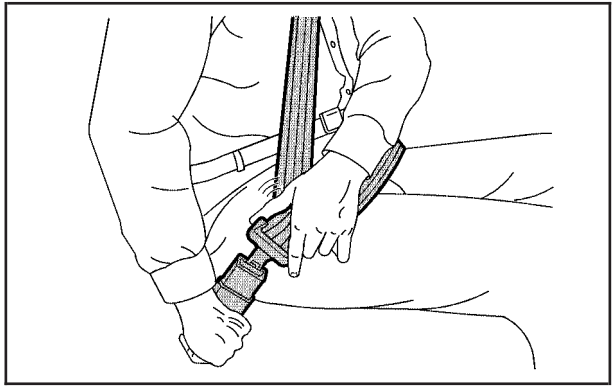
We will start with the driver position.

Driver Position

Lap-Shoulder Belt

The driver has a lap-shoulder belt. Here is how to wear it properly.

1. Close and lock the door.
2. Adjust the seat so you can sit up straight. To see how, see "Seats" in the Index.

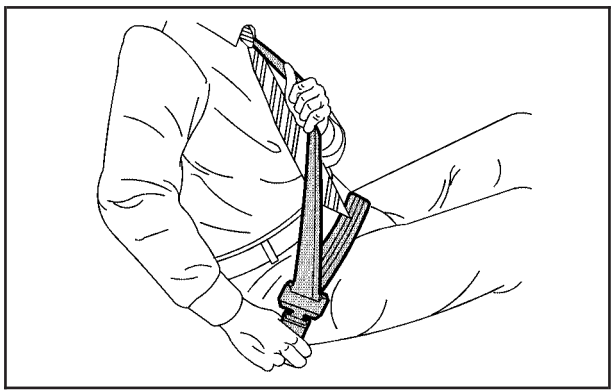


3. Pick up the latch plate and pull the belt across you. Do not let it get twisted.

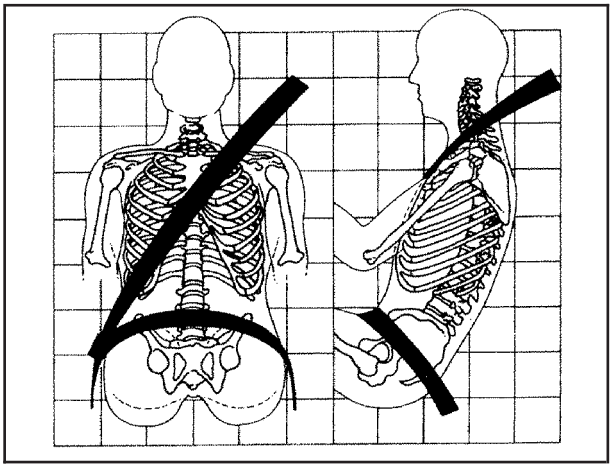
4. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Pull up on the latch plate to make sure it is secure. If the belt is not long enough, see *Safety Belt Extender on page 1-47*.

   Make sure the release button on the buckle is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if you ever had to.



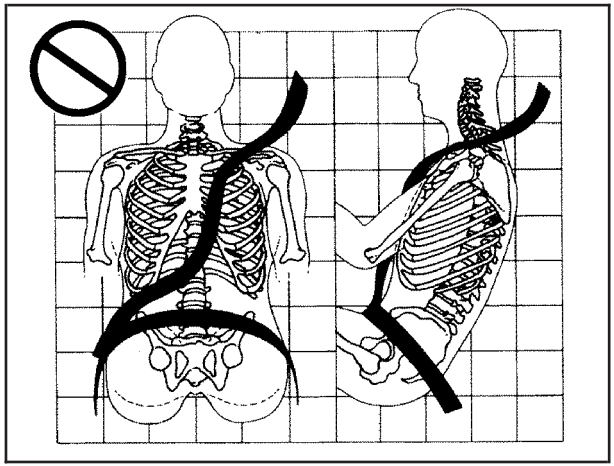
5. To make the lap part tight, pull down on the buckle end of the belt as you pull up on the shoulder belt.



The lap part of the belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs. In a crash, this applies force to the strong pelvic bones. And you will be less likely to slide under the lap belt. If you slid under it, the belt would apply force at your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.

The safety belt locks if there is a sudden stop or a crash.

Q: What is wrong with this?

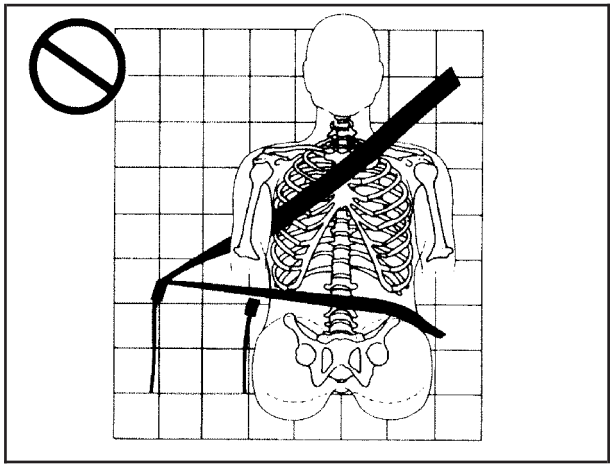


A: The shoulder belt is too loose. It will not give nearly as much protection this way.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously hurt if your shoulder belt is too loose. In a crash, you would move forward too much, which could increase injury. The shoulder belt should fit against your body.

Q: What is wrong with this?

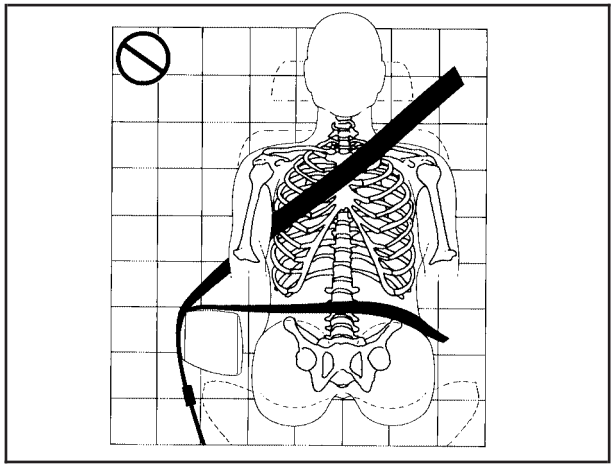


A: The belt is buckled in the wrong place.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously injured if your belt is buckled in the wrong place like this. In a crash, the belt would go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not at the pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries. Always buckle your belt into the buckle nearest you.

Q: What is wrong with this?

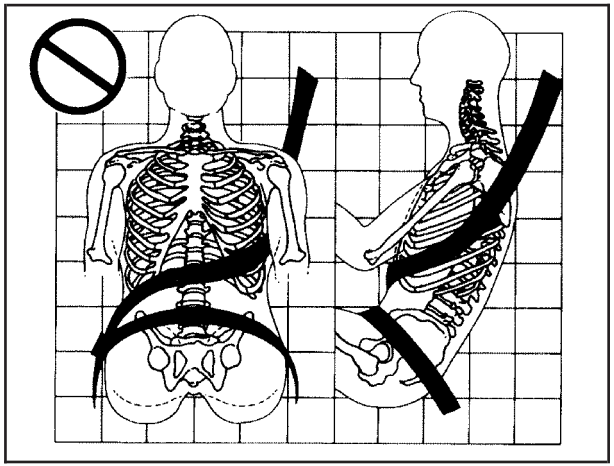


A: The belt is over an armrest.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously injured if your belt goes over an armrest like this. The belt would be much too high. In a crash, you can slide under the belt. The belt force would then be applied at the abdomen, not at the pelvic bones, and that could cause serious or fatal injuries. Be sure the belt goes under the armrests.

Q: What is wrong with this?

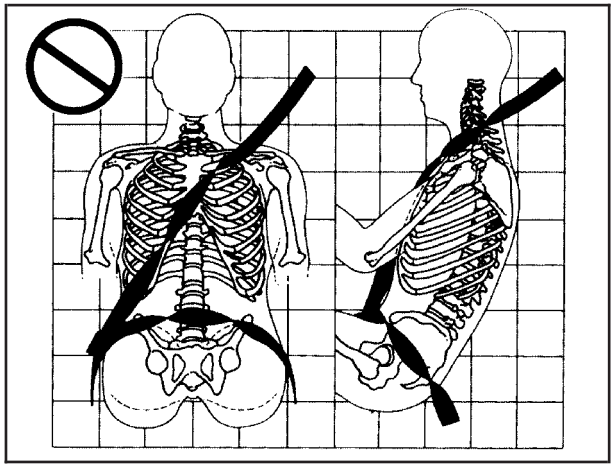


A: The shoulder belt is worn under the arm. It should be worn over the shoulder at all times.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously injured if you wear the shoulder belt under your arm. In a crash, your body would move too far forward, which would increase the chance of head and neck injury. Also, the belt would apply too much force to the ribs, which are not as strong as shoulder bones. You could also severely injure internal organs like your liver or spleen.

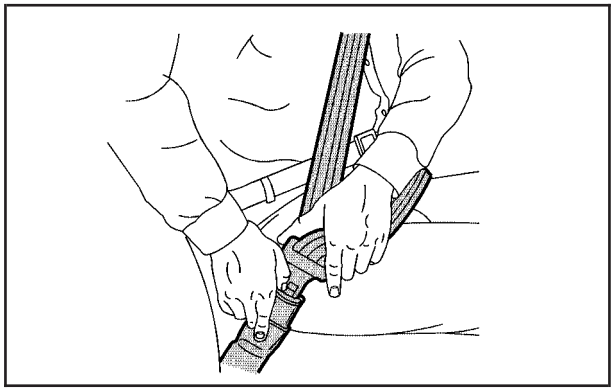
Q: What wrong with this?



A: The belt is twisted across the body.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously injured by a twisted belt. In a crash, you would not have the full width of the belt to spread impact forces. If a belt is twisted, make it straight so it can work properly, or ask your dealer to fix it.

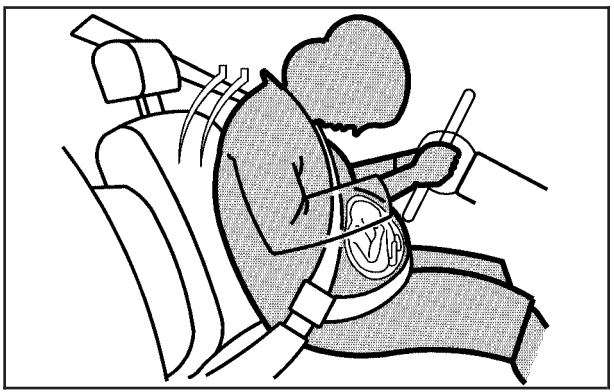


To unlatch the belt, just push the button on the buckle. The belt should go back out of the way.

Before you close the door, be sure the belt is out of the way. If you slam the door on it, you can damage both the belt and your vehicle.

Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy

Safety belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts.



A pregnant woman should wear a lap-shoulder belt, and the lap portion should be worn as low as possible, below the rounding, throughout the pregnancy.

The best way to protect the fetus is to protect the mother. When a safety belt is worn properly, it is more likely that the fetus will not be hurt in a crash. For pregnant women, as for anyone, the key to making safety belts effective is wearing them properly.

Right Front Passenger Position

To learn how to wear the right front passenger's safety belt properly, see *Driver Position on page 1-33*.

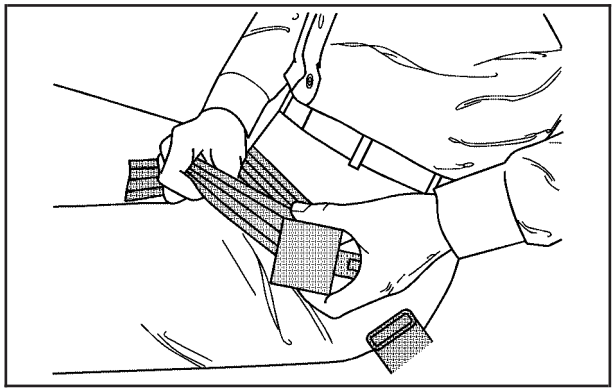
The right front passenger's safety belt works the same way as the driver's safety belt — except for one thing. If you ever pull the shoulder portion of the belt out all the way, you will engage the child restraint locking feature which may turn off the passenger's frontal airbag. If this happens unintentionally, just let the belt go back all the way and start again.

Center Passenger Position

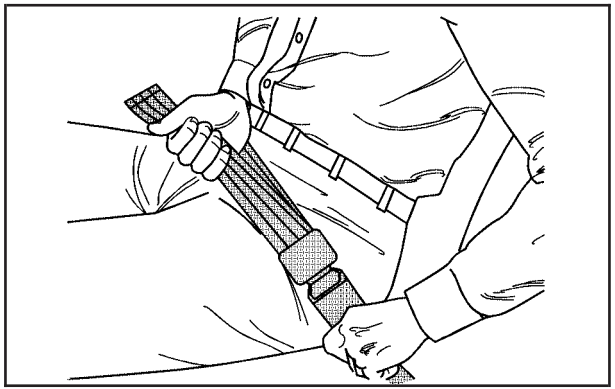
Second Row — Lap-Shoulder Belt

When you sit in the center seat position in the second row you have a lap-shoulder belt which works the same way as the rear outside seat positions. To learn how to wear this belt, see "Lap-Shoulder Belt" under *Rear Seat Passengers on page 1-42*.

Third Row — Lap Belt



When you sit in the center seating position in the third row, you have a lap safety belt, which has no retractor. To make the belt longer, tilt the latch plate and pull it along the belt.



To make the belt shorter, pull its free end as shown until the belt is snug. Buckle, position and release it the same way as the lap part of a lap-shoulder belt. If the belt is not long enough, see *Safety Belt Extender on page 1-47*.

Make sure the release button on the buckle is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if you ever had to.

Rear Seat Passengers

It is very important for rear seat passengers to buckle up! Accident statistics show that unbelted people in the rear seat are hurt more often in crashes than those who are wearing safety belts.

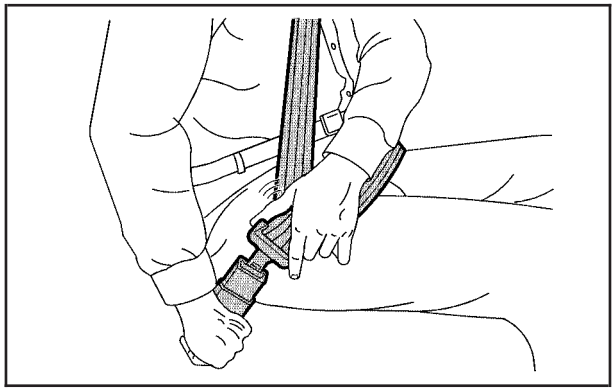
Rear passengers who are not safety belted can be thrown out of the vehicle in a crash. And they can strike others in the vehicle who are wearing safety belts.

Rear Seat Outside Passenger Positions

The positions next to the windows have lap-shoulder belts.

Lap-Shoulder Belt

Here is how to wear a lap-shoulder belt properly.



1. Pick up the latch plate and pull the belt across you. Do not let it get twisted.

   The shoulder belt may lock if you pull the belt across you very quickly. If this happens, let the belt go back slightly to unlock it. Then pull the belt across you more slowly.

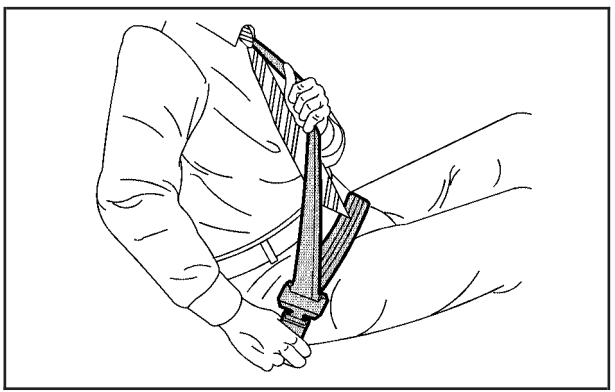
2. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Pull up on the latch plate to make sure it is secure.

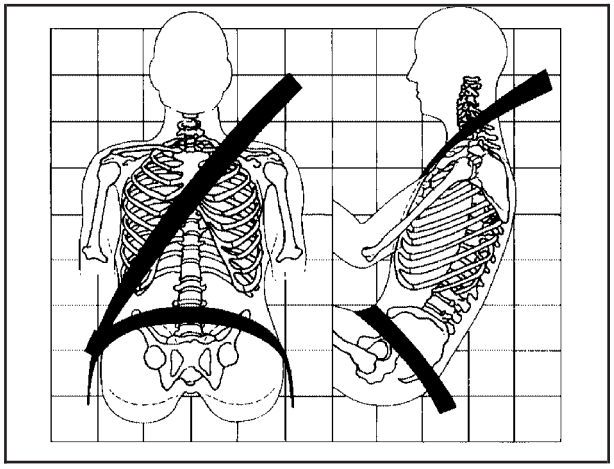
   When the shoulder belt is pulled out all the way, it will lock. If it does, let it go back all the way and start again.

   If the belt is not long enough, see *Safety Belt Extender on page 1-47*.

   Make sure the release button on the buckle is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if you ever had to.



3. To make the lap part tight, pull down on the buckle end of the belt as you pull up on the shoulder part.

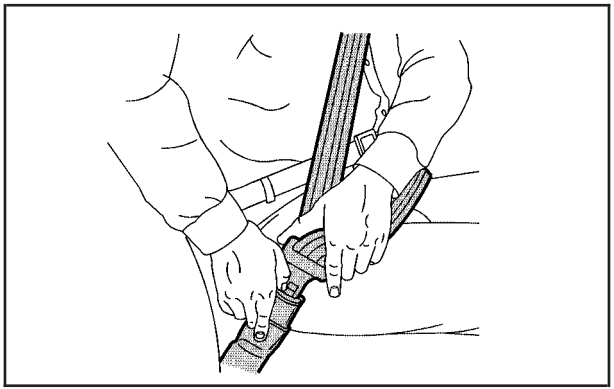


The lap part of the belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs. In a crash, this applies force to the strong pelvic bones. And you would be less likely to slide under the lap belt. If you slid under it, the belt would apply force at your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces.

The safety belt locks if there is a sudden stop or a crash.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be seriously hurt if your shoulder belt is too loose. In a crash, you would move forward too much, which could increase injury. The shoulder belt should fit against your body.

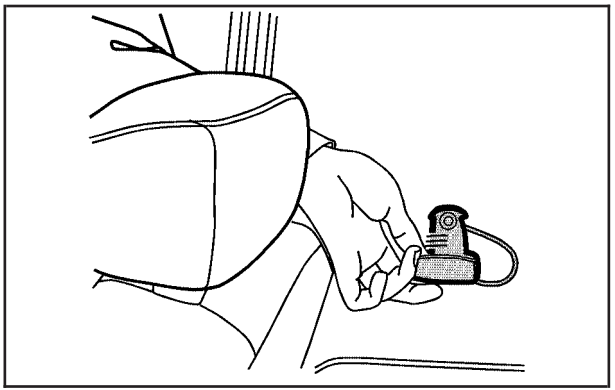


To unlatch the belt, just push the button on the buckle.

Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides for Children and Small Adults

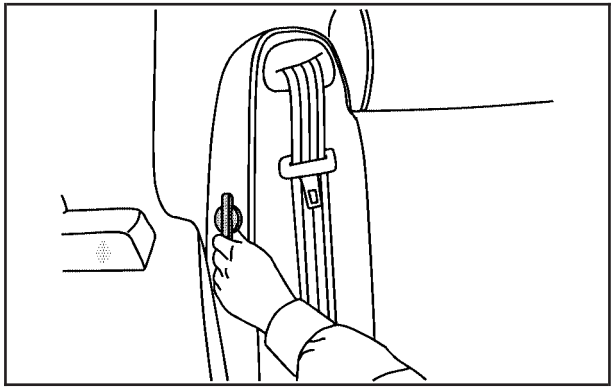
Rear shoulder belt comfort guides will provide added safety belt comfort for older children who have outgrown booster seats and for small adults. When installed on a shoulder belt, the comfort guide better positions the belt away from the neck and head.

There is one guide for each passenger position in the rear seats. Here is how to install a comfort guide and use the safety belt:



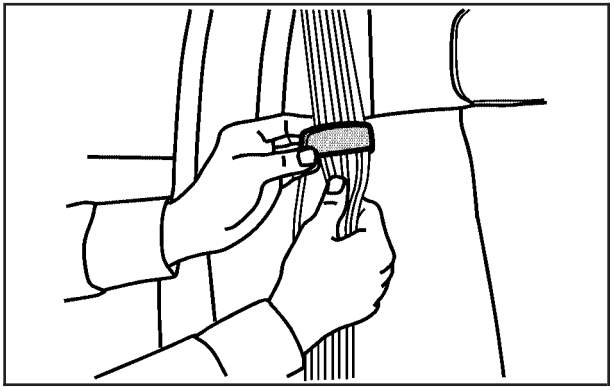
Second Row Seat

1. For the second row, remove the guide from its storage clip on the trim panel near the side of the seatback or from the side of the center seat.

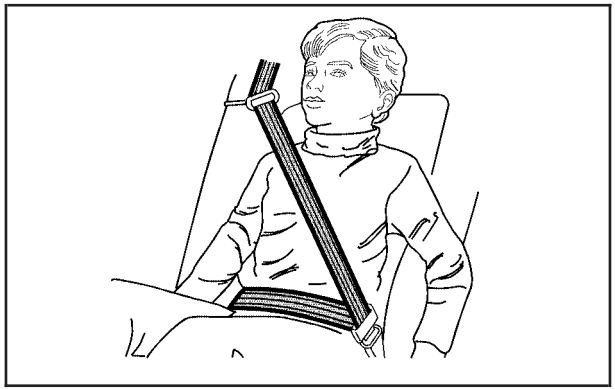


Third Row Seat

For the third row, remove the guide from its storage clip on the side of the seatback.



2. Place the guide over the belt and insert the two edges of the belt into the slots of the guide.
3. Be sure that the belt is not twisted and it lies flat. The guide must be on top of the belt.



4. Buckle, position and release the safety belt as described in *Rear Seat Passengers on page 1-42*. Make sure that the shoulder belt crosses the shoulder.

To remove and store the comfort guides, squeeze the belt edges together so that you can take them out of the guides.

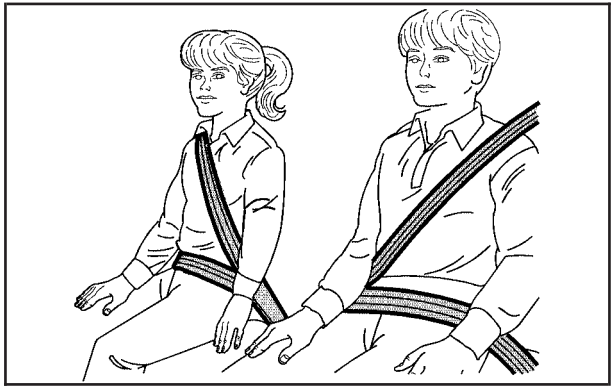
Safety Belt Extender

If the vehicle's safety belt will fasten around you, you should use it.

But if a safety belt is not long enough, your dealer will order you an extender. It is free. When you go in to order it, take the heaviest coat you will wear, so the extender will be long enough for you. To help avoid personal injury, do not let someone else use it, and use it only for the seat it is made to fit. The extender has been designed for adults. Never use it for securing child seats. To wear it, just attach it to the regular safety belt. For more information, see the instruction sheet that comes with the extender.

Child Restraints

Older Children



Older children who have outgrown booster seats should wear the vehicle's safety belts.

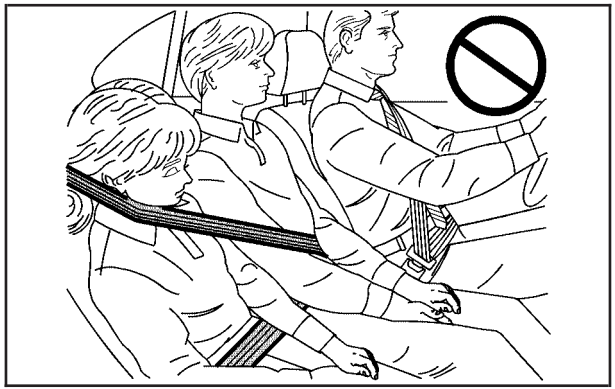
If you have the choice, a child should sit in a seat that has a lap-shoulder belt to get the additional restraint a shoulder belt can provide.

Q: What is the proper way to wear safety belts?

A: If possible, an older child should wear a lap-shoulder belt and get the additional restraint a shoulder belt can provide. The shoulder belt should not cross the face or neck. The lap belt should fit snugly below the hips, just touching the top of the thighs. It should never be worn over the abdomen, which could cause severe or even fatal internal injuries in a crash.

Accident statistics show that children are safer if they are restrained in the rear seat.

In a crash, children who are not buckled up can strike other people who are buckled up, or can be thrown out of the vehicle. Older children need to use safety belts properly.



⚠ CAUTION:

Never do this.

Here two children are wearing the same belt. The belt can not properly spread the impact forces. In a crash, the two children can be crushed together and seriously injured. A belt must be used by only one person at a time.

Q: What if a child is wearing a lap-shoulder belt, but the child is so small that the shoulder belt is very close to the child's face or neck?

A: If the child is sitting in a rear seat outside position, move the child toward the center of the vehicle. If the child is sitting in the center position, move the child toward the safety belt buckle. In either case, be sure that the shoulder belt still is on the child's shoulder, so that in a crash the child's upper body would have the restraint that belts provide. See *Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides for Children and Small Adults on page 1-45*.

If the child is so small that the shoulder belt is still very close to the child's face or neck, you might want to place the child in a seat that has a lap belt, if your vehicle has one.

⚠ CAUTION:

Never do this.

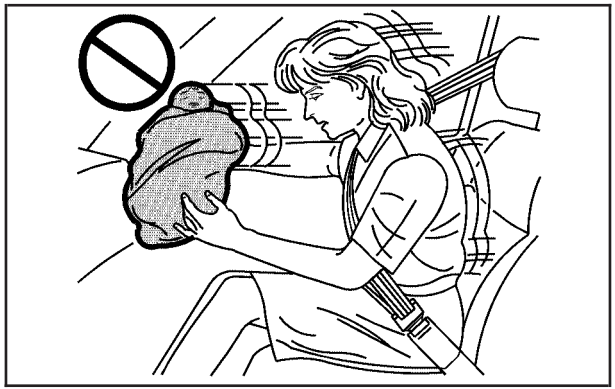
Here a child is sitting in a seat that has a lap-shoulder belt, but the shoulder part is behind the child. If the child wears the belt in this way, in a crash the child might slide under the belt. The belt's force would then be applied right on the child's abdomen. That could cause serious or fatal injuries.

Wherever the child sits, the lap portion of the belt should be worn low and snug on the hips, just touching the child's thighs. This applies belt force to the child's pelvic bones in a crash.

Infants and Young Children

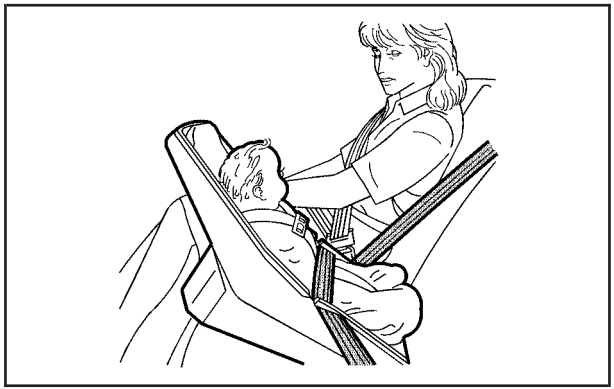
Everyone in a vehicle needs protection! This includes infants and all other children. Neither the distance traveled nor the age and size of the traveler changes the need, for everyone, to use safety restraints. In fact, the law in every state in the United States and in every Canadian province says children up to some age must be restrained while in a vehicle.

Every time infants and young children ride in vehicles, they should have the protection provided by appropriate restraints. Young children should not use the vehicle's adult safety belts alone, unless there is no other choice. Instead, they need to use a child restraint.



⚠ CAUTION:

People should never hold a baby in their arms while riding in a vehicle. A baby does not weigh much — until a crash. During a crash a baby will become so heavy it is not possible to hold it. For example, in a crash at only 25 mph (40 km/h), a 12 lb (5.5 kg) baby will suddenly become a 240 lb (110 kg) force on a person's arms. A baby should be secured in an appropriate restraint.



⚠ CAUTION:

Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Airbags plus lap-shoulder belts offer protection for adults and older children, but not for young children and infants. Neither the vehicle's safety belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them. Young children and infants need the protection that a child restraint system can provide.

Q: What are the different types of add-on child restraints?

A: Add-on child restraints, which are purchased by the vehicle's owner, are available in four basic types. Selection of a particular restraint should take into consideration not only the child's weight, height, and age but also whether or not the restraint will be compatible with the motor vehicle in which it will be used.

For most basic types of child restraints, there are many different models available. When purchasing a child restraint, be sure it is designed to be used in a motor vehicle. If it is, the restraint will have a label saying that it meets federal motor vehicle safety standards.

The restraint manufacturer's instructions that come with the restraint state the weight and height limitations for a particular child restraint. In addition, there are many kinds of restraints available for children with special needs.

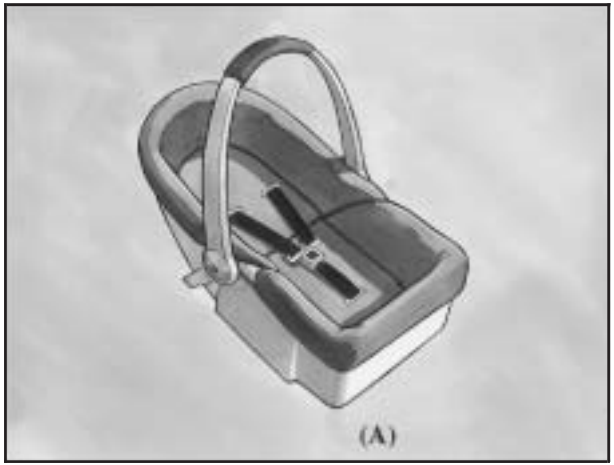
⚠ CAUTION:

Newborn infants need complete support, including support for the head and neck. This is necessary because a newborn infant's neck is weak and its head weighs so much compared with the rest of its body. In a crash, an infant in a rear-facing seat settles into the restraint, so the crash forces can be distributed across the strongest part of an infant's body, the back and shoulders. Infants always should be secured in appropriate infant restraints.

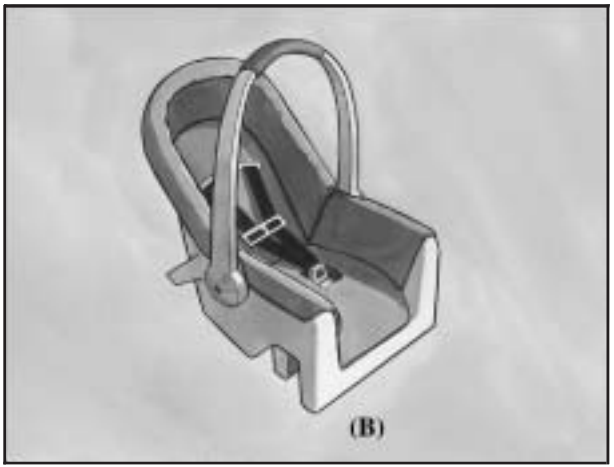
⚠ CAUTION:

The body structure of a young child is quite unlike that of an adult or older child, for whom the safety belts are designed. A young child's hip bones are still so small that the vehicle's regular safety belt may not remain low on the hip bones, as it should. Instead, it may settle up around the child's abdomen. In a crash, the belt would apply force on a body area that is unprotected by any bony structure. This alone could cause serious or fatal injuries. Young children always should be secured in appropriate child restraints.

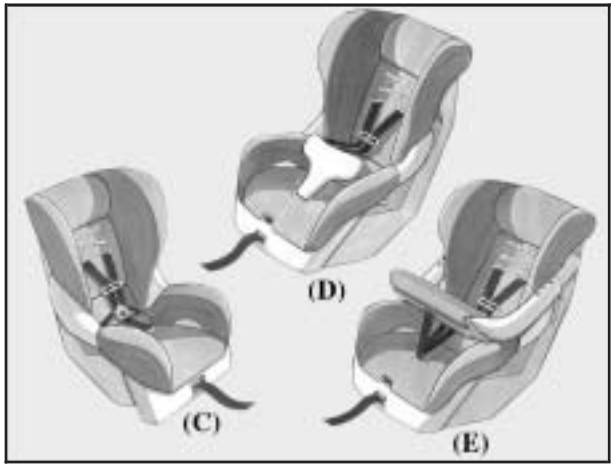
Child Restraint Systems



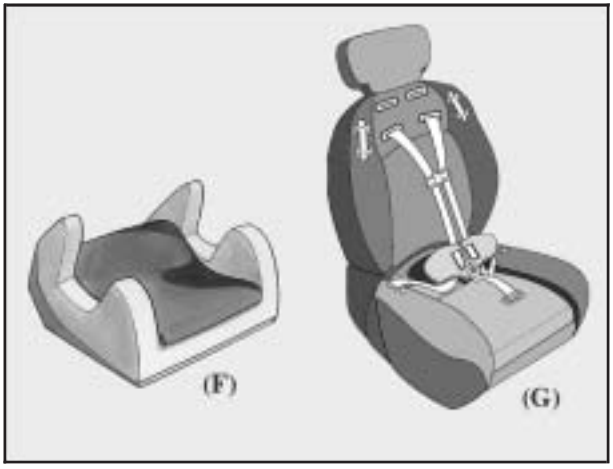
An infant car bed (A), a special bed made for use in a motor vehicle, is an infant restraint system designed to restrain or position a child on a continuous flat surface. Make sure that the infant's head rests toward the center of the vehicle.



A rear-facing infant seat (B) provides restraint with the seating surface against the back of the infant. The harness system holds the infant in place and, in a crash, acts to keep the infant positioned in the restraint.



A forward-facing child seat (C-E) provides restraint for the child's body with the harness and also sometimes with surfaces such as T-shaped or shelf-like shields.



A booster seat (F-G) is a child restraint designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's safety belt system. Some booster seats have a shoulder belt positioner, and some high-back booster seats have a five-point harness. A booster seat can also help a child to see out the window.

Q: How do child restraints work?

A: A child restraint system is any device designed for use in a motor vehicle to restrain, seat, or position children. A built-in child restraint system is a permanent part of the motor vehicle. An add-on child restraint system is a portable one, which is purchased by the vehicle's owner.

For many years, add-on child restraints have used the adult belt system in the vehicle. To help reduce the chance of injury, the child also has to be secured within the restraint. The vehicle's belt system secures the add-on child restraint in the vehicle, and the add-on child restraint's harness system holds the child in place within the restraint.

One system, the three-point harness, has straps that come down over each of the infant's shoulders and buckle together at the crotch. The five-point harness system has two shoulder straps, two hip straps and a crotch strap. A shield may take the place of hip straps. A T-shaped shield has shoulder straps that are attached to a flat pad which rests low against the child's body. A shelf- or armrest-type shield has straps that are attached to a wide, shelf-like shield that swings up or to the side.

When choosing a child restraint, be sure the child restraint is designed to be used in a vehicle. If it is, it will have a label saying that it meets federal motor vehicle safety standards.

Then follow the instructions for the restraint. You may find these instructions on the restraint itself or in a booklet, or both. These restraints use the belt system or the LATCH system in your vehicle, but the child also has to be secured within the restraint to help reduce the chance of personal injury. When securing an add-on child restraint, refer to the instructions that come with the restraint which may be on the restraint itself or in a booklet, or both, and to this manual. The child restraint instructions are important, so if they are not available, obtain a replacement copy from the manufacturer.

Where to Put the Restraint

Accident statistics show that children are safer if they are restrained in the rear rather than the front seat. General Motors recommends that child restraints be secured in a rear seat, including an infant riding in a rear-facing infant seat, a child riding in a forward-facing child seat and an older child riding in a booster seat.

Your vehicle has a rear seat that will accommodate a rear-facing child restraint. A label on your sun visor says, “Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.” This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the air bag deploys.

⚠ CAUTION:

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger’s airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag.

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

Even though the passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the passenger’s frontal airbag if the system detects a rear-facing child restraint, no system is fail-safe, and no one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off. General Motors recommends that rear-facing child restraints be secured in the rear seat, even if the airbag is off.

If you need to secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat

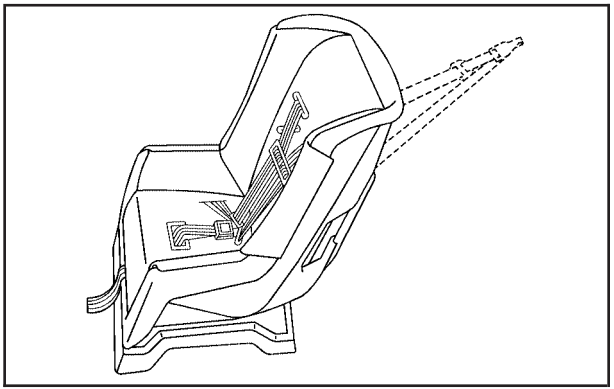
Wherever you install it, be sure to secure the child restraint properly.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in your vehicle — even when no child is in it.

Top Strap

Some child restraints have a top strap, or “top tether.” It can help restrain the child restraint during a collision. For it to work, a top strap must be properly anchored to the vehicle. Some top strap-equipped child restraints are designed for use with or without the top strap being anchored. Others require the top strap always to be anchored. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for your child restraint. If yours requires that the top strap be anchored, do not use the restraint unless it is anchored properly.

If the child restraint does not have a top strap, one can be obtained, in kit form, for many child restraints. Ask the child restraint manufacturer whether or not a kit is available.



In Canada, the law requires that forward-facing child restraints have a top strap, and that the strap be anchored. In the United States, some child restraints also have a top strap. If your child restraint has a top strap, it should be anchored.

⚠ CAUTION:

Each top tether bracket is designed to anchor only one child restraint. Attaching more than one child restraint to a single bracket could cause the anchor to come loose or even break during a crash. A child or others could be injured if this happens. To help prevent injury to people and damage to your vehicle, attach only one child restraint per bracket.

Anchor the top strap to one of the following anchor points. Be sure to use an anchor point located on the same side of the vehicle as the seating position where the child restraint will be placed.

Raise the head restraint and route the top strap under it. See *Head Restraints on page 1-7*.

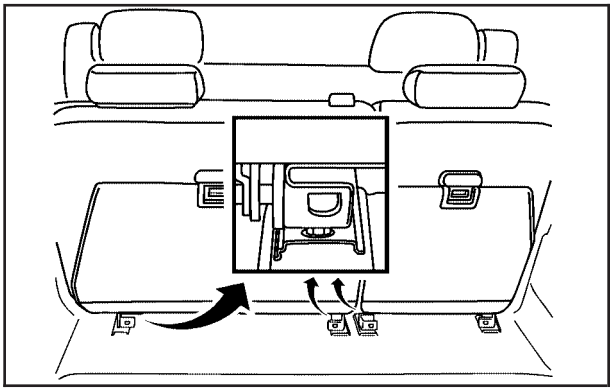
Once you have the top strap anchored, you will be ready to secure the child restraint itself. Tighten the top strap when and as the child restraint manufacturer's instructions say.

Top Strap Anchor Location

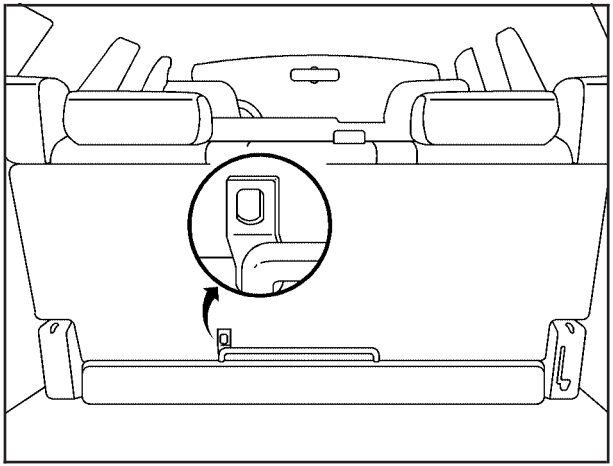
Escalade ESV

A child restraint with a top strap should only be used in the second or third row.

Do not secure a child restraint in the right front passenger's position or the third row outboard seating positions if a national or local law requires that the top strap be anchored, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top strap must be anchored. There is no place to anchor the top strap in these positions.



Escalade ESV Second Row Seat (Bucket Seats Similar)



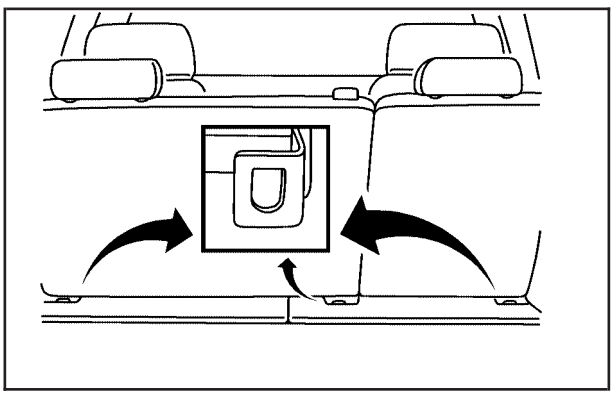
Escalade ESV Third Row Seat

An anchor loop bracket for a top strap is located at the bottom rear of the seat cushion for each seating position in the second row, and for the center seating position in the third row.

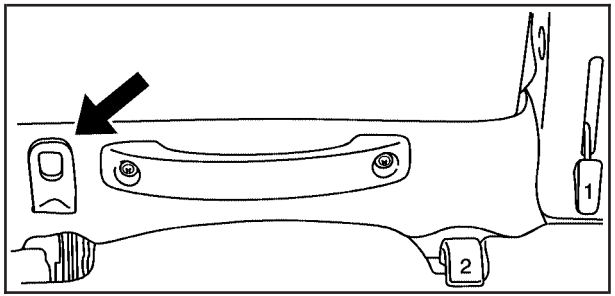
Escalade

A child restraint with a top strap should only be used in the second or third row.

Do not secure a child restraint in the right front passenger's position or the third row driver's-side and center seating positions if a national or local law requires that the top strap be anchored, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top strap must be anchored. There is no place to anchor the top strap in these positions.



Escalade Second Row Seat



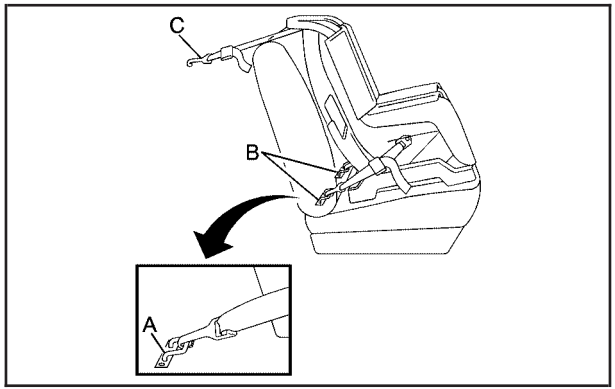
Escalade Third Row Seat

An anchor loop bracket for a top strap is located at the bottom rear of the seat cushion for each seating position in the second row and in the outboard passenger—side seating position in the third row.

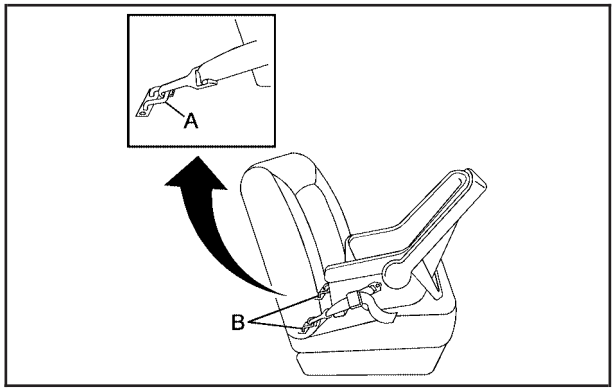
Lower Anchorages and Top Tethers for Children (LATCH System)

Your vehicle has the LATCH system. You will find anchors in the center and right side passenger second row seating positions for bench seats and the outboard passenger positions for bucket seats.

This system, designed to make installation of child restraints easier, does not use the vehicle's safety belts. Instead, it uses vehicle anchors and child restraint attachments to secure the restraints. Some restraints also use another vehicle anchor to secure a top tether strap.



A. Lower Anchorage
B. Lower Anchorage
C. Top Tether



A. Lower Anchorage
B. Lower Anchorage

In order to use the LATCH system in your vehicle, you need a child restraint designed for that system.

To assist you in locating the lower anchors for this child restraint system, each seating position with the LATCH system has a visible metal anchorage point in the seat where the seatback meets the seat cushion.

⚠ CAUTION:

If a LATCH-type child restraint is not attached to its anchorage points, the restraint will not be able to protect the child correctly. In a crash, the child could be seriously injured or killed. Make sure that a LATCH-type child restraint is properly installed using the anchorage points, or use the vehicle's safety belts to secure the restraint, following the instructions that came with that restraint, and also the instructions in this manual.

Securing a Child Restraint Designed for the LATCH System

1. Find the LATCH anchorages for the seating position you want to use, where the bottom of the seatback meets the back of the seat cushion. See *Lower Anchorages and Top Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 1-62*.
2. Put the child restraint on the seat.
3. Attach and tighten the LATCH attachments on the child restraint to the LATCH anchorages in the vehicle. The child restraint instructions will show you how.
4. If the child restraint is forward-facing, attach and tighten the top tether to the top tether anchorage. The child restraint instructions will show you how. Also see *Top Strap on page 1-58*.
5. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

To remove the child restraint, simply unhook the top tether from the top tether anchorage and then disconnect the LATCH attachments from the LATCH anchorages.

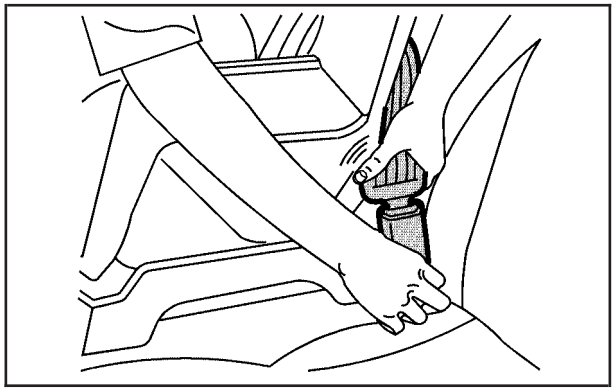
Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Outside Seat Position

If your child restraint is equipped with the LATCH system, see *Lower Anchorages and Top Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 1-62*. See *Top Strap on page 1-58* if the child restraint has one.

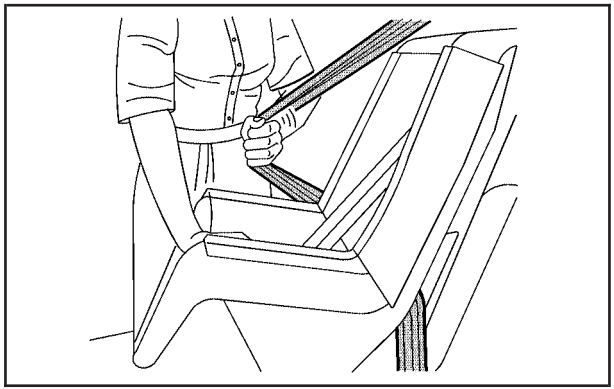
For the third row, if your vehicle has a bench seat, there are no top strap anchors in the outboard seating positions. If your vehicle has a 50/50 split bench seat in the third row, there is no top strap anchor in the driver-side seating position. Do not secure a child restraint in these positions if a national or local law requires that the top strap be anchored or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top strap must be anchored.

If your child restraint does not have the LATCH system, you will be using the lap-shoulder belt to secure the child restraint in this position. Be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint. Secure the child in the child restraint when and as the instructions say.

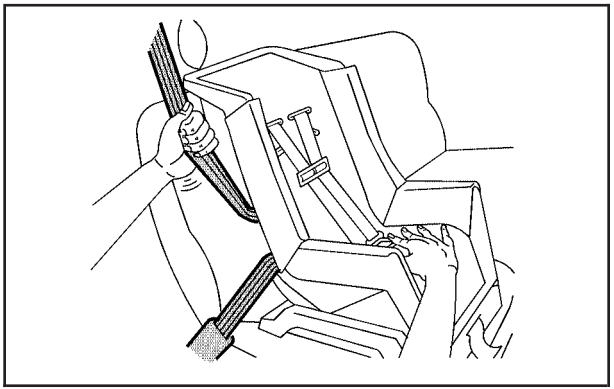
1. Put the child restraint on the seat.
2. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.



3. Buckle the belt. Make sure the release button is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if you ever had to.



4. Pull the rest of the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock.



5. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. If you are using a forward-facing child restraint, you may find it helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.
6. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

To remove the child restraint, just unbuckle the vehicle's safety belt and let it go back all the way. The safety belt will move freely again and be ready to work for an adult or larger child passenger.

Securing a Child Restraint in a Center Rear Seat Position

Second Row

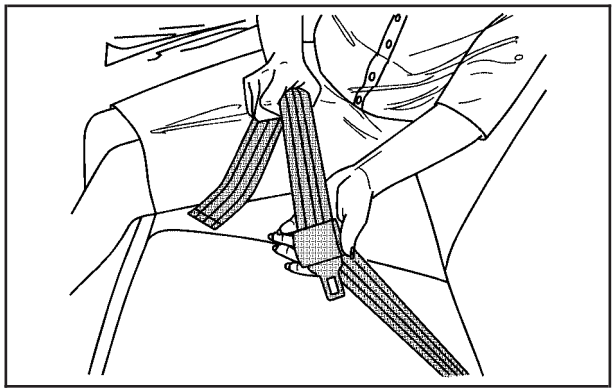
The center seat position in the second row has a lap-shoulder belt which works the same way as the safety belt in the rear outside seat positions. For instructions on how to secure a child restraint using a lap-shoulder belt see *Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Outside Seat Position on page 1-65*.

Third Row

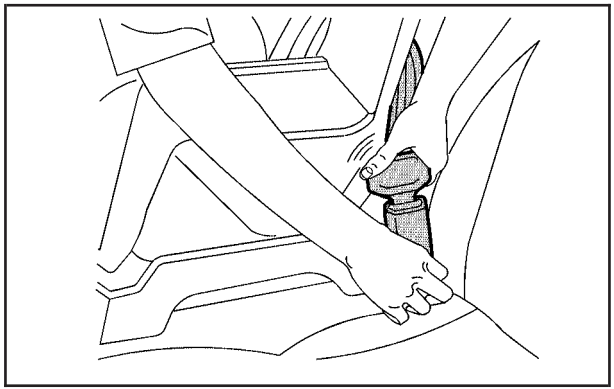
If your child restraint is equipped with the LATCH system, see *Lower Anchorages and Top Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 1-62*. See *Top Strap on page 1-58* if the child restraint has one.

If your vehicle has 50/50 split bench seat in the third row, there is no top strap anchor in the center seating position. Do not secure a child restraint in this position if a national or local law requires that the top strap be anchored or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top strap must be anchored.

If your child restraint does not have the LATCH system, you will be using a lap belt to secure the child restraint in the center seat position in the third row. Be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint. Secure the child in the child restraint when and as the instructions say.



1. Make the belt as long as possible by tilting the latch plate and pulling it along the belt.
2. Put the child restraint on the seat.
3. Run the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.



4. Buckle the belt. Make sure the release button is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if you ever had to.
5. To tighten the belt, pull its free end while you push down on the child restraint. If you are using a forward-facing child restraint, you may find it helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.
6. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

To remove the child restraint, just unbuckle the vehicle's safety belt. It will be ready to work for an adult or larger child passenger.

Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position

Your vehicle has a right front passenger air bag. A rear seat is a safer place to secure a forward-facing child restraint. See *Where to Put the Restraint on page 1-57*.

In addition, your vehicle may have the passenger sensing system. The passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the right front passenger's frontal air bag when an infant in a rear-facing infant seat or a small child in a forward-facing child restraint or booster seat is detected. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-80* and *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 3-35* for more information on this including important safety information.

A label on your sun visor says, "Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front." This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the air bag deploys.

⚠ CAUTION:

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger's airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag.

Even though the passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the passenger's frontal airbag if the system detects a rear-facing child restraint, no system is fail-safe, and no one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off. General Motors recommends that rear-facing child restraints be secured in the rear seat, even if the airbag is off.

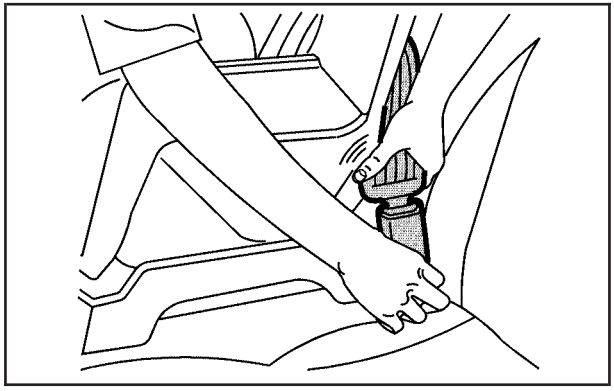
If you need to secure a forward-facing child restraint in the right front seat position, move the seat as far back as it will go before securing the forward-facing child restraint. See *Power Seats on page 1-3*.

If your child restraint is equipped with the LATCH system, see *Lower Anchorages and Top Tethers for Children (LATCH System) on page 1-62*.

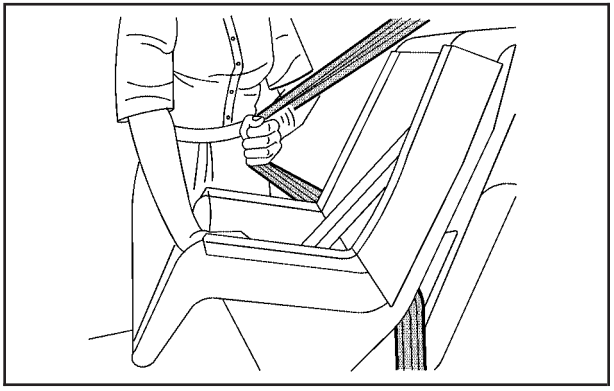
You will be using the lap-shoulder belt to secure the child restraint in this position. See *Top Strap on page 1-58* if your child restraint has one. Be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint. Secure the child in the child restraint when and as the instructions say.

1. Your vehicle has a right front passenger's frontal air bag. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-80*. General Motors recommends that rear-facing child restraints be secured in a rear seat, even if the air bag is off. If your child restraint is forward-facing, move the seat as far back as it will go before securing the child restraint in this seat. See *Power Seats on page 1-3*.

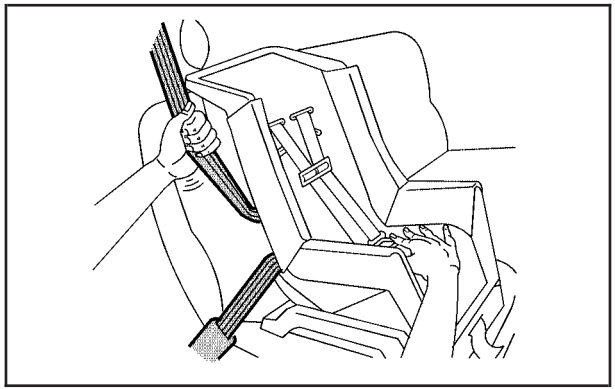
   When the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger's frontal air bag, the off indicator in the passenger air bag status indicator should light and stay lit when you turn the ignition to RUN or START. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 3-35*.
2. Put the child restraint on the seat.
3. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.



4. Buckle the belt. Make sure the release button is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if you ever had to.



5. Pull the rest of the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock.



6. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. If you are using a forward-facing child restraint, you may find it helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt. You should not be able to pull more of the belt from the retractor once the lock has been set.
7. Push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.
8. If your vehicle has the passenger sensing system and the air bag is off, the off indicator will be lit and stay lit in the inside rearview mirror when the key is turned to RUN or START.

If a child restraint has been installed and the on indicator is lit, turn the vehicle off. Remove the child restraint from the vehicle and reinstall the child restraint.

If after reinstalling the child restraint and restarting the vehicle, the on indicator is still lit, check to make sure that the vehicle's seatback is not pressing the child restraint into the seat cushion. If this happens, slightly recline the vehicle's seatback and adjust the seat cushion if possible. Also make sure the child restraint is not trapped under the vehicle head restraint. If this happens, adjust the head restraint.

If the on indicator is still lit, secure the child in the child restraint in a rear seat position in the vehicle and check with your dealer.

To remove the child restraint, just unbuckle the vehicle's safety belt and let it go back all the way. The safety belt will move freely again and be ready to work for an adult or larger child passenger.

Airbag System

Your vehicle has four airbags — a frontal airbag for the driver, another frontal airbag for the right front passenger, a side impact airbag for the driver, and another side impact airbag for the right front passenger.

Frontal airbags are designed to help reduce the risk of injury from the force of an inflating frontal airbag. But these airbags must inflate very quickly to do their job and comply with federal regulations.

Here are the most important things to know about the airbag system:

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be severely injured or killed in a crash if you are not wearing your safety belt — even if you have airbags. Wearing your safety belt during a crash helps reduce your chance of hitting things inside the vehicle or being ejected from it. Airbags are designed to work with safety belts but do not replace them.

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

Frontal airbags for the driver and right front passenger are designed to deploy only in moderate to severe frontal and near frontal crashes. They are not designed to inflate in rollover, rear or low-speed frontal crashes, or in many side crashes. And, for some unrestrained occupants, frontal airbags may provide less protection in frontal crashes than more forceful airbags have provided in the past.

Side impact airbags for the driver and right front passenger are designed to inflate only in moderate to severe crashes where something hits the side of your vehicle. They are not designed to inflate in frontal, in rollover or in rear crashes.

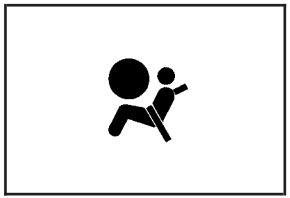
Everyone in your vehicle should wear a safety belt properly — whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

⚠ CAUTION:

Both frontal and side impact airbags inflate with great force, faster than the blink of an eye. If you are too close to an inflating airbag, as you would be if you were leaning forward, it could seriously injure you. Safety belts help keep you in position for airbag inflation before and during a crash. Always wear your safety belt, even with frontal airbags. The driver should sit as far back as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle. Front occupants should not lean on or sleep against the door.

⚠ CAUTION:

Anyone who is up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Airbags plus lap-shoulder belts offer the best protection for adults, but not for young children and infants. Neither the vehicle's safety belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them. Young children and infants need the protection that a child restraint system can provide. Always secure children properly in your vehicle. To read how, see *Older Children on page 1-48* or *Infants and Young Children on page 1-50*.



There is an airbag readiness light on the instrument panel cluster, which shows the airbag symbol.

The system checks the airbag electrical system for malfunctions. The light tells you if there is an electrical problem. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 3-34* for more information.

Where Are the Airbags?

The driver's frontal airbag is in the middle of the steering wheel.

The right front passenger's frontal airbag is in the instrument panel on the passenger's side.

The driver's side impact airbag is in the side of the driver's seatback closest to the door.

The right front passenger's side impact airbag is in the side of the passenger's seatback closest to the door.

⚠ CAUTION:

If something is between an occupant and an airbag, the airbag might not inflate properly or it might force the object into that person causing severe injury or even death. The path of an inflating airbag must be kept clear. Do not put anything between an occupant and an airbag, and do not attach or put anything on the steering wheel hub or on or near any other airbag covering. Do not let seat covers block the inflation path of a side impact airbag.

When Should an Airbag Inflate?

The driver's and right front passenger's frontal airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe frontal or near-frontal crashes. But they are designed to inflate only if the impact exceeds a predetermined deployment threshold. Deployment thresholds take into account a variety of desired deployment and non-deployment events and are used to predict how severe a crash is likely to be in time for the airbags to inflate and help restrain the occupants. Whether your frontal airbags will or should deploy is not based on how fast your vehicle is traveling. It depends largely on what you hit, the direction of the impact and how quickly your vehicle slows down.

In addition, your vehicle has "dual stage" frontal airbags, which adjust the restraint according to crash severity. Your vehicle is equipped with electronic frontal sensors which help the sensing system distinguish between a moderate and a more severe frontal impact. For moderate frontal impacts, these airbags inflate at a level less than full deployment. For more severe frontal impacts, full deployment occurs. If the front of your vehicle goes straight into a wall that does not move or deform, the threshold level for the reduced deployment is about 10 to 16 mph (16 to 25 km/h), and the threshold level for a full deployment is about 20 to 30 mph (32 to 48 km/h). (The threshold level can vary, however, with specific vehicle design, so that it can be somewhat above or below this range.)

Airbags may inflate at different crash speeds. For example:

- If the vehicle hits a stationary object, the airbag could inflate at a different crash speed than if the object were moving.
- If the object deforms, the airbag could inflate at a different crash speed than if the object does not deform.
- If the vehicle hits a narrow object (like a pole) the airbag could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle hits a wide object (like a wall).
- If the vehicle goes into an object at an angle the airbag could inflate at a different crash speed than if the vehicle goes straight into the object.

The frontal airbags (driver and right front passenger) are not intended to inflate during vehicle rollovers, rear impacts, or in many side impacts because inflation would not likely help the occupants.

Side impact airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe side crashes. A side impact airbag will inflate if the crash severity is above the system's designed "threshold level." The threshold level can vary with specific vehicle design. Side impact airbags are not designed to inflate in frontal or near-frontal impacts, rollovers or rear impacts, because inflation would not likely help the occupant. A side impact airbag will only deploy on the side of the vehicle that is struck.

Vehicle's with dual stage airbags are also equipped with special sensors which enable the sensing system to monitor the position of both the driver and passenger front seats. The seat position sensor provides information which is used to determine if the airbags should deploy at a reduced level or at full depoyment.

In any particular crash, no one can say whether an airbag should have inflated simply because of the damage to a vehicle or because of what the repair costs were. For frontal airbags, inflation is determined by the angle of the impact and how quickly the vehicle slows down in frontal and near-frontal impacts. For side impact airbags, inflation is determined by the location and severity of the impact.

The airbag system is designed to work properly under a wide range of conditions, including off-road usage. Observe safe driving speeds, especially on rough terrain. As always, wear your safety belt. See *Operating Your All-Wheel-Drive Vehicle Off Paved Roads on page 4-18* for tips on off-road driving.

What Makes an Airbag Inflate?

In an impact of sufficient severity, the airbag sensing system detects that the vehicle is in a crash. For both frontal and side impact airbags, the sensing system triggers a release of gas from the inflator, which inflates the airbag. The inflator, the airbag and related hardware are all part of the airbag modules. Frontal airbag modules are located inside the steering wheel and instrument panel. For side impact airbags, the airbag modules are located in the seatback closest to the driver's and/or right front passenger's door.

How Does an Airbag Restrain?

In moderate to severe frontal or near frontal collisions, even belted occupants can contact the steering wheel or the instrument panel. In moderate to severe side collisions, even belted occupants can contact the inside of the vehicle. The airbag supplements the protection provided by safety belts. Airbags distribute the force of the impact more evenly over the occupant's upper body, stopping the occupant more gradually. But the frontal airbags would not help you in many types of collisions, including rollovers, rear impacts, and many side impacts, primarily because an occupant's motion is not toward the airbag. Side impact airbags would not help you in many types of collisions, including frontal or near frontal collisions, rollovers, and rear impacts, primarily because an occupant's motion is not toward those airbags.

Airbags should never be regarded as anything more than a supplement to safety belts, and then only in moderate to severe frontal or near-frontal collisions for the driver's and right front passenger's frontal airbags, and only in moderate to severe side collisions for vehicles with a driver's and right front passenger's side impact airbag.

What Will You See After an Airbag Inflates?

After the airbag inflates, it quickly deflates, so quickly that some people may not even realize the airbag inflated. Some components of the airbag module will be hot for a short time. These components include the steering wheel hub for the driver's frontal airbag and the instrument panel for the right front passenger's frontal airbag. For side impact airbags, the side of the seatback closest to the driver's and/or right front passenger's door will be hot. The parts of the bag that come into contact with you may be warm, but not too hot to touch. There will be some smoke and dust coming from the vents in the deflated airbags. Airbag inflation does not prevent the driver from seeing or being able to steer the vehicle, nor does it stop people from leaving the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION:

When an airbag inflates, there is dust in the air. This dust could cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing trouble. To avoid this, everyone in the vehicle should get out as soon as it is safe to do so. If you have breathing problems but can not get out of the vehicle after an airbag inflates, then get fresh air by opening a window or a door. If you experience breathing problems following an airbag deployment, you should seek medical attention.

In many crashes severe enough to inflate an airbag, windshields are broken by vehicle deformation. Additional windshield breakage may also occur from the right front passenger airbag.

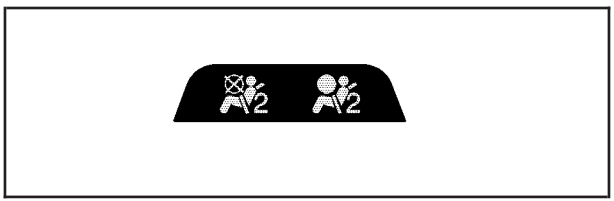
- Airbags are designed to inflate only once. After an airbag inflates, you will need some new parts for your airbag system. If you do not get them, the airbag system will not be there to help protect you in another crash. A new system will include airbag modules and possibly other parts. The service manual for your vehicle covers the need to replace other parts.
- Your vehicle is equipped with a crash sensing and diagnostic module which records information after a crash. See *Vehicle Data Collection and Event Data Recorders on page 7-10*.
- Let only qualified technicians work on your airbag system. Improper service can mean that an airbag system will not work properly. See your dealer for service.

Notice: **If you damage the covering for the driver's or the right front passenger's airbag, or the airbag covering on the driver's and right front passenger's seatback, the airbag may not work properly. You may have to replace the airbag module in the steering wheel, both the airbag module and the instrument panel for the right front passenger's airbag, or both the airbag module and seatback for the driver's and right front passenger's side impact airbag. Do not open or break the airbag coverings.**

Passenger Sensing System

If your rearview mirror has one of the indicators pictured in the following illustrations, your vehicle has a passenger sensing system. The indicator will be visible when you turn your ignition key to START or RUN. The words ON and OFF or the symbol for on and off, will be visible on the rearview mirror during the system check. When the system check is complete, either the word ON or the word OFF, or the symbol for on or the symbol for off will be visible. See *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 3-35*. If your rearview mirror does not have either of the indicators pictured, then your vehicle does not have the passenger sensing system.

Passenger Airbag Status Indicator – United States



Passenger Airbag Status Indicator – Canada

The passenger sensing system will turn off the right front passenger's frontal airbag under certain conditions. The driver's airbag and the side airbags are not part of the passenger sensing system.

The passenger sensing system works with sensors that are part of the right front passenger's seat and safety belt. The sensors are designed to detect the presence of a properly-seated occupant and determine if the passenger's frontal airbag should be enabled (may inflate) or not.

Accident statistics show that children are safer if they are restrained in the rear rather than the front seat. General Motors recommends that child restraints be secured in a rear seat, including an infant riding in a rear-facing infant seat, a child riding in a forward-facing child seat and an older child riding in a booster seat.

Your vehicle has a rear seat that will accommodate a rear-facing child restraint. A label on your sun visor says, “Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.” This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

⚠ CAUTION:

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger’s airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag.

Even though the passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the passenger’s frontal airbag if the system detects a rear-facing child restraint, no system is fail-safe, and no one can guarantee that an airbag will not deploy under some unusual circumstance, even though it is turned off. General Motors recommends that rear-facing child restraints be secured in the rear seat, even if the airbag is off.

The passenger sensing system is designed to turn off the right front passenger’s frontal airbag if:

- the right front passenger seat is unoccupied
- the system determines that an infant is present in a rear-facing infant seat
- the system determines that a small child is present in a forward-facing child restraint
- the system determines that a small child is present in a booster seat
- a right front passenger takes his/her weight off of the seat for a period of time
- the right front passenger seat is occupied by a smaller person, such as a child who has outgrown child restraints
- or if there is a critical problem with the airbag system or the passenger sensing system.

When the passenger sensing system has turned off the passenger’s frontal air bag, the off indicator will light and stay lit to remind you that the airbag is off.

If a child restraint has been installed and the on indicator is lit, turn the vehicle off. Remove the child restraint from the vehicle and reinstall the child restraint following the child restraint manufacturer’s directions and refer to *Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position on page 1-68*.

If after reinstalling the child restraint and restarting the vehicle, the on indicator is still lit, check to make sure that the vehicle's seatback is not pressing the child restraint into the seat cushion. If this happens, slightly recline the vehicle's seatback and adjust the seat cushion if possible. Also make sure the child restraint is not trapped under the vehicle head restraint. If this happens, adjust the head restraint.

If the on indicator is still lit, secure the child in the child restraint in a rear seat position in the vehicle and check with your dealer.

The passenger sensing system is designed to enable (may inflate) the right front passenger's frontal airbag anytime the system senses that a person of adult size is sitting properly in the right front passenger's seat. When the passenger sensing system has allowed the airbag to be enabled, the on indicator will light and stay lit to remind you that the airbag is active.

For some children who have outgrown child restraints and for very small adults, the passenger sensing system may or may not turn off the right front passenger's frontal airbag, depending upon the person's seating posture and body build. Everyone in your vehicle who has outgrown child restraints should wear a safety belt properly — whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

If a person of adult-size is sitting in the right front passenger's seat, but the off indicator is lit, it could be because that person is not sitting properly in the seat. If this happens, turn the vehicle off and ask the person to place the seatback in the fully upright position, then sit upright in the seat, centered on the seat cushion, with the person's legs comfortably extended. Restart the vehicle and have the person remain in this position for about two minutes. This will allow the system to detect that person and then enable the passenger's airbag.

⚠ CAUTION:

If the airbag readiness light in the instrument panel cluster ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. If this ever happens, have the vehicle serviced promptly, because an adult-size person sitting in the right front passenger's seat may not have the protection of the frontal airbag. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 3-34* for more on this, including important safety information.

Aftermarket equipment, such as seat covers, can affect how well the passenger sensing system operates.
You may want to consider not using seat covers or other aftermarket equipment if your vehicle has the passenger sensing system. See *Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 1-86* for more information about modifications that can affect how the system operates.

⚠ CAUTION:

Stowing of articles under the passenger's seat or between the passenger's seat cushion and seatback may interfere with the proper operation of the passenger sensing system.

Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Airbags affect how your vehicle should be serviced. There are airbag system parts in several places around your vehicle. You do not want the system to inflate while someone is working on your vehicle. Your dealer and the service manual have information about servicing your vehicle and the airbag system.
To purchase a service manual, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 7-13*.

⚠ CAUTION:

For up to 10 seconds after the ignition key is turned off and the battery is disconnected, an airbag can still inflate during improper service. You can be injured if you are close to an airbag when it inflates. Avoid yellow connectors. They are probably part of the airbag system. Be sure to follow proper service procedures, and make sure the person performing work for you is qualified to do so.

The airbag system does not need regular maintenance.

Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Q: Is there anything I might add to the front or sides of the vehicle that could keep the airbags from working properly?

A: Yes. If you add things that change your vehicle's frame, bumper system, front end or side sheet metal or height, they may keep the airbag system from working properly. Also, the airbag system may not work properly if you relocate any of the airbag sensors. If you have any questions about this, you should contact Customer Assistance before you modify your vehicle. The phone numbers and addresses for Customer Assistance are in Step Two of the Customer Satisfaction Procedure in this manual. See *Customer Satisfaction Procedure on page 7-2*.

Q: Because I have a disability, I have to get my vehicle modified. How can I find out whether this will affect my advanced airbag system?

A: Changing or moving any parts of the front seats, safety belts, the airbag sensing and diagnostic module (located under the driver's seat), or the inside rearview mirror can affect the operation of the advanced airbag system. If you have questions, call Customer Assistance. The phone numbers and addresses for Customer Assistance are in Step Two of the Customer Satisfaction Procedure in this manual. See *Customer Satisfaction Procedure on page 7-2*.

Restraint System Check

Checking Your Restraint Systems

Now and then, make sure the safety belt reminder light and all your belts, buckles, latch plates, retractors and anchorages are working properly. Look for any other loose or damaged safety belt system parts. If you see anything that might keep a safety belt system from doing its job, have it repaired.

Torn or frayed safety belts may not protect you in a crash. They can rip apart under impact forces. If a belt is torn or frayed, get a new one right away.

Also look for any opened or broken airbag covers, and have them repaired or replaced. (The airbag system does not need regular maintenance.)

Replacing Restraint System Parts After a Crash

⚠ CAUTION:

A crash can damage the restraint systems in your vehicle. A damaged restraint system may not properly protect the person using it, resulting in serious injury or even death in a crash. To help make sure your restraint systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

If you have had a crash, do you need new belts or LATCH system parts?

After a very minor collision, nothing may be necessary. But if the belts were stretched, as they would be if worn during a more severe crash, then you need new parts.

If the LATCH system was being used during a more severe crash, you may need new LATCH system parts.

If belts are cut or damaged, replace them. Collision damage also may mean you will need to have LATCH system, safety belt or seat parts repaired or replaced. New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the belt or LATCH system was not being used at the time of the collision.

If an airbag inflates, you will need to replace airbag system parts. See the part on the airbag system earlier in this section.

NOTES

Section 2 Features and Controls

Keys 2-3
Remote Keyless Entry System 2-4
Remote Keyless Entry System Operation 2-5

Doors and Locks 2-8
Door Locks 2-8
Power Door Locks 2-9
Delayed Locking 2-9
Programmable Automatic Door Locks 2-10
Rear Door Security Locks 2-12
Lockout Protection 2-12
Liftgate/Liftglass 2-13

Windows 2-14
Power Windows 2-15
Sun Visors 2-15

Theft-Deterrent Systems 2-16
Content Theft-Deterrent 2-16
Passlock® 2-17

Starting and Operating Your Vehicle 2-18
New Vehicle Break-In 2-18
Ignition Positions 2-18
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) 2-19
Starting Your Engine 2-19
Adjustable Throttle and Brake Pedal 2-20
Engine Coolant Heater 2-21
Automatic Transmission Operation 2-22
Tow/Haul Mode 2-24
All-Wheel Drive 2-25
Parking Brake 2-25
Shifting Into Park (P) 2-26
Shifting Out of Park (P) 2-27
Parking Over Things That Burn 2-28
Engine Exhaust 2-28
Running Your Engine While You Are Parked 2-29

Mirrors 2-30
Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror with OnStar®, Compass and Temperature Display 2-30
Outside Power Mirrors 2-33
Outside Convex Mirror 2-34
Outside Heated Mirrors 2-34
Outside Automatic Dimming Mirror with Curb View Assist 2-35

OnStar® System 2-35

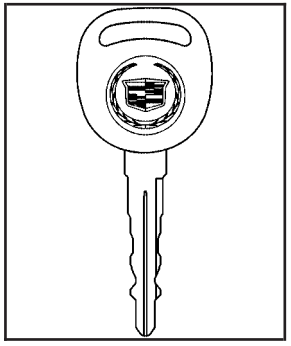
Section 2 Features and Controls

HomeLink® Transmitter 2-37
Programming the HomeLink® Transmitter 2-37
Storage Areas 2-41
Glove Box 2-41
Cupholder(s) 2-41
Instrument Panel Storage Area 2-41
Center Console Storage Area 2-42
Luggage Carrier 2-42
Rear Seat Armrest 2-43
Convenience Net 2-43
Cargo Cover 2-44
Sunroof 2-45
Vehicle Personalization 2-46
Memory Seat 2-46

Keys

⚠ CAUTION:

Leaving children in a vehicle with the ignition key is dangerous for many reasons. They could operate the power windows or other controls or even make the vehicle move. The children or others could be badly injured or even killed. Do not leave the keys in a vehicle with children.



Your vehicle has one double-sided key for the ignition and door locks.

If you ever lose your keys, your dealer will be able to assist you with obtaining replacements.

In an emergency contact Cadillac Roadside Service®. See *Roadside Service on page 7-6* for more information.

If you ever lock your keys in your vehicle, you may be able to have your doors unlocked automatically with the OnStar® system if you have an active OnStar® subscription. For more information see *OnStar® System on page 2-35*.

Remote Keyless Entry System

Your keyless entry system operates on a radio frequency subject to Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Rules and with Industry Canada.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

1. This device may not cause interference, and
2. This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

At times you may notice a decrease in range. This is normal for any remote keyless entry system. If the transmitter does not work or if you have to stand closer to your vehicle for the transmitter to work, try this:

- Check the distance. You may be too far from your vehicle. You may need to stand closer during rainy or snowy weather.
- Check the location. Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal. Take a few steps to the left or right, hold the transmitter higher, and try again.
- Check to determine if battery replacement is necessary. See “Battery Replacement” under *Remote Keyless Entry System Operation on page 2-5*.
- If you are still having trouble, see your dealer or a qualified technician for service.

Remote Keyless Entry System Operation

You can lock and unlock your doors from about 3 feet (1 m) up to 100 feet (30 m) away using the remote keyless entry transmitter supplied with your vehicle.

(Unlock): Press this button once to unlock the driver’s door. The interior lamps will come on. Pressing unlock again within three seconds will cause the remaining doors to unlock.

You can choose different feedback options for each press of the unlock button. See “Lock Feedback” and “Unlock Feedback” under *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-63* for more information.

(Lock): Press this button once to lock all of the doors. Pressing lock again within three seconds may cause the horn to chirp for lock confirmation. You can choose different feedback options for each press of the lock button. See “Lock Feedback” and “Unlock Feedback” under *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-63* for more information.

(Panic): Press this button to sound the horn and flash the headlamps and taillamps for up to 30 seconds. Panic can be turned off by pressing the button again, by waiting for 30 seconds, or by starting the vehicle.

Matching Transmitter(s) to Your Vehicle

Each remote keyless entry transmitter is coded to prevent another transmitter from unlocking your vehicle. If a transmitter is lost or stolen, a replacement can be purchased through your dealer. Remember to bring any remaining transmitters with you when you go to your dealer. When the dealer matches the replacement transmitter to your vehicle, any remaining transmitters must also be matched. Once your dealer has coded the new transmitter, the lost transmitter will not unlock your vehicle. Each vehicle can have a maximum of four transmitters matched to it.

Battery Replacement

Under normal use, the battery in your remote keyless entry transmitter should last about two years.

You can tell the battery is weak if the transmitter will not work at the normal range in any location. If you have to get close to your vehicle before the transmitter works, it is probably time to change the battery.

Notice: **When replacing the battery, use care not to touch any of the circuitry. Static from your body transferred to these surfaces may damage the transmitter.**

To replace the battery in the keyless entry transmitter, do the following:

1. Insert a thin object, such as a coin, in the slot between the covers of the transmitter housing near the key ring hole. Remove the bottom by twisting the coin.
2. Remove and replace the battery with a three-volt CR2032 or equivalent battery, positive (+) side up.
3. Align the covers and snap them together.
4. Resynchronize the transmitter. See “Resynchronization” following this information.
5. Check the operation of the transmitter.

Resynchronization

Resynchronization may be necessary due to the security method used by this system. The transmitter does not send the same signal twice to the receiver. The receiver will not respond to a signal that has been sent previously. This prevents anyone from recording and playing back the signal from the transmitter.

To resynchronize your transmitter, stand close to your vehicle and press and hold the lock and unlock buttons on the transmitter at the same time for 15 seconds. The door locks should cycle to confirm synchronization. If the locks do not cycle, see your dealer for service.

Doors and Locks

Door Locks

⚠ CAUTION:

Unlocked doors can be dangerous.

- **Passengers — especially children — can easily open the doors and fall out of a moving vehicle. When a door is locked, the handle will not open it. You increase the chance of being thrown out of the vehicle in a crash if the doors are not locked. So, wear safety belts properly and lock the doors whenever you drive.**
- **Young children who get into unlocked vehicles may be unable to get out. A child can be overcome by extreme heat and can suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Always lock your vehicle whenever you leave it.**
- **Outsiders can easily enter through an unlocked door when you slow down or stop your vehicle. Locking your doors can help prevent this from happening.**

There are several ways to lock and unlock your vehicle.

To unlock the door from the outside, use the keyless entry system or the key.

To unlock or lock the door from the inside, slide the manual lever forward or rearward.

Power Door Locks

The power door lock switches are located on the driver's and front passenger's armrests.

(Lock): Remove the ignition key and press the lock symbol to lock all of the doors.

If the delayed locking feature is on, the doors will not lock until five seconds after the last door is closed. Press the lock symbol twice to override this feature and lock all of the doors immediately. See *Delayed Locking on page 2-9* for more information.

(Unlock): To unlock the doors, press the unlock symbol.

Delayed Locking

When locking the doors with the power lock switch or the keyless entry transmitter and a door or the liftgate (if equipped) is open, the delayed locking feature will delay locking the doors until five seconds after the last door is closed. You will hear three chimes to signal that the delayed locking feature is in use.

Pressing the power lock switch or the lock button on the keyless entry transmitter twice will override the delayed locking feature and immediately lock all the doors.

You can turn the delayed locking feature off or back on again by doing the following:

1. Press and hold the power door lock switch in the lock position.
2. Press unlock twice on the remote keyless entry transmitter.

This feature will not operate if the key is in the ignition.

You can also program this feature using the Driver Information Center (DIC). See "Door Lock Delay" under *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-63*.

Programmable Automatic Door Locks

Your vehicle is equipped with an automatic lock/unlock feature which enables you to program your vehicle's power door locks. You can program this feature through the Driver Information Center (DIC), or by the following method. See *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-63* for more information on DIC programming.

Programmable Locking Feature

The following two modes are available programming options:

Mode 1: All doors lock when the transmission is shifted out of PARK (P).

Mode 2: All doors lock when the vehicle speed is greater than 8 mph (13 km/h).

The following instructions tell you how to change the automatic door lock mode. Choose one of the two programming options listed above before entering the program mode. To enter the program mode, do the following:

1. Begin with the ignition off. Then pull the turn signal/multifunction lever toward you and hold it there while you perform the next step.
2. Turn the key to RUN then back to LOCK twice. Then, with the key in LOCK, release the turn signal/multifunction lever. Once you do this, the doors will lock and unlock, the horn will chirp twice, and a 30-second timer will begin. You are now ready to program the automatic door lock feature.
3. Press the lock side of the power lock switch once. You will hear either one or two chimes. The number of chimes tells you which lock mode is currently selected. Continue to press the door lock switch until the number of chimes that you hear matches the number of the mode that you want. If you take longer than 30 seconds, the locks will automatically lock and unlock and the horn will chirp twice to indicate that you have left the program mode. If this occurs, you can repeat the procedure beginning with Step 1 to re-enter the programming mode.

You can exit the program mode any time by turning the ignition to RUN. The doors will automatically lock and unlock and the horn will chirp twice to indicate that you are leaving the program mode. If the lock/unlock switches are not pressed while in the programming mode, the current automatic settings will not be modified.

Programmable Unlocking Feature

The following is the list of available programming options:

Mode 1: Driver's door unlocks when the transmission is shifted into PARK (P).

Mode 2: All doors unlock when the transmission is shifted into PARK (P).

Mode 3: All doors unlock when the key is removed from the ignition.

Mode 4: No automatic door unlock.

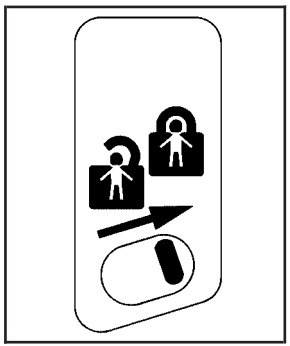
The following instructions tell you how to change the automatic door unlock mode. Choose one of the four programming options listed above before entering the program mode. To enter the program mode, do the following:

1. Begin with the ignition off. Then pull the turn signal/multifunction lever toward you and hold it there while you perform the next step.
2. Turn the key to RUN and LOCK twice. Then, with the key in LOCK, release the turn signal/multifunction lever. Once you do this, the doors will lock and unlock, the horn will chirp twice, and a 30-second timer will begin. You are now ready to program the automatic door unlock feature.
3. Press the unlock side of the power lock switch once. You will hear one, two, three, or four chimes. The number of chimes tells you which unlock mode is currently selected. Continue to press the door unlock switch until the number of chimes that you hear matches the number of the mode that you want. If you take longer than 30 seconds, the locks will automatically lock and unlock and the horn will chirp twice to indicate that you have left the program mode. If this occurs, you can repeat the procedure beginning with Step 1 to re-enter the programming mode.

You can exit the program mode any time by turning the ignition to RUN. The doors will automatically lock and unlock and the horn will chirp twice to indicate that you are leaving the program mode. If the lock/unlock switches are not pressed while in the programming mode, the current automatic settings will not be modified.

Rear Door Security Locks

With this feature, you can lock the rear doors so they can't be opened from the inside by passengers.



This feature is located on the inside edge of the rear doors.

To use the locks, do the following:

1. Open one of the rear doors.
2. Move the lever forward to engage the rear door security lock.
3. Close the door.
4. Do the same thing to the other rear door.

The rear doors cannot be opened from the inside when this feature is in use. If you want to open the rear door while the security lock is engaged, unlock the door and open the door from the outside. Move the lever rearward to disengage the child security lock feature.

Lockout Protection

This feature protects you from locking your key in the vehicle when the key is in the ignition and a door is open.

If the power lock switch is pressed when a door is open and the key is in the ignition, all of the doors will lock and then the driver's door will unlock.

Liftgate/Liftglass

⚠ CAUTION:

It can be dangerous to drive with the liftgate or liftglass open because carbon monoxide (CO) gas can come into your vehicle. You cannot see or smell CO. It can cause unconsciousness and even death. If you must drive with the liftgate open or if electrical wiring or other cable connections must pass through the seal between the body and the liftgate or liftglass:

- **Make sure all other windows are shut.**
- **Turn the fan on your heating or cooling system to its highest speed and select the control setting that will force outside air into your vehicle. See Climate Control System in the Index.**
- **If you have air outlets on or under the instrument panel, open them all the way. See *Engine Exhaust on page 2-28*.**

To unlock the liftgate and liftgate glass from the outside use either the power door locks or the remote keyless entry system.

The liftgate glass can be opened using the pushbutton on the liftgate after the doors have been unlocked.

To open the entire liftgate, lift the handle located in the center of the door.

To lock the liftgate and liftgate glass from the outside use the remote keyless entry system or the power door locks.

Windows

⚠ CAUTION:

Leaving children, helpless adults, or pets in a vehicle with the windows closed is dangerous. They can be overcome by the extreme heat and suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Never leave a child, a helpless adult, or a pet alone in a vehicle, especially with the windows closed in warm or hot weather.

Power Windows

The controls for the power windows are located on the armrest on each of the side doors. The switches operate the windows when the ignition is in RUN, ACCESSORY or while Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 2-19*.

The driver's door also has a switch for each of the passenger's windows.

Press the top of the switch to lower the window. Pull up the top of the switch to raise the window.

Express-Down Windows

The driver and front passenger windows also have an express-down feature that allows the windows to be lowered without holding the switch. Press down fully on the window switch, then release, to activate the express-down mode. This mode can be canceled at any time by pulling up on the switch. To open the window partway, press the switch to the first position until the window is at the desired position.

Window Lockout

Press the lockout switch to prevent passengers from operating the power windows from their switches. A light in the lockout switch will come on to show that the switch has been activated. Press the lockout switch again to return to normal operation.

Sun Visors

To block out glare, you can swing down the visors. You can also swing them out to help block glare at the front and side windows.

Illuminated Visor Vanity Mirrors

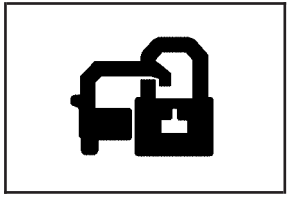
Pull the sunvisor down and lift the mirror cover to turn on the lamps.

Theft-Deterrent Systems

Vehicle theft is big business, especially in some cities. Although your vehicle has a number of theft-deterrent features, we know that nothing we put on it can make it impossible to steal.

Content Theft-Deterrent

Your vehicle is equipped with a content theft-deterrent alarm system.



With this system, the security light in the instrument panel cluster will flash as you open the door if your ignition is off.

This light reminds you to activate the theft-deterrent system. Here's how to do it:

1. Open the door.
2. Lock the door with the power door lock switch or the remote keyless entry transmitter. The security light should come on and stay on.
3. Close all doors. The security light should go off after about 30 seconds. The alarm is not armed until the security light goes off.

If a locked door is opened without the key or the remote keyless entry transmitter, the alarm will go off. The headlamps and parking lamps will flash for two minutes, and the horn will sound for 30 seconds, then will turn off to save the battery power. You can choose different feedback options for the alarm. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 3-49*.

Remember, the theft-deterrent system won't activate if you lock the doors with a key or use the manual door lock. It activates only if you use a power door lock switch with the door open, or with the remote keyless entry transmitter. You should also remember that you can start your vehicle with the correct ignition key if the alarm has been set off.

Here's how to avoid setting off the alarm by accident:

- If you don't want to activate the theft-deterrent system, the vehicle should be locked with the door key *after* the doors are closed.
- Always unlock a door with a key, or use the remote keyless entry transmitter. Unlocking a door any other way will set off the alarm.

If you set off the alarm by accident, unlock any door with the key. You can also turn off the alarm by pressing unlock on the remote keyless entry transmitter. The alarm won't stop if you try to unlock a door any other way.

Testing the Alarm

The alarm can be tested by following these steps:

1. From inside the vehicle, lower the driver's window and open the driver's door.
2. Activate the system by locking the doors with the power door lock switch while the door is open, or with the remote keyless entry transmitter.
3. Get out of the vehicle, close the door and wait for the security light to go out.
4. Then reach in through the window, unlock the door with the manual door lock and open the door. This should set off the alarm.

While the alarm is set, the power door unlock switch is not operational.

If the alarm does not sound when it should but the headlamps flash, check to see if the horn works. The horn fuse may be blown. To replace the fuse, see *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 5-109*.

If the alarm does not sound or the headlamps do not flash, the vehicle should be serviced by your dealer.

Passlock®

Your vehicle is equipped with the Passlock® theft-deterrent system.

Passlock® is a passive theft-deterrent system. Passlock® enables fuel if the ignition lock cylinder is turned with a valid key. If a correct key is not used or the ignition lock cylinder is tampered with, the fuel system is disabled and the vehicle will not start.

During normal operation, the security light will turn off approximately five seconds after the key is turned to RUN.

If the engine stalls and the security light flashes, wait about 10 minutes until the light stops flashing before trying to restart the engine. Remember to release the key from START as soon as the engine starts.

If the engine does not start after three tries, the vehicle needs service.

If the engine is running and the security light comes on, you will be able to restart the engine if you turn the engine off. However, your Passlock® system is not working properly and must be serviced by your dealer. Your vehicle is not protected by Passlock® at this time. You may also want to check the fuse. See *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 5-109*. See your dealer for service.

In an emergency, call the Roadside Assistance Center. See *Roadside Service on page 7-6*.

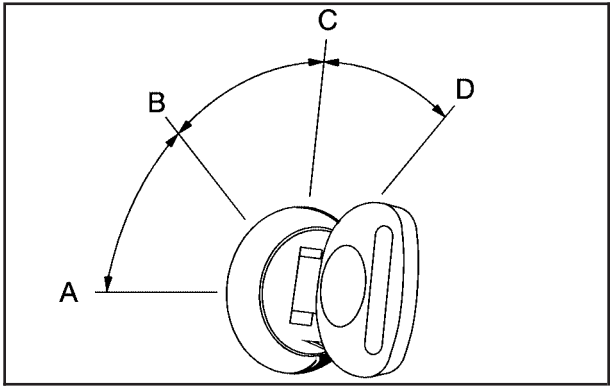
Starting and Operating Your Vehicle

New Vehicle Break-In

Notice: **Your vehicle does not need an elaborate break-in. But it will perform better in the long run if you follow these guidelines:**

- **Keep your speed at 55 mph (88 km/h) or less for the first 500 miles (805 km).**
- **Do not drive at any one speed — fast or slow — for the first 500 miles (805 km). Do not make full-throttle starts.**
- **Avoid making hard stops for the first 200 miles (322 km) or so. During this time your new brake linings are not yet broken in. Hard stops with new linings can mean premature wear and earlier replacement. Follow this breaking-in guideline every time you get new brake linings.**
- **Do not tow a trailer during break-in. See *Towing a Trailer on page 4-54* for more information.**

Ignition Positions



Use the key to turn the ignition switch to four different positions.

A (Lock): This position locks the ignition and transmission. It is a theft-deterrent feature. You will only be able to remove the key when the ignition is turned to LOCK.

Notice: **Using a tool to force the key from the ignition switch could cause damage or break the key. Use the correct key and turn the key only with your hand. Make sure the key is in all the way. If none of this works, then your vehicle needs service.**

B (Accessory): This position lets you use things like the radio and the windshield wipers when the engine is off.

Notice: **Lengthy operation of features such as the radio in the accessory ignition position may drain the battery and prevent your vehicle from starting. Do not operate your vehicle in the accessory ignition position for a long period of time.**

C (Run): This is the position for driving.

D (Start): This position starts the engine.

Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

The Retained Accessory Power (RAP) feature will allow certain features on your vehicle to continue to work for up to 10 minutes after the ignition key is turned to LOCK or until one of the doors is opened.

Starting Your Engine

Your vehicle is equipped with Starter Motor Control. This feature assists in starting the engine and protects the electrical system. This feature may cause the engine to crank even after the ignition key is not in START.

Move your shift lever to PARK (P) or NEUTRAL (N). Your engine will not start in any other position — that is a safety feature. To restart when you are already moving, use NEUTRAL (N) only.

Notice: **Do not try to shift to PARK (P) if your vehicle is moving. If you do, you could damage the transmission. Shift to PARK (P) only when your vehicle is stopped.**

1. With your foot off the accelerator pedal, turn the ignition key to START. When the engine starts, let go of the key. The idle speed will go down as your engine gets warm.

Notice: **Holding your key in START for longer than 15 seconds at a time will disengage the starter motor, cause your battery to be drained much sooner, and add excessive heat that can damage your starter motor. Try not to hold the key in START for longer than 15 seconds and wait about 15 seconds between each try to help avoid draining your battery or damaging your starter.**

2. If it does not start within 10 seconds, push the accelerator pedal all the way to the floor, while you hold the ignition key in START. When the engine starts, let go of the key and let up on the accelerator pedal. Wait about 15 seconds between each try.

When starting your engine in very cold weather (below 0°F or –18°C), do this:

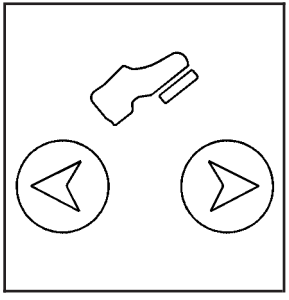
1. With your foot off the accelerator pedal, turn the ignition key to START and hold it there up to 15 seconds. When the engine starts, let go of the key.
2. If your engine still will not start, or starts but then stops, it could be flooded with too much gasoline. Try pushing your accelerator pedal all the way to the floor and holding it there as you hold the key in START for about three seconds. When the engine starts, let go of the key and accelerator. If the vehicle starts briefly but then stops again, do the same thing, but this time keep the pedal down for five or six seconds. This clears the extra gasoline from the engine.

Notice: **Your engine is designed to work with the electronics in your vehicle. If you add electrical parts or accessories, you could change the way the engine operates. Before adding electrical equipment, check with your dealer. If you do not, your engine might not perform properly.**

Adjustable Throttle and Brake Pedal

If your vehicle has this feature, you can change the position of the throttle and brake pedals. This feature is designed for shorter drivers, since the pedals cannot move farther away from the standard position, but can move closer to you for better pedal reach. This feature can be programmed to work with the memory function (if equipped) on your vehicle. See *Memory Seat on page 2-46*.

The vehicle must be in PARK (P) for this feature to operate.



The buttons used to adjust the pedals are located on the driver's side door panel.

Press the button closest to you to move the pedals closer to you. Press the button farthest from you to move the pedals away from you.

Engine Coolant Heater

Your vehicle may be equipped with an engine coolant heater.

In very cold weather, 0°F (–18°C) or colder, the engine coolant heater can help. You will get easier starting and better fuel economy during engine warm-up.

Usually, the coolant heater should be plugged in a minimum of four hours prior to starting your vehicle. At temperatures above 32°F (0°C), use of the coolant heater is not required. Your vehicle may also have an internal thermostat in the plug end of the cord. This will prevent operation of the engine coolant heater when the temperature is at or above 0°F (–18°C) as noted on the cord.

To Use the Engine Coolant Heater

1. Turn off the engine.
2. Open the hood and unwrap the electrical cord. The cord is located on the driver's side of the engine compartment, near the power steering fluid reservoir.
3. Plug it into a normal, grounded 110-volt AC outlet.

⚠ CAUTION:

Plugging the cord into an ungrounded outlet could cause an electrical shock. Also, the wrong kind of extension cord could overheat and cause a fire. You could be seriously injured. Plug the cord into a properly grounded three-prong 110-volt AC outlet. If the cord will not reach, use a heavy-duty three-prong extension cord rated for at least 15 amps.

4. Before starting the engine, be sure to unplug and store the cord as it was before to keep it away from moving engine parts. If you do not, it could be damaged.

How long should you keep the coolant heater plugged in? The answer depends on the outside temperature, the kind of oil you have, and some other things. Instead of trying to list everything here, we ask that you contact your dealer in the area where you will be parking your vehicle. The dealer can give you the best advice for that particular area.

Automatic Transmission Operation

Your vehicle is equipped with an automatic transmission and features an electronic shift position indicator located within the instrument panel cluster.

There are several different positions for your shift lever.

PARK (P): This position locks your drive wheels. It is the best position to use when you start your engine because your vehicle cannot move easily.

⚠ CAUTION:

It is dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in PARK (P) with the parking brake firmly set. Your vehicle can roll.

Do not leave your vehicle when the engine is running unless you have to. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure your vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set your parking brake and move the shift lever to PARK (P). See *Shifting Into Park (P) on page 2-26*. If you are pulling a trailer, see *Towing a Trailer on page 4-54*.

REVERSE (R): Use this gear to back up.

Notice: **Shifting to REVERSE (R) while your vehicle is moving forward could damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Shift to REVERSE (R) only after your vehicle is stopped.**

To rock your vehicle back and forth to get out of snow, ice or sand without damaging your transmission, see *If You Are Stuck: In Sand, Mud, Ice or Snow on page 4-45*.

NEUTRAL (N): In this position, your engine does not connect with the wheels. To restart when you are already moving, use NEUTRAL (N) only.

⚠ CAUTION:

Shifting into a drive gear while your engine is running at high speed is dangerous. Unless your foot is firmly on the brake pedal, your vehicle could move very rapidly. You could lose control and hit people or objects. Do not shift into a drive gear while your engine is running at high speed.

Notice: **Shifting out of PARK (P) or NEUTRAL (N) with the engine running at high speed may damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Be sure the engine is not running at high speed when shifting your vehicle.**

DRIVE (D): This position is for normal driving. If you need more power for passing, and you are:

- Going less than about 35 mph (55 km/h), push your accelerator pedal about halfway down.
- Going about 35 mph (55 km/h) or more, push the accelerator all the way down.

You will shift down to the next gear and have more power.

DRIVE (D) can be used when towing a trailer, carrying a heavy load, driving on steep hills or for off-road driving. You may want to shift the transmission to THIRD (3) or, if necessary, a lower gear selection if the transmission shifts too often.

THIRD (3): This position is also used for normal driving, however it offers more power and lower fuel economy than DRIVE (D).

SECOND (2): This position gives you more power but lower fuel economy. You can use SECOND (2) on hills. It can help control your speed as you go down steep mountain roads, but then you would also want to use your brakes off and on.

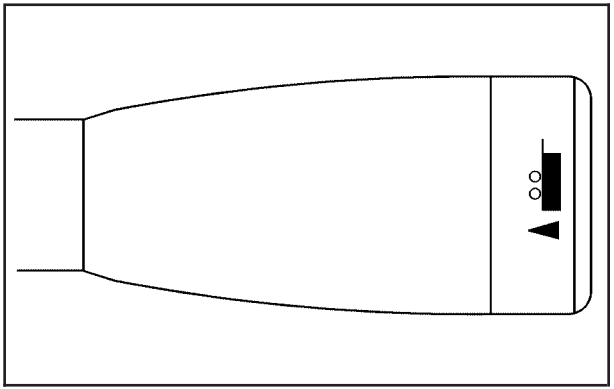
If you manually select SECOND (2), the transmission will drive in second gear. You may use this feature for reducing the speed of the rear wheels when you are trying to start your vehicle from a stop on slippery road surfaces. Once the vehicle is moving, shift into DRIVE (D).

FIRST (1): This position gives you even more power, but lower fuel economy than SECOND (2). You can use it on very steep hills, or in deep snow or mud. If the shift lever is put in FIRST (1) while the vehicle is moving forward, the vehicle will not shift into first gear until the vehicle is going slowly enough.

Notice: **Spinning the tires or holding the vehicle in one place on a hill using only the accelerator pedal may damage the transmission. If you are stuck, do not spin the tires. When stopping on a hill, use the brakes to hold the vehicle in place.**

On cold days, approximately 32°F (0°C) or colder, your transmission is designed to shift differently until the engine reaches normal operating temperature. This is intended to improve heater performance.

Tow/Haul Mode



Your vehicle is equipped with a tow/haul mode. The button for this feature is located on the end of the column shift lever. You can use this feature to assist when towing or hauling a heavy load. See “Tow/Haul Mode” under *Towing a Trailer on page 4-54* for more information.

The tow/haul mode also interacts with the Road Sensing Suspension (RSS) feature to enhance the ride when trailering or with a loaded vehicle. See *Road Sensing Suspension on page 4-9*.

All-Wheel Drive

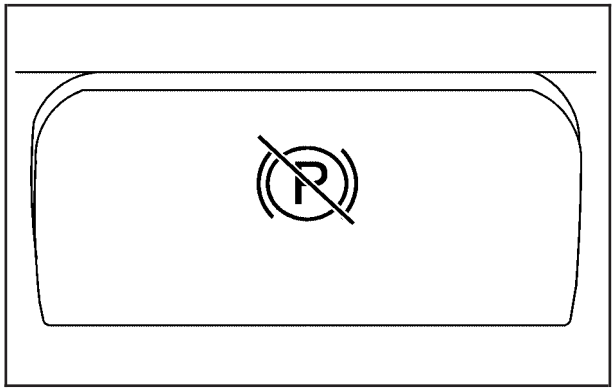
With this feature, engine power is sent to all four wheels when extra traction is needed.

This is like four-wheel drive, but there is no separate lever or switch to engage or disengage the front axle. It is fully automatic, and adjusts itself as needed for road conditions.

Parking Brake

To set the parking brake, hold the regular brake pedal down with your right foot. Push down the parking brake pedal with your left foot.

A chime will activate and the warning light will flash when the parking brake is applied and the vehicle is moving at least 3 mph (5 km/h) for at least three seconds.



To release the parking brake, hold the regular brake pedal down. Pull the bottom edge of the lever, located above the parking brake pedal, with the parking brake symbol, to release the parking brake.

If the ignition is on when the parking brake is released, the brake system warning light will go off.

Notice: **Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the brake system and cause premature wear or damage to brake system parts. Verify that the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off before driving.**

If you are towing a trailer and are parking on any hill, see *Towing a Trailer on page 4-54*.

Shifting Into Park (P)

⚠ CAUTION:

It can be dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in PARK (P) with the parking brake firmly set. Your vehicle can roll. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure your vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, use the steps that follow. If you are pulling a trailer, see *Towing a Trailer on page 4-54*.

1. Hold the brake pedal down with your right foot and set the parking brake with your left foot.
2. Move the shift lever into PARK (P) by pulling the shift lever toward you and moving it up as far as it will go.
3. Turn the ignition key to LOCK.
4. Remove the key and take it with you. If you can leave your vehicle with the ignition key in your hand, your vehicle is in PARK (P).

Leaving Your Vehicle With the Engine Running

⚠ CAUTION:

It can be dangerous to leave your vehicle with the engine running. Your vehicle could move suddenly if the shift lever is not fully in PARK (P) with the parking brake firmly set. And, if you leave the vehicle with the engine running, it could overheat and even catch fire. You or others could be injured. Do not leave your vehicle with the engine running.

If you have to leave your vehicle with the engine running, be sure your vehicle is in PARK (P) and the parking brake is firmly set before you leave it. After you move the shift lever into PARK (P), hold the regular brake pedal down. Then, see if you can move the shift lever away from PARK (P) without first pulling it toward you. If you can, it means that the shift lever was not fully locked into PARK (P).

Torque Lock

If you are parking on a hill and you do not shift your vehicle into PARK (P) properly, the weight of the vehicle may put too much force on the parking pawl in the transmission. You may find it difficult to pull the shift lever out of PARK (P). This is called torque lock.
To prevent torque lock, set the parking brake and then shift into PARK (P) properly before you leave the driver's seat. To find out how, see *Shifting Into Park (P) on page 2-26*.

When you are ready to drive, move the shift lever out of PARK (P) before you release the parking brake.

If torque lock does occur, you may need to have another vehicle push yours a little uphill to take some of the pressure from the parking pawl in the transmission, so you can pull the shift lever out of PARK (P).

Shifting Out of Park (P)

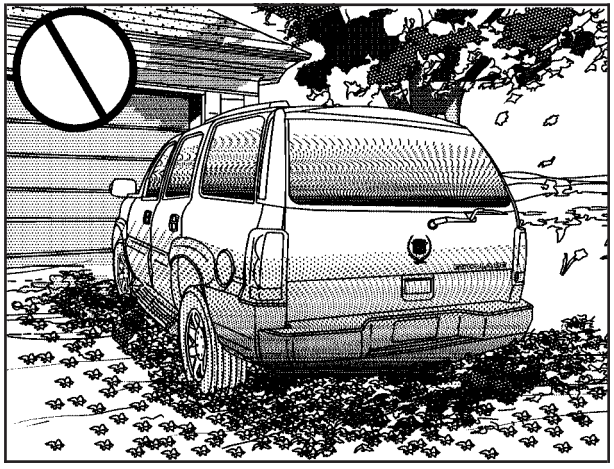
Your vehicle has an automatic transmission shift lock control system. You have to fully apply your regular brakes before you can shift from PARK (P) when the ignition is in RUN. See *Automatic Transmission Operation on page 2-22*.

If you cannot shift out of PARK (P), ease pressure on the shift lever and push the shift lever all the way up into PARK (P) as you maintain brake application. Then, move the shift lever into the gear you want.

If you ever hold the brake pedal down but still cannot shift out of PARK (P), try this:

1. Turn the key to ACCESSORY. There is no shift interlock in this key position.
2. Apply and hold the brake until the end of Step 4.
3. Shift the vehicle to NEUTRAL (N).
4. Start the vehicle and then shift to the drive gear you want.
5. Have the system fixed as soon as possible.

Parking Over Things That Burn



⚠ CAUTION:

Things that can burn could touch hot exhaust parts under your vehicle and ignite. Do not park over papers, leaves, dry grass or other things that can burn.

Engine Exhaust

⚠ CAUTION:

Engine exhaust can kill. It contains the gas carbon monoxide (CO), which you cannot see or smell. It can cause unconsciousness and death.

You might have exhaust coming in if:

- **Your exhaust system sounds strange or different.**
- **Your vehicle gets rusty underneath.**
- **Your vehicle was damaged in a collision.**
- **Your vehicle was damaged when driving over high points on the road or over road debris.**
- **Repairs were not done correctly.**
- **Your vehicle or exhaust system had been modified improperly.**

If you ever suspect exhaust is coming into your vehicle:

- **Drive it only with all the windows down to blow out any CO; and**
- **Have your vehicle fixed immediately.**

Running Your Engine While You Are Parked

It is better not to park with the engine running. But if you ever have to, here are some things to know.

⚠ CAUTION:

Idling the engine with the climate control system off could allow dangerous exhaust into your vehicle. See the earlier caution under *Engine Exhaust on page 2-28*.

Also, idling in a closed-in place can let deadly carbon monoxide (CO) into your vehicle even if the climate control fan is at the highest setting. One place this can happen is a garage. Exhaust — with CO — can come in easily. NEVER park in a garage with the engine running.

Another closed-in place can be a blizzard. See *Winter Driving on page 4-41*.

⚠ CAUTION:

It can be dangerous to get out of your vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in PARK (P) with the parking brake firmly set. Your vehicle can roll. Do not leave your vehicle when the engine is running unless you have to. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure your vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set your parking brake and move the shift lever to PARK (P).

Follow the proper steps to be sure your vehicle will not move. See *Shifting Into Park (P) on page 2-26*.

If you are pulling a trailer, see *Towing a Trailer on page 4-54*.

Mirrors

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror with OnStar®, Compass and Temperature Display

Your vehicle may have this feature. When on, the automatic dimming mirror dims to the proper level to minimize glare from lights behind you after dark.

The mirror has a dual display in the upper right corner of the mirror face that shows the compass reading and the outside temperature.

Control buttons for the OnStar® system are at the bottom of the mirror. See *OnStar® System on page 2-35* for more information about the services OnStar® provides.

⏻ **(On/Off):** This is the on/off button.

Temperature and Compass Display

Press the on/off button, located to the far left, briefly to turn the compass/temperature display on or off.

If the display reads CAL, the compass needs to be calibrated. For more information, see “Compass Calibration” following.

To adjust between Fahrenheit and Celsius, do the following:

1. Press and hold the on/off button for approximately four seconds until either a flashing F or C appears.
2. Press the button again to change the display to the desired unit of measurement. After approximately four seconds of inactivity, the new unit will be locked in and the compass/temperature display will return.

If an abnormal temperature reading is displayed for an extended period of time, please see your GM dealer. Under certain circumstances, a delay in updating the temperature is normal.

Automatic Dimming Mirror Operation

The automatic dimming mirror function is turned on automatically each time the ignition is started. To operate the automatic dimming mirror, do the following:

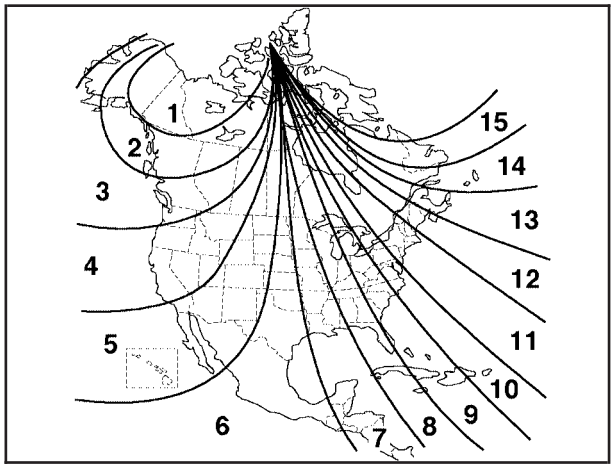
1. Make sure the green indicator light, located to the left of the on/off button, is lit. If it is not, press and hold the on/off button for approximately six seconds until the green light comes on, indicating that the mirror is in automatic dimming mode.
2. Turn off the automatic dimming mirror function by pressing and holding the on/off button for approximately six seconds, until the green indicator light turns off.

Compass Variance

The mirror is set in zone eight upon leaving the factory. It will be necessary to adjust the compass to compensate for compass variance if the vehicle is outside of zone eight. Under certain circumstances, as during a long distance cross-country trip, it will be necessary to adjust for compass variance. Compass variance is the difference between earth's magnetic north and true geographic north. If not adjusted to account for compass variance, the compass could give false readings.

To adjust for compass variance, do the following:

1. Find your current location and variance zone number on the following zone map.



2. Press and hold the on/off button until a Z and a zone number appears in the display. The compass is now in zone mode.

3. Keep pressing the on/off button until the desired zone number appears in the display. Release the button. After approximately four seconds of inactivity, the new zone number will be locked in and the compass/temperature display will return.
4. Calibrate the compass as described next.

Compass Calibration

The compass may need calibration if one of the following occurs:

- After approximately five seconds, the display does not show a compass heading, N for North, for example, there may be a strong magnetic field interfering with the compass. Such interference may be caused by a magnetic antenna mount, magnetic note pad holder, or a similar magnetic item.
- The compass does not display the correct heading and the compass zone variance is set correctly.

In order to calibrate, CAL must be displayed in the mirror compass windows. If CAL is not displayed, push the on/off button for approximately 12 seconds or until CAL is displayed.

The compass can be calibrated by driving the vehicle in circles at 5 mph (8 km/h) or less until the display reads a direction.

Passenger Air Bag Indicator

The vehicle may be equipped with a passenger airbag indicator, on the mirror glass, just above the buttons. For more information, see *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-80* and *Passenger Airbag Status Indicator on page 3-35*.

Cleaning the Mirror

When cleaning the mirror, use a paper towel or similar material dampened with glass cleaner. Do not spray glass cleaner directly on the mirror as that may cause the liquid cleaner to enter the mirror housing.

Outside Power Mirrors

The controls are located on the driver's door armrest.

Move the upper selector switch to the left or right to choose the mirror to be adjusted, then press the dots, located below the selector switch on the four-way control pad, to adjust the direction of each mirror.

The mirrors may also include a memory function which works in conjunction with the memory seats. See *Memory Seat on page 2-46* for more information.

Power Folding Mirrors

To fold or unfold the mirrors, move the selector switch, located above the mirror control, to the middle position. The mirror control will illuminate. Press the right or left side of the mirror control to fold or unfold the mirrors. The mirror will adjust as it folds in and will reposition itself once it is unfolded.

If the mirrors are accidentally folded/unfolded manually, they may shake or flutter at normal driving speeds and may not stay in the unfolded position. If this happens, the mirrors need to be reset. See "Resetting the Power Folding Mirrors" next.

Resetting the Power Folding Mirrors

The power folding mirrors will need to be reset if:

- They are accidently manually folded/unfolded.
- The mirrors will not stay in the unfolded position.
- The mirrors shake and flutter at normal driving speeds.

To reset the power folding mirrors, fold and unfold them at least three times using the mirror controls. This will reset them to their normal detent position.

Outside Convex Mirror

⚠ CAUTION:

A convex mirror can make things (like other vehicles) look farther away than they really are. If you cut too sharply into the right lane, you could hit a vehicle on your right. Check your inside mirror or glance over your shoulder before changing lanes.

The passenger's side mirror is convex. A convex mirror's surface is curved so more can be seen from the driver's seat. It makes things in the mirror appear farther away than they really are.

Outside Heated Mirrors

If the vehicle has heated mirrors, the button to turn this function on or off is located on the climate control panel.

Press this button to warm the driver's and passenger's outside rearview mirrors to help clear them of ice, snow, and condensation.

If the vehicle has a rear window defogger, the heated mirrors will come on when this button is pressed. See "Rear Window Defogger" under *Dual Automatic Climate Control System on page 3-22* for more information.

Outside Automatic Dimming Mirror with Curb View Assist

Your vehicle may have this feature.

The driver's outside mirror will adjust for the glare of the headlamps behind you. See *Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror with OnStar®, Compass and Temperature Display on page 2-30*.

Your vehicle's mirrors will also be capable of performing the curb view assist mirror function. This feature will cause the passenger's and/or driver's mirror to tilt to a preselected position when the vehicle is in REVERSE (R). This feature may be useful in allowing you to view the curb when you are parallel parking.

When the vehicle is shifted out of REVERSE (R) and a short delay has occurred, the passenger's and/or driver's mirror will return to its original position.

To change the preselected tilt position, adjust the mirrors to the desired position while the vehicle is in REVERSE (R). When the vehicle is shifted out of REVERSE (R), this new position is saved in memory as the tilt position.

This feature can be enabled/disabled through the Driver Information Center. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 3-49* for more information.

OnStar® System

OnStar® uses global positioning system (GPS) satellite technology, wireless communications, and call centers to provide you with a wide range of safety, security, information, and convenience services.

A complete OnStar® user's guide and the terms and conditions of the OnStar® Subscription Service Agreement are included in the vehicle's glove box literature. For more information, visit www.onstar.com or www.onstarcanada.com. Contact OnStar® at 1-888-4-ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827), or press the OnStar® button to speak to an OnStar® advisor 24 hours a day, 7 days a week.

Terms and conditions of the Subscription Service Agreement can be found at www.onstar.com or www.onstarcanada.com.

OnStar® Services

The Directions and Connections Plan is included on new vehicles for the first year from the date of purchase. The OnStar® subscription can be extended for time beyond the first year to meet your needs. For more information, press the OnStar® button to speak with an advisor.

Directions and Connections Plan

- Automatic Notification of Airbag Deployment
- Emergency Services
- Roadside Assistance
- Stolen Vehicle Tracking
- AccidentAssist
- Remote Door Unlock/Vehicle Alert
- Remote Diagnostics
- Online Concierge
- Driving Directions
- RideAssist
- Information and Convenience Services

OnStar® Personal Calling

As an OnStar® subscriber, the Personal Calling capability is a hands-free wireless phone that is integrated into the vehicle. Calls can be placed nationwide using simple voice commands with no additional contracts and no additional roaming charges. To find out more about OnStar® Personal Calling, refer to the OnStar® user's guide in the vehicle's glove box, visit www.onstar.com or www.onstarcanada.com; or speak to an OnStar® advisor by pressing the OnStar® button or calling 1-888-4-ONSTAR (1-888-466-7827).

OnStar® Virtual Advisor

Virtual Advisor is a feature of OnStar® Personal Calling that uses minutes to access up-to-date weather and traffic reports for your area, news and sports updates, stock quotes, entertainment, and more. You are also able to listen and reply to E-mail through the vehicle's audio system. Customize your information profile at www.myonstar.com. See the OnStar® user's guide for more information.

OnStar® Steering Wheel Controls

A steering wheel control can be used to interact with the OnStar® personal calling feature.

Press the control with this symbol on the steering wheel to make a phone call.

When calling into voice mail systems, or to dial directory numbers, press the control, say the number(s), then say "dial".

See the OnStar® user's guide for more information.

HomeLink® Transmitter

HomeLink® a combined universal transmitter and receiver, provides a way to replace up to three hand-held transmitters used to activate devices such as gate operators, garage door openers, entry door locks, security systems and home lighting. Additional HomeLink® information can be found on the Internet at www.homelink.com or by calling 1-800-355-3515.

If your vehicle is equipped with the HomeLink® Transmitter, it complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and
(2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

This device complies with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:
(1) this device may not cause interference, and
(2) this device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes and modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

Programming the HomeLink® Transmitter

Do not use the HomeLink® Transmitter with any garage door opener that does not have the “stop and reverse” feature. This includes any garage door opener model manufactured before April 1, 1982. If you have a newer garage door opener with rolling codes, please be sure to follow Steps 6 through 8 to complete the programming of your HomeLink® Transmitter.

Read the instructions completely before attempting to program the HomeLink® Transmitter. Because of the steps involved, it may be helpful to have another person available to assist you in programming the transmitter.

Keep the original transmitter for use in other vehicles as well as for future HomeLink® programming. It is also recommended that upon the sale of the vehicle, the programmed HomeLink® buttons should be erased for security purposes. Refer to “Erasing HomeLink® Buttons” or, for assistance, contact HomeLink® on the Internet at: www.homelink.com or by calling 1-800-355-3515.

Be sure that people and objects are clear of the garage door or gate operator you are programming. When programming a garage door, it is advised to park outside of the garage.

It is recommended that a new battery be installed in your hand-held transmitter for quicker and more accurate transmission of the radio frequency.

Programming HomeLink®

Your vehicle’s engine should be turned off while programming the transmitter. Follow these steps to program up to three channels:

1. Press and hold down the two outside buttons, releasing only when the indicator light begins to flash, after 20 seconds. Do not hold down the buttons for longer than 30 seconds and do not repeat this step to program a second and/or third transmitter to the remaining two HomeLink® buttons.
2. Position the end of your hand-held transmitter about 1 to 3 inches (3 to 8 cm) away from the HomeLink® buttons while keeping the indicator light in view.
3. Simultaneously press and hold both the desired button on HomeLink® and the hand-held transmitter button. Do not release the buttons until Step 4 has been completed.

   Some entry gates and garage door openers may require you to substitute Step 3 with the procedure noted in “Gate Operator and Canadian Programming” later in this section.
4. The indicator light will flash slowly at first and then rapidly after HomeLink® successfully receives the frequency signal from the hand-held transmitter. Release both buttons.
5. Press and hold the newly-trained HomeLink® button and observe the indicator light.

   If the indicator light stays on constantly, programming is complete and your device should activate when the HomeLink® button is pressed and released.

   To program the remaining two HomeLink® buttons, begin with Step 2 under “Programming HomeLink®.” Do not repeat Step 1 as this will erase all of the programmed channels.

If the indicator light blinks rapidly for two seconds and then turns to a constant light, continue with Steps 6 through 8 following to complete the programming of a rolling-code equipped device (most commonly, a garage door opener).

6. Locate in the garage, the garage door opener receiver (motor-head unit). Locate the “Learn” or “Smart” button. This can usually be found where the hanging antenna wire is attached to the motor-head unit.
7. Firmly press and release the “Learn” or “Smart” button. The name and color of the button may vary by manufacturer.

   You will have 30 seconds to start Step 8.
8. Return to the vehicle. Firmly press and hold the programmed HomeLink® button for two seconds, then release. Repeat the press/hold/release sequence a second time, and depending on the brand of the garage door opener (or other rolling code device), repeat this sequence a third time to complete the programming.

   HomeLink® should now activate your rolling-code equipped device.

To program the remaining two HomeLink® buttons, begin with Step 2 of “Programming HomeLink®.” You do not want to repeat Step 1, as this will erase all previous programming.

Gate Operator and Canadian Programming

Canadian radio-frequency laws require transmitter signals to “time out” or quit after several seconds of transmission. This may not be long enough for HomeLink® to pick up the signal during programming. Similarly, some U.S. gate operators are manufactured to “time out” in the same manner.

If you live in Canada, or you are having difficulty programming a gate operator by using the “Programming HomeLink®” procedures (regardless of where you live), replace Step 3 under “Programming HomeLink®” with the following:

Continue to press and hold the HomeLink® button while you press and release every two seconds (cycle) your hand-held transmitter until the frequency signal has been successfully accepted by HomeLink®. The indicator light will flash slowly at first and then rapidly. Proceed with Step 4 under “Programming HomeLink®” to complete.

Using HomeLink®

Press and hold the appropriate HomeLink® button for at least half of a second. The indicator light will come on while the signal is being transmitted.

Erasing HomeLink® Buttons

To erase programming from the three buttons do the following:

1. Press and hold down the two outside buttons until the indicator light begins to flash, after 20 seconds. Do not hold the two outside buttons for longer than 30 seconds.
2. Release both buttons.

HomeLink® is now in the train (learning) mode and can be programmed at any time beginning with Step 2 under “Programming HomeLink®” shown earlier in this section.

Individual buttons cannot be erased, but they can be reprogrammed. See “Reprogramming a Single HomeLink® Button” following this section.

Reprogramming a Single HomeLink® Button

To program a device to HomeLink® using a HomeLink® button previously trained, follow these steps:

1. Press and hold the desired HomeLink® button. Do not release the button.
2. The indicator light will begin to flash after 20 seconds. While still holding the HomeLink® button, proceed with Step 2 under “Programming HomeLink®” shown earlier in this section.

Resetting Defaults

To reset HomeLink® to default settings do the following:

1. Hold down the two outside buttons for about 20 seconds until the indicator light begins to flash.
2. Continue to hold both buttons until the HomeLink® indicator light turns off.
3. Release both buttons.

For questions or comments, contact HomeLink® at 1-800-355-3515, or on the Internet at www.homelink.com.

Storage Areas

Glove Box

Open the glove box by pulling the bottom of the handle upward.

Cupholder(s)

Your vehicle is equipped with cupholders for the front and rear passengers.

The cupholders are located in the center console for the front passengers and on the rear of the center console for the rear passengers.

To use the front cupholders, press down on the access door and release. The door will then open. Push the door back down to close it.

The front cupholder may be removed for cleaning by pushing down and then back on the cupholder.

Some vehicles may be equipped with a heated and cooled front cupholders.

Perform the following procedure to use your front cupholders:

1. Place the provided beverage container in the cup holder.
2. Press the top (red dot) of the switch to heat the cup holder or press the bottom (blue dot) of the switch to cool the cup holder. Press the same switch again to turn off the cup holder.

If you dim your interior lights to the lowest setting, the cupholder will automatically shutoff. This prevents the cupholder from being on when the indicator light may be too dim to see. To use your cupholder, adjust the interior lights to a brighter setting.

To use the rear cupholders, pull down on the door located on the back of the console.

Instrument Panel Storage Area

Your vehicle may have a closed storage area on the instrument panel above the compact disc changer. You can open the storage area by pressing in the bottom of the lid and the lid will automatically raise up. Press down on the lid to close the storage area.

Center Console Storage Area

Your vehicle has a console compartment between the bucket seats.

To open it, press the button on the side of the console and swing the console lid open.

The console may be equipped with an accessory power outlet inside. See *Accessory Power Outlets on page 3-21*.

The rear of the console also has a cupholder that swings down for the rear seat passengers to use.

Luggage Carrier

You can load things on top of your vehicle if it has this feature.

The luggage carrier has slats and siderails attached to the roof and may have crossrails which can be moved back and forth to help secure cargo. Tie the load to the siderails or siderail supports.

Notice: **Loading cargo on the luggage carrier that weighs more than 200 lbs (91 kg) or hangs over the rear or sides of the vehicle may damage your vehicle. Load cargo so that it rests on the slats as far forward as possible and against the side rails, making sure to fasten it securely.**

Don't exceed the maximum vehicle capacity when loading your vehicle. For more information on vehicle capacity and loading, see *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-47*.

To prevent damage or loss of cargo as you're leaving, check now and then to make sure the luggage and cargo are still securely fastened.

Be sure the cargo is properly loaded.

- If small heavy objects are placed on the roof cut a piece of 3/8 inch plywood to fit inside the crossrails and siderails to spread the load. If plywood is used, tie it to the siderail supports.
- Tie the load to the crossrails or the siderail supports. Use the crossrails only to keep the load from sliding. To move a crossrail, turn the release knobs, on both sides of the rail, counterclockwise to loosen it. Slide the crossrail to the desired position balancing the force side to side. Turn the release knobs, on both sides of the rail, clockwise to tighten it and try to slide the crossrail back and forth slightly to be sure it is tight.

- If you need to carry long items, move the crossrails as far apart as they will go. Tie the load to the crossrails and the siderails or siderail supports. Also tie the load to the bumpers. Do not tie the load so tightly that the crossrails or siderails are damaged.
- After moving a crossrail, be sure it is securely locked into the siderail.

Your vehicle has a Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL) located above the rear glass.

If items are loaded on the roof of the vehicle, care should be taken not to block or damage the CHMSL unit.

Rear Seat Armrest

Your vehicle's second row seat may have an armrest/storage compartment.

Pull the loop at the top of the armrest out to lower the armrest.

To open the compartment, if equipped, push the button on the front of the armrest and pull the top open.

Convenience Net

The convenience net (if equipped) in the rear of your vehicle helps to keep small loads in place during sharp turns or quick stops and starts.

The net is not designed for larger, heavier items.

To install the net, attach the hooks to the raised cargo tie downs. Then, attach the cord loops to the button retainers in the side trim.

You can unhook the net so that it will lie flat when you're not using it.

Cargo Cover

⚠ CAUTION:

An improperly stored cargo cover could be thrown about the vehicle during a collision or sudden maneuver. You or others could be injured. If you remove the cover, always store it in the proper storage location. When you put it back, always be sure that it is securely reattached.

If you have a cargo cover, you can use it to cover items in the cargo area of your vehicle.

To use the cover, do the following:

1. Pull the cover handle toward the rear of the vehicle.
2. Latch the cover posts into the retaining sockets on the cargo area trim panels.

To return the cover to the retracted position, do the following:

1. Pull up on the cover handle to release the cover posts from the retaining sockets.
2. Let the cover move forward to the full retracted position.

To remove the cover from the vehicle, do the following:

1. Let the cover go all the way into the holder.
2. Then, grasping the passenger's side cover endcap, push the cover endcap toward the driver's side of the vehicle. The endcap should lock in the compressed position.
3. Lift the cover up on the passenger's side, swing the cover rearward and take it out of the vehicle.

To put the cover in the vehicle, do the following:

1. Make sure the cover slot in the holder faces rearward with the round surface facing down.
2. Then, hold the cover at an angle and place the cover holder tab into the slot in the driver's side trim panel.

3. Move the other end of the cover forward and hold it next to the passenger's side trim panel slot.
4. Push the button on top of the passenger's side endcap. This will allow the cover to extend into the trim slot.
5. Lightly pull on the cover holder to make sure it is secure.

   On some models there are two slots. The slots furthest forward allow the cover to be used if the third seat is removed or folded down.

Cargo Tie Downs

Your vehicle may be equipped with cargo tie downs in the rear cargo area that allow you to strap cargo in and keep it from moving inside the vehicle.

When not using the tie downs, flip them down out of the way.

Sunroof

Your vehicle may be equipped with a power sliding sunroof. To open or close your sunroof, the ignition needs to be on or RAP needs to be active. See "Retained Accessory Power" under *Ignition Positions on page 2-18*.

Press and release the rear side of the button located in the front overhead console to express-open the glass panel and sunshade. To close the glass panel, press and hold the front of the button. The glass will not be fully seated unless the button is held until the glass stops moving. With the sunroof closed, press the forward side of the button to open the sunroof to the vent position.

The sunroof is also equipped with a sunshade which you can pull forward to block sun rays.

If a hand, arm, or other object is blocking the sunroof glass panel as it is closing, the glass panel will stop at the obstruction. After the obstruction is removed, the glass panel can be closed or opened.

Use care not to leave the sunroof open for long periods of time as debris may collect in the tracks.

If the battery has been recharged, disconnected or is not working, you may need to reprogram the sunroof. To do this, start the vehicle and press the forward side of the sunroof button until the glass panel moves to a fully closed position. Release, and press again to move to the vent position which occurs when the sunroof is fully tilted rearward. This will reset the memory and enable the sunroof to function properly.

Vehicle Personalization

Memory Seat

If your vehicle has this feature, the controls for the memory function are located on the driver's door.

These buttons are used to program and recall memory settings for the driver's seat, throttle and brake pedals and both the driver's and passenger's outside mirrors. The settings for these features can be saved for up to two drivers.

To store the settings, do the following:

1. While the vehicle is in PARK (P), adjust the driver's seat, including the seatback recliner, lumbar, and side wing area, throttle and brake pedals and both of the outside mirrors to your preference.

2. Press and hold the 1 or 2 button of the memory control for three seconds. A double chime will sound to let you know that the position has been stored.

To repeat the procedure for a second driver, follow the preceding steps, but press the other numbered memory control button.

Each time button 1 or 2 is pressed and released while the vehicle is in PARK (P), a single chime will sound and the memory position will be recalled.

To stop recall movement of the memory seat feature at any time, press one of the memory buttons or power seat controls.

Easy Exit Seat

The controls for this memory function are located on the driver's door.

(Easy Exit Seat): This button is used to program and recall the desired driver's seat position when exiting/entering the vehicle. The seat position can be saved for up to two drivers.

To store the seat exit position, do the following:

1. Press and release the 1 or 2 button. The seat will move to the stored memory position.
2. Adjust the seat to the desired exit position.
3. Press and hold the exit button of the memory control for three seconds. A double chime will sound to let you know that the position has been stored for the selected button (1 or 2).

To repeat the procedure for a second driver, follow the preceding steps, but press the other numbered memory control button.

To use the seat exit position, do one of the following:

- Press the exit button on the memory control.
- Or, if this feature is activated in the Driver Information Center (DIC), removing the key from the ignition will move the seat to the exit position.

See "Easy Exit Seat" under *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-63* for more information on activating this feature in the DIC.

NOTES

Section 3 Instrument Panel

Instrument Panel Overview 3-4
Hazard Warning Flashers 3-6
Other Warning Devices 3-6
Horn 3-6
Tilt Wheel 3-7
Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever 3-7
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 3-8
Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer 3-8
Flash-to-Pass 3-9
Windshield Wipers 3-9
Windshield Washer 3-10
Cruise Control 3-11
Exterior Lamps 3-14
Headlamps on Reminder 3-15
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 3-15
Automatic Headlamp System 3-15
Fog Lamps 3-16
Instrument Panel Brightness 3-17
Dome Lamps 3-17
Entry/Exit Lighting 3-17
Reading Lamps 3-18
Battery Run-Down Protection 3-18
Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) 3-18
Accessory Power Outlets 3-21
Ashtrays and Cigarette Lighter 3-21
Analog Clock 3-22

Climate Controls 3-22
Dual Automatic Climate Control System 3-22
Outlet Adjustment 3-28
Rear Climate Control System 3-29

Warning Lights, Gages, and Indicators 3-31
Instrument Panel Cluster 3-32
Speedometer and Odometer 3-33
Tachometer 3-33
Safety Belt Reminder Light 3-33
Airbag Readiness Light 3-34
Passenger Airbag Status Indicator 3-35
Charging System Light 3-36
Voltmeter Gage 3-37
Brake System Warning Light 3-37
Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Light 3-39
Low Tire Pressure Warning Light 3-39
Traction Off Light 3-40

Section 3 Instrument Panel

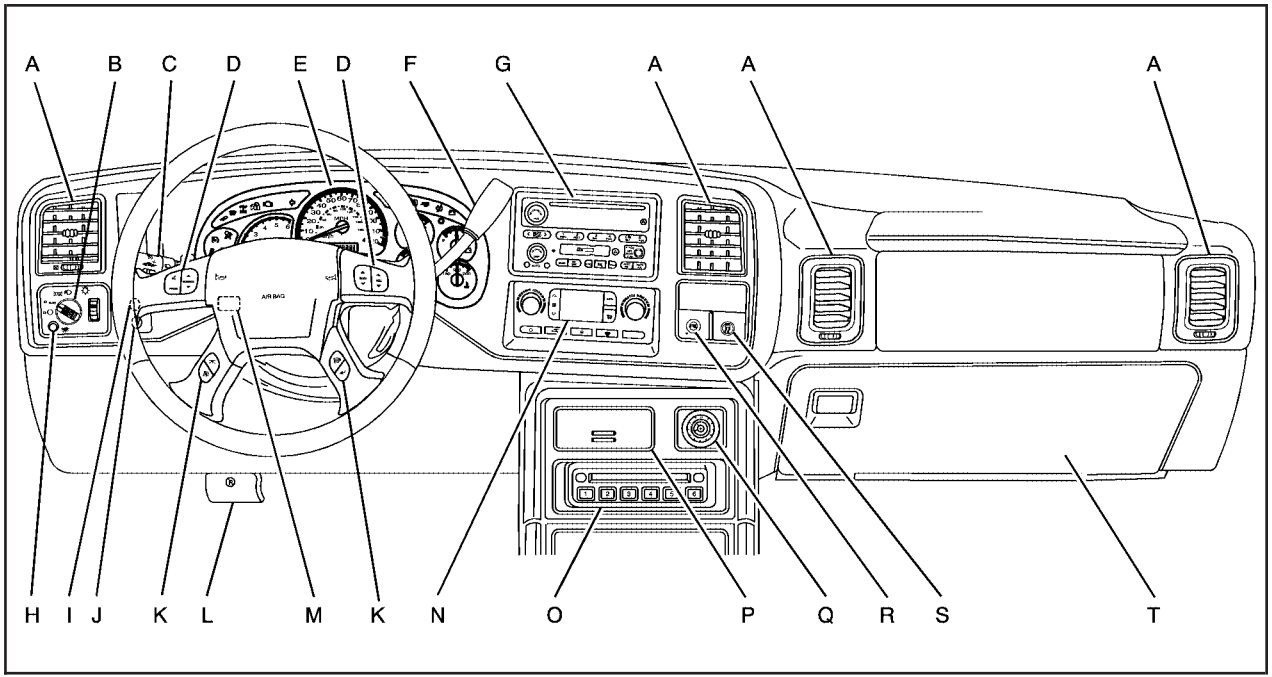
Engine Coolant Temperature Gage 3-40
Transmission Temperature Gage 3-41
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 3-42
Oil Pressure Gage 3-45
Security Light 3-46
Cruise Control Light 3-47
Highbeam On Light 3-47
Tow/Haul Mode Light 3-47
Fuel Gage 3-48
Low Fuel Warning Light 3-48

Driver Information Center (DIC) 3-49
DIC Operation and Displays 3-50
DIC Warnings and Messages 3-53
DIC Vehicle Customization 3-63

Audio System(s) 3-69
Setting the Time 3-70
Radio with Cassette and CD 3-70
Rear Seat Entertainment System 3-84
Navigation/Radio System 3-96
Rear Seat Audio (RSA) 3-97
CD Changer 3-99
Theft-Deterrent Feature 3-102
Audio Steering Wheel Controls 3-102
Radio Reception 3-103
Care of Your Cassette Tape Player 3-104
Care of Your CDs and DVDs 3-105
Care of Your CD Player 3-105
Care of Your CD and DVD Player 3-105
Diversity Antenna System 3-106
XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System 3-106
Chime Level Adjustment 3-106

NOTES

Instrument Panel Overview



The main components of your instrument panel are the following:

A. Air Outlets. See *Outlet Adjustment on page 3-28*.

B. Exterior Lamps Control. See *Exterior Lamps on page 3-14*.

C. Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever. See *Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever on page 3-7*.

D. OnStar® and Radio Steering Wheel Buttons. See *OnStar® System on page 2-35* and *Audio Steering Wheel Controls on page 3-102*.

E. Instrument Panel Cluster. See *Instrument Panel Cluster on page 3-32*.

F. Shift Lever/Tow/Haul Selector Button. See *Automatic Transmission Operation on page 2-22* and *Tow/Haul Mode on page 2-24*.

G. Audio System. See *Audio System(s) on page 3-69*.

H. Dome Override Button. See *Dome Lamps on page 3-17*.

I. Rear Wiper Washer. See *Windshield Washer on page 3-10*.

J. Fog Lamps Button. See *Fog Lamps on page 3-16*.

K. Driver Information Center (DIC) Buttons. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 3-49*.

L. Parking Brake Release. See *Parking Brake on page 2-25*.

M. Tilt Lever. See *Tilt Wheel on page 3-7*.

N. Climate Control System. See *Dual Automatic Climate Control System on page 3-22*.

O. Compact Disc Changer. See *CD Changer on page 3-99*.

P. Storage Area. See *Instrument Panel Storage Area on page 2-41*.

Q. Analog Clock. See *Analog Clock on page 3-22*.

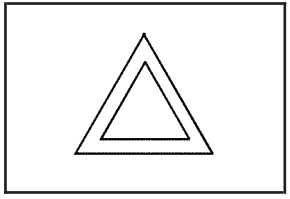
R. Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist Button. See *Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) on page 3-18*.

S. StabiliTrak® Button. See *StabiliTrak® System on page 4-9*.

T. Glove Box. See *Glove Box on page 2-41*.

Hazard Warning Flashers

Your hazard warning flashers let you warn others. They also let police know you have a problem. Your front and rear turn signal lamps will flash on and off.



The hazard warning flasher button is located on top of the steering column.

Your hazard warning flashers work no matter what position your key is in, and even if the key is not in the ignition.

Press the button to make the front and rear turn signal lamps flash on and off. Press the button again to turn the flashers off.

When the hazard warning flashers are on, your turn signals will not work.

Other Warning Devices

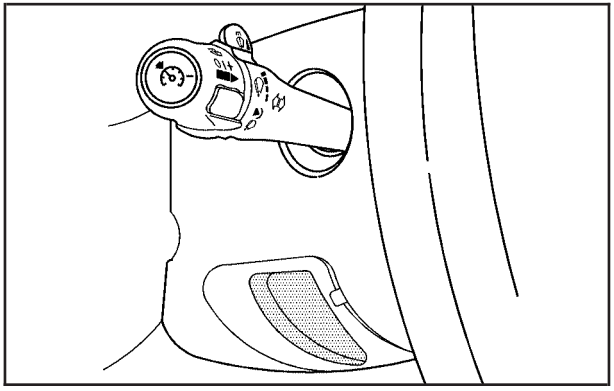
If you carry reflective triangles, you can set them up at the side of the road about 300 feet (100 m) behind your vehicle.

Horn

To sound the horn, press the center pad on the steering wheel.

Tilt Wheel

The tilt steering wheel allows you to adjust the steering wheel before you drive. You can raise it to the highest level to give your legs more room when you enter and exit the vehicle.



The tilt lever is located on the driver's side of the steering column under the turn signal lever.

To tilt the wheel, hold the steering wheel and pull the lever. Move the steering wheel to a comfortable level, then release the lever to lock the wheel in place.

Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever

The lever on the left side of the steering column includes the following:

- Turn and Lane Change Signals. *Turn and Lane-Change Signals on page 3-8*.
- Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer. *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer on page 3-8*.
- Flash-to-Pass Feature. See *Flash-to-Pass on page 3-9*.
- Windshield Wipers. See *Windshield Wipers on page 3-9*.

- Windshield Washer. See *Windshield Washer on page 3-10*.
- Cruise Control. *Cruise Control on page 3-11*.

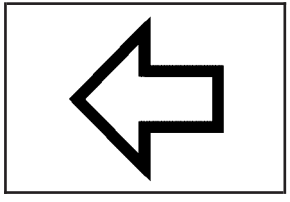
For information on the exterior lamps, see *Exterior Lamps on page 3-14* later in this section.

Turn and Lane-Change Signals

The turn signal has two upward (for right) and two downward (for left) positions. These positions allow you to signal a turn or a lane change.

To signal a turn, move the lever all the way up or down. When the turn is finished, the lever will return automatically.

To signal a lane change, just raise or lower the lever until the arrow starts to flash. Hold it there until you complete your lane change. The lever will return by itself when you release it.



An arrow on the instrument panel cluster will flash in the direction of the turn or lane change.

As you signal a turn or a lane change, if the arrows flash more quickly than normal, a signal bulb may be burned out and other drivers won't see your turn signal.

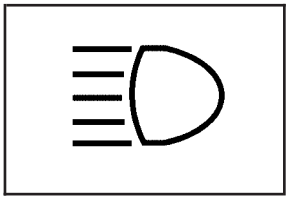
If a bulb is burned out, replace it to help avoid an accident. If the arrows don't go on at all when you signal a turn, check for burned-out bulbs and a blown fuse. See *Instrument Panel Fuse Block on page 5-109* and *Underhood Fuse Block on page 5-113*.

Turn Signal On Chime

If your turn signal is left on for more than 3/4 of a mile (1.2 km), a chime will sound at each flash of the turn signal and the message TURN SIGNAL ON will also appear in the DIC. To turn the chime and message off, move the turn signal lever to the off position.

Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer

(Headlamp High/Low Beam Changer):
To change the headlamps from low to high beam, push the lever toward the instrument panel. To return to low-beam headlamps, pull the multifunction lever toward you. Then release it.



When the high beams are on, this indicator light on the instrument panel cluster will also be on.

Flash-to-Pass

This feature lets you use your high-beam headlamps to signal a driver in front of you that you want to pass. It works even if your headlamps are in the automatic position.

To use it, pull the turn signal lever toward you, then release it.

If your headlamps are in the automatic position or on low beam, your high-beam headlamps will turn on. They'll stay on as long as you hold the lever toward you. The high-beam indicator on the instrument panel cluster will come on. Release the lever to return to normal operation.

Windshield Wipers

You control the windshield wipers by turning the band with the wiper symbol on it.

(Mist): For a single wiping cycle, turn the band to mist. Hold it there until the wipers start. Then let go. The wipers will stop after one wipe. If you want more wipes, hold the band on mist longer.

(Delay): You can set the wiper speed for a long or short delay between wipes. This can be very useful in light rain or snow. Turn the band to choose the delay time. The closer to the top of the lever, the shorter the delay.

(Low Speed): For steady wiping at low speed, turn the band away from you to the first solid band past the delay settings.

(High Speed): For high-speed wiping, turn the band further, to the second solid band past the delay settings.

(Off): To stop the wipers, move the band to off.

Be sure to clear ice and snow from the wiper blades before using them. If they're frozen to the windshield, carefully loosen or thaw them. If your blades do become worn or damaged, get new blades or blade inserts.

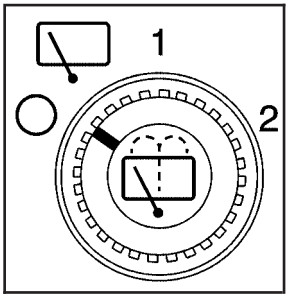
Windshield Washer

(Washer Fluid): There is a paddle marked with the windshield washer symbol at the top of the multifunction lever. To spray washer fluid on the windshield, push the paddle. The wipers will clear the window and then either stop or return to your preset speed.

⚠ CAUTION:

In freezing weather, do not use your washer until the windshield is warmed. Otherwise the washer fluid can form ice on the windshield, blocking your vision.

Rear Window Washer/Wiper



If your vehicle has a rear window washer/wiper, this knob is located on the instrument panel to the left of the steering wheel.

To turn the rear wiper on, turn the knob to either 1 or 2. For long delayed wiping, turn the knob to 1. For short delayed wiping, turn the knob to 2

(Off): To turn the wiper off, turn the knob to this symbol.

(Washer Fluid): To wash the window, press the knob with this symbol.

The rear window washer uses the same fluid bottle as the windshield washer. However, the rear window washer will run out of fluid before the windshield washer. If you can wash your windshield but not your rear windows, check the fluid level.

Cruise Control

◯ **(Off):** This position turns the system off.

| **(On):** This position activates the system.

+ (Resume/Accelerate): Push the lever to this symbol to make the vehicle accelerate or resume to a previously set speed.

(Set): Press this button to set the speed.

With cruise control, you can maintain a speed of about 25 mph (40 km/h) or more without keeping your foot on the accelerator. This can really help on long trips. Cruise control does not work at speeds below about 25 mph (40 km/h).

If you apply your brakes, the cruise control will shut off.

⚠ CAUTION:

Cruise control can be dangerous where you cannot drive safely at a steady speed. So, do not use your cruise control on winding roads or in heavy traffic.

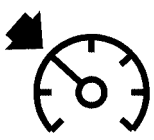
Cruise control can be dangerous on slippery roads. On such roads, fast changes in tire traction can cause needless wheel spinning, and you could lose control. Do not use cruise control on slippery roads.

Setting Cruise Control

⚠ CAUTION:

If you leave your cruise control on when you are not using cruise, you might hit a button and go into cruise when you do not want to. You could be startled and even lose control. Keep the cruise control switch off until you want to use cruise control.

1. Move the cruise control switch to on.
2. Get up to the speed you want.
3. Press in the set button at the end of the lever and release it.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.



The cruise light on the instrument panel will illuminate when the cruise control is engaged.

Resuming a Set Speed

Suppose you set your cruise control at a desired speed and then you apply the brake. This, of course, disengages the cruise control. But you do not need to reset it.

Once you're going about 25 mph (40 km/h) or more, you can move the cruise control switch briefly from on to resume/accelerate.

You will go right back up to your chosen speed and stay there.

If you hold the switch at resume/accelerate the vehicle will keep going faster until you release the switch or apply the brake. So unless you want to go faster, do not hold the switch at resume/accelerate.

Increasing Speed While Using Cruise Control

There are two ways to go to a higher speed:

- Use the accelerator pedal to get to the higher speed. Press the set button at the end of the lever, then release the button and the accelerator pedal. You will now cruise at the higher speed. If the accelerator pedal is held longer than 60 seconds, cruise control will turn off.

- Move the cruise switch from on to resume/accelerate. Hold it there until you get up to the speed you want, and then release the switch. To increase your speed in very small amounts, move the switch briefly to resume/accelerate. Each time you do this, your vehicle will go about 1 mph (1.6 km/h) faster.

Reducing Speed While Using Cruise Control

- Press in the button at the end of the lever until you reach the lower speed you want, then release it.
- To slow down in very small amounts, briefly press the set button. Each time you do this, you will go about 1 mph (1.6 km/h) slower.

Passing Another Vehicle While Using Cruise Control

Use the accelerator pedal to increase your speed. When you take your foot off the pedal, your vehicle will slow down to the cruise control speed you set earlier.

Using Cruise Control on Hills

How well your cruise control will work on hills depends upon your speed, load and the steepness of the hills. When going up steep hills, you may want to step on the accelerator pedal to maintain your speed.

When going downhill, you may have to brake or shift to a lower gear to keep your speed down. Of course, applying the brake takes you out of cruise control. Many drivers find this to be too much trouble and do not use cruise control on steep hills.

Ending Cruise Control

To turn off the cruise control, do one of the following:

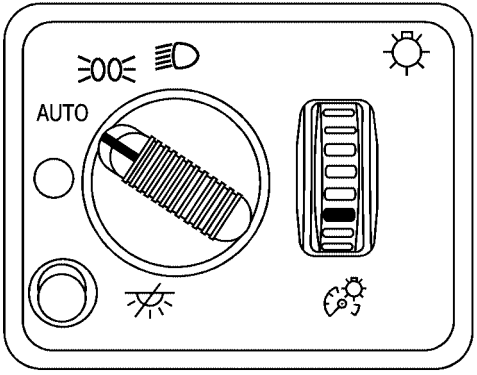
- Step lightly on the brake pedal,
- move the cruise control switch to off, or
- shift the transmission to NEUTRAL (N).
- If your vehicle has the StabiliTrak® feature, cruise control will turn off if road conditions cause StabiliTrak® to activate.
- If the accelerator pedal is held longer than 60 seconds, cruise control will turn off.

The cruise control will turn off automatically if the traction control system or StabiliTrak® system activate, if your vehicle is equipped with either feature.

Erasing Speed Memory

When you turn off the cruise control or the ignition, your cruise control set speed memory is erased.

Exterior Lamps



The control on the driver's side of your instrument panel operates the exterior lamps.

The exterior lamp control has four positions:

(Off): Turn the knob to this position and release it to turn off all exterior lamps including the DRL. To turn any lamps back on when in the off mode, turn the knob to the desired lamp mode. To return to the AUTO mode, turn the knob to the off position and release it. The off or AUTO mode will also cancel and the lamps will return to the AUTO when the vehicle is turned off. This mode is not available for vehicles sold in Canada.

AUTO: Turn the control to this position to put the system into automatic headlamp mode. The Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) will also be activated if it is light enough outside.

(Parking Lamps): Turn the control to this position to turn on the parking lamps, together with the following:

- Sidemarker Lamps
- Taillamps
- License Plate Lamps
- Instrument Panel Lights

(Headlamps): Turn the control to this position to turn on the headlamps, together with the previously listed lamps and lights.

When the vehicle is turned off and the headlamps are in AUTO, the headlamps may automatically remain on for a set time. You can change this delay time using the DIC. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 3-49*.

You can switch your headlamps from low to high-beam by pushing the turn signal/multifunction lever toward the instrument panel.

Headlamps on Reminder

If a door is open, a reminder chime will sound when your headlamps or parking lamps are manually turned on and your key is out of the ignition. To turn off the chime, turn the headlamp switch to off or AUTO and then back on. In the AUTO mode, the headlamps turn off once the ignition is in LOCK or may remain on until the headlamp delay ends (if enabled in the DIC).

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the day. DRL can be helpful in many different driving conditions, but they can be especially helpful in the short periods after dawn and before sunset. Fully functional daytime running lamps are required on all vehicles first sold in Canada.

The DRL system will come on when the following conditions are met:

- The ignition is on,
- the exterior lamps control is in AUTO,
- the transmission is not in PARK (P), and
- the light sensor determines it is daytime.

When the DRL are on, only your DRL lamps will be on. The taillamps, sidemarker and other lamps won't be on. The instrument panel won't be lit up either.

When it begins to get dark, the automatic headlamp system will switch from DRL to the headlamps.

As with any vehicle, you should turn on the regular headlamp system when you need it.

Automatic Headlamp System

When it is dark enough outside and the headlamp switch is in AUTO, your automatic headlamp system will turn on your headlamps at the normal brightness along with other lamps such as the taillamps, sidemarker, parking lamps, roof marker lamps and the instrument panel lights. The radio lights will also be dim.

To turn off the automatic headlamp system, turn the exterior lamps switch to the off position and then release. Turning off the automatic headlamp system with the headlamp switch is not available for vehicles first sold in Canada. For vehicles first sold in Canada, you can turn off the automatic headlamp system when parked at night by applying the parking brake before starting your vehicle. The headlamps will remain off once the vehicle is started for as long as you are parked. If you release the parking brake, the lights will turn on. If the parking brake is not released before you begin to drive, the exterior lamps will turn on above 2 mph (3.2 km/h).

Your vehicle has a light sensor located on the top of the instrument panel. Be sure it is not covered, or the system will be on whenever the ignition is on.

The system may also turn on your headlamps when driving through a parking garage, heavy overcast weather or a tunnel. This is normal.

There is a delay in the transition between the daytime and nighttime operation of the Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) and the automatic headlamp systems so that driving under bridges or bright overhead street lights does not affect the system. The DRL and automatic headlamp system will only be affected when the light sensor sees a change in lighting lasting longer than the delay.

If you start your vehicle in a dark garage, the automatic headlamp system will come on immediately. Once you leave the garage, it will take approximately one minute for the automatic headlamp system to change to DRL if it is light outside. During that delay, your instrument panel cluster may not be as bright as usual. Make sure your instrument panel brightness control is in the full bright position. See *Instrument Panel Brightness on page 3-17*.

Fog Lamps

If your vehicle has fog lamps you can use them for better vision in foggy or misty conditions. Your parking lamps and/or low-beam headlamps must be on for your fog lamps to work.

The fog lamp button is located on the left side of your instrument panel.

Press the button to turn the fog lamps on while the headlamps or parking lamps are on. Press the button again to turn them off. An indicator light will glow near the button when the fog lamps are on.

Remember, fog lamps alone will not give off as much light as your headlamps. Never use your fog lamps in the dark without turning on the headlamps.

The fog lamps will go off whenever your high-beam headlamps come on. When the high beams go off, the fog lamps will come on again.

The fog lamps will be cancelled after the ignition is turned off. If you still want to use the fog lamps after you restart the vehicle, you will need to press the fog lamp button again.

Instrument Panel Brightness

The thumbwheel for this feature is located next to the exterior lamps control.

(Instrument Panel Lights): Turn the thumbwheel up or down to brighten or dim the instrument panel lights and the radio display. This will only work if the headlamps or parking lamps are on.

To turn on the dome lamps, with the vehicle doors closed, turn the thumbwheel all the way up.

Dome Lamps

The dome lamps will come on when you open a door or the midgate, if equipped, and will turn off when all doors or midgate are closed.

You can also turn the dome lamps on by turning the thumbwheel, located next to the exterior lamp control, all the way up. In this position, the dome lamps will remain on whether a door is opened or closed.

(Dome Override): Press this button, located below the exterior lamp control, to turn dome lamps off even while a door is opened. To return the lamps to automatic operation, press the button again and it will return to the out position. In this position, the dome lamps will come on when you open a door.

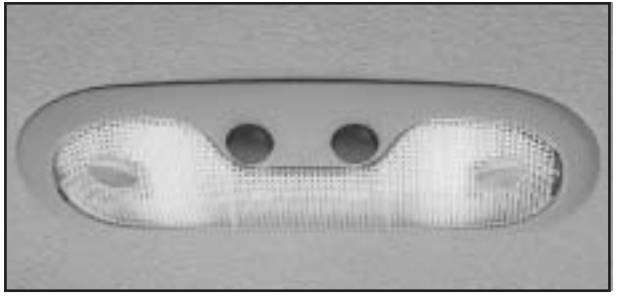
Entry/Exit Lighting

Your vehicle is equipped with an illuminated entry/exit feature.

When a door is opened or the key is removed from the ignition, the dome lamps will come on if the dome override button is in the out position.

Reading Lamps

If your vehicle has reading lamps, press the button located next to the lamp to turn it on or off. The lamps can be adjusted to point in the direction you want.



Your vehicle may also have reading lamps in other locations. To turn on or off, press the button located next to the lamp. The lamps cannot be adjusted.

Battery Run-Down Protection

This feature shuts off the dome lamps if they are left on for more than 10 minutes when the ignition is in lock. This will keep your battery from running down.

Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA)

The Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) system is designed to help you park, while the vehicle is in REVERSE (R). It operates only at very low speeds, less than 3 mph (5 km/h). URPA can help make parking easier and to help you avoid colliding with objects such as parked vehicles. The URPA system can detect objects up to 5 feet (1.5 m) behind the vehicle, and tell you how close these objects are from your rear bumper.

Your vehicle's URPA operates when the shift lever is moved into REVERSE (R) and the vehicle speed is less than 3 mph (5 km/h). Four ultrasonic sensors located at the rear bumper are used to detect the distance to the object.

The URPA display is located inside the vehicle, near the rear window. It has three color-coded lights used to provide distance and system information to the driver.

URPA can be turned off by pressing the rear park aid disable button located near the climate control system and radio. You will not see any lights on the rear display if URPA is turned off.

⚠ CAUTION:

Even with the Ultrasonic Rear Park Assist system, the driver must check carefully before backing up. The system does not operate above typical backing speeds of 3 mph (5 km/h) while parking. And, the system does not detect objects that are more than 5 feet (1.5 meters) behind the vehicle.

So, unless you check carefully behind you before and when you back up, you could strike children, pedestrians, bicyclists or pets behind you, and they could be injured or killed.

Whether or not you are using rear park assist, always check carefully behind your vehicle before you back up and then watch closely as you do.

How the System Works

Unless disabled, the URPA will turn on automatically when the shift lever is moved into REVERSE (R). When the system turns on, the three lights on the display will illuminate for one and a half seconds to let you know that the system is working. If your vehicle is moving in REVERSE (R) at a speed greater than 3 mph (5 km/h), the red light will flash to remind you that the system does not work at a speed greater than 3 mph (5 km/h).

If an object is detected at a REVERSE (R) speed of less than 3 mph (5 km/h), one of the following will occur:

A chime will sound the first time an object is detected between 20 inches (0.5 m) and 5 feet (1.5 m) away.

Description	English	Metric
amber light	5 ft.	1.5 m
amber/amber lights	40 in.	1.0 m
amber/amber/red lights & continuous chime	20 in.	0.5 m
amber/amber/red lights flashing & continuous chime	1 ft	0.3 m

URPA cannot detect objects that are above liftgate level. In order for the rear sensors to recognize an object, it must be within detection range behind the vehicle.

When the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly

The light may flash red when the vehicle is in REVERSE (R) if the ultrasonic sensors are not kept clean. So be sure to keep your rear bumper free of mud, dirt, snow, ice and slush. Other conditions that may affect system performance include things like the vibrations from a jackhammer or the compression of air brakes on a very large truck. If after cleaning the rear bumper and then driving forward at least 15 mph (25 km/h), the display continues to flash red, see your dealer.

If a trailer was attached to your vehicle, or a bicycle or an object was on the back of, or hanging out of your cargo area during your last drive cycle, the light may also flash red. The light will continue to flash whenever in REVERSE (R) until your vehicle is driven forward at least 15 mph (25 km/h) without any obstructions behind the vehicle.

For cleaning instructions, see *Washing Your Vehicle on page 5-103*.

Accessory Power Outlets

With accessory power outlets you can plug in auxiliary electrical equipment such as a cellular telephone or CB radio.

Your vehicle is equipped with many accessory power outlets.

One outlet is located in the center console. Press the button on the side of the console door to access the outlet.

There may also be accessory power outlets located on the back of the center console above the cupholder and in the rear cargo area on the passenger side.

Do not try to put the cigarette lighter in any of the accessory outlets.

Notice: **Adding any electrical equipment to your vehicle may damage it or keep other components from working as they should. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Check with your dealer before adding electrical equipment.**

Certain power accessory plugs may not be compatible with the accessory power outlets and could result in blown vehicle or adapter fuses. If you experience a problem, see your dealer for additional information on the accessory power plugs.

Notice: **Improper use of the power outlet can cause damage not covered by your warranty. Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug because the power outlets are designed for accessory power plugs only.**

Ashtrays and Cigarette Lighter

The front ashtray and lighter are located in the center console near the cupholders. Press on the access door to open it and use the ashtray and lighter.

Notice: **If you put papers or other flammable items in the ashtray, hot cigarettes or other smoking materials could ignite them and possibly damage your vehicle. Never put flammable items in the ashtray.**

To remove the ashtray, pull it from the center console. Slide it back in and push down to be sure it is secure.

To use the cigarette lighter, push it in all the way, and let go. When it's ready, it will pop back out by itself.

Notice: **Holding a cigarette lighter in while it is heating will not allow the lighter to back away from the heating element when it is hot. Damage from overheating may occur to the lighter or heating element, or a fuse could be blown. Do not hold a cigarette lighter in while it is heating. Do not use anything other than the cigarette lighter in the heating element.**

Analog Clock

To adjust the clock, do the following:

1. Locate the adjustment button to the lower left corner of the clock.
2. Push and hold the adjustment button to advance the clock hands. Release the button *before* you get to the desired time.
3. Push and release the button to increase the time by one minute increments until the desired time is reached.

Climate Controls

Dual Automatic Climate Control System

With this system, you can control the heating, cooling and ventilation in your vehicle.

You can select different climate control settings for the driver and passengers.

Driver's Side Temperature Knob

The driver's side knob is used to adjust the temperature of the air coming through the system on the driver's side. The temperature can be adjusted even if the system is turned off. This is possible since outside air will always flow through the system as the vehicle is moving forward unless it is set to recirculation mode. See "Recirculation" later in this section.

Turn the knob counterclockwise or clockwise to lower or increase the cabin temperature. The display will show the temperature setting decreasing or increasing and an arrow pointing to the driver will be displayed under and to the left of the temperature setting.

Passenger's Side Temperature Knob

The passenger's side knob can be used to change the temperature of the air coming through the system on the passenger's side of the vehicle. The temperature can be adjusted even if the system is turned off. This is possible since outside air will always flow through the system as the vehicle is moving forward unless it is set to recirculation mode. See "Recirculation" later in this section.

Turn the knob counterclockwise or clockwise to lower or increase the cabin temperature. The display will show the temperature setting decreasing or increasing and an arrow pointing to the passenger will be displayed under and to the right of the temperature setting.

The passenger's temperature setting can be set to match the driver's temperature setting by pressing and holding the AUTO button for four seconds. Both the driver and passenger arrows will be displayed.

Automatic Operation

AUTO (Automatic): When automatic operation is active the system will control the inside temperature, the air delivery, and the fan speed.

Use the steps below to place the entire system in automatic mode:

1. Press the AUTO button.

   When AUTO is selected, the display will change to show the current driver's set temperature, delivery mode and fan speed. Press the AUTO button again within five seconds to display the passenger's set temperature.

   If the driver's and passenger's temperature settings are the same when AUTO is pressed, the temperature setting and both arrows will be displayed for five seconds along with the automatic air delivery mode and fan speed. After the five second update, the display will change to show the temperature setting, both arrows and AUTO.

If the driver's and passenger's temperature settings are not the same, the opposite side temperature setting will be displayed for an additional five seconds. To make the passenger's temperature the same as the driver's press and hold the AUTO button for about four seconds.

When auto is selected, the air conditioning operation and air inlet will be automatically controlled. The air conditioning compressor will run when the outside temperature is over about 40°F (4°C). The air inlet will normally be set to outside air. If it's hot outside, the air inlet may automatically switch to recirculate inside air to help quickly cool down your vehicle. The light on the button will illuminate in recirculation.

2. Set the driver's and passenger's temperature.

   To find your comfort setting, start with a 74°F (23°C) temperature setting and allow about 20 minutes for the system to regulate. Turn the driver's or passenger's side temperature knob to adjust the temperature setting as necessary. If you choose the temperature setting of 60°F (15°C) the system will remain at the maximum cooling setting. If you choose the temperature setting of 90°F (32°C) the system will remain at the maximum heat setting. Choosing either maximum setting will not cause the vehicle to heat or cool any faster.

   Be careful not to cover the sensor located on the top of the instrument panel near the windshield. This sensor regulates air temperature based on sun load, and also turns on your headlamps.

   To avoid blowing cold air in cold weather, the system will delay turning on the fan until warm air is available. The length of delay depends on the engine coolant temperature. Pressing the fan switch will override this delay and change the fan to a selected speed.

◯ **(Off):** Press this button to turn off the entire climate control system. Outside air will still enter the vehicle, and will be directed to the floor. This direction can be changed by pressing the mode button. The temperature can also be adjusted using either temperature knob. Press the up or down arrows on the fan switch, the defrost button, the AUTO button, or the air conditioning button to turn the system on when it is off.

Manual Operation

You may manually adjust the air delivery mode or fan speed.

(Fan): The switch with the fan symbol allows you to manually adjust the fan speed. Press the up arrow to increase fan speed and the down arrow to decrease fan speed.

Pressing this button when the system is off will turn the system on.

(Mode): Press this button to manually change the direction of the airflow in your vehicle. Keep pressing the button until the desired mode appears on the display.

If you press the mode button to select an air delivery mode, the display will change to show you the selected air mode delivery. The display will then show the current status of the system. When the system is turned off, the display will go blank after displaying the current status of the system.

(Panel): This setting will deliver air to the instrument panel outlets.

(Bi-Level): This setting will deliver warmer air to the floor and cooler air to the instrument panel outlets.

(Floor): This setting will deliver air to the floor outlets.

(Defog): See “Defogging and Defrosting” later in this section.

(Recirculation): Press this button to limit the amount of outside air entering your vehicle. The light on the recirculation button will glow. This is helpful when you are trying to limit odors entering your vehicle and for maximum air conditioning performance in hot weather. Press this button again to allow outside air to enter the vehicle. The light on the recirculation button will go off.

Pressing this button also cancels the auto recirculation feature. To resume the auto recirculation function, press the AUTO button. Each time the vehicle is started, the system will revert to the auto recirculation function.

If you select recirculation while in defrost, defog or floor, the light in the button will flash and then go out to let you know that this is not allowed. This is normal and helps to prevent fogging.

When the weather is cool or damp, operating the system in recirculation for extended periods of time may cause fogging of the vehicle's windows. To clear the fog, select either defog or front defrost.

You may also notice that the A/C compressor will run while in recirculation mode. This is normal and helps to prevent fogging.

(Air Conditioning): Press this button to turn the air conditioning (A/C) compressor on and off. The snowflake symbol will appear on the display when the A/C is on and will turn off when the air conditioning is off.

Pressing this button when the outside temperature is too cool for air conditioning to be effective will make the snowflake symbol flash three times and then turn off to let you know that the air conditioning mode is not available. If the air conditioning is on and the outside temperature drops below a temperature which is too cool for air conditioning to be effective, the snowflake symbol will turn off to let you know that the air conditioning mode has been canceled.

When air conditioning is selected or in AUTO mode, the system will run the air conditioning automatically to cool and dehumidify the air entering the vehicle. If you select A/C off while in front defrost, defog or recirculation, the A/C snowflake symbol will turn off, but the A/C compressor will still run to help prevent fogging.

On hot days, open the windows long enough to let hot inside air escape. This reduces the time it takes for your vehicle to cool down. Then keep your windows closed for the air conditioner to work its best.

On cool, but sunny days while using manual operation of the automatic system, use bi-level to deliver warm air to the floor and cooler air to the instrument panel outlets. To warm or cool the air delivered, turn the temperature knob to the desired setting.

In AUTO mode the system will cool and dehumidify the air inside the vehicle. Also while in AUTO mode, the system will maximize its performance by using recirculation as necessary.

(Off): Press this button to turn off the entire climate control system. Outside air will still enter the vehicle, and will be directed to the floor. This direction can be changed by pressing the mode button. The temperature can also be adjusted using either temperature knob. Press the up or down arrows on the fan switch, the defrost button, the AUTO button, or the air conditioning button to turn the system on when it is off.

Defogging and Defrosting

You can use either defog or front defrost to clear fog or frost from your windshield. Use the defog mode to clear the windows of fog or moisture. Use the front defrost button to defrost the front windshield.

(Defog): Use this setting to clear the windows of fog or moisture. Press the mode button to select this setting. This setting will deliver air to the floor and windshield outlets.

(Defrost): Press this button to defrost the windshield. The system will automatically control the fan speed if you select defrost from AUTO mode. If the outside temperature is 40°F (4°C) or warmer, your air conditioning compressor will automatically run to help dehumidify the air and dry the windshield.

Rear Window Defogger

If your vehicle has this feature, the lines you see on the rear window warm the glass. The rear window defogger uses a warming grid to remove fog from the rear window.

(Rear): Press this button to turn the rear window defogger on or off. An indicator light in the button will come on to let you know that the rear window defogger is activated.

The rear window defogger will turn off about 10 minutes after the button is pressed. If you need additional warming time, press the button again.

If your vehicle is equipped with heated mirrors this button will activate them.

Notice: **Using a razor blade or sharp object to clear the inside rear window may damage the rear window defogger. Repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Do not clear the inside of the rear window with sharp objects.**

Outlet Adjustment

Your vehicle has air outlets located in the center and on the side of your instrument panel that allow you to adjust the direction and amount of airflow inside the vehicle. Move the louvers up or down. Use the thumbwheel next to or underneath the outlet to close the louvers. For the most efficient airflow and temperature control, keep the outlet in the fully opened position.

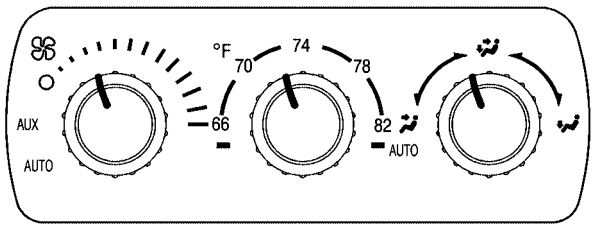
Operation Tips

- Keep the hood and front air inlets free of ice, snow, or any other obstruction (such as leaves). The heater and defroster will work far better, reducing the chance of fogging the inside of your windows.
- Keep the air path under the front seats clear of objects. This helps air to circulate throughout your vehicle.
- Adding outside equipment to the front of your vehicle, such as hood-air deflectors, etc., may affect the performance of the heating and air conditioning system. Check with your dealer before adding equipment to the outside of your vehicle.

Rear Climate Control System

With this system the front or rear passengers can control the air temperature, air flow and fan speed for the rear seat passengers. The front overhead console and the rear controls are used to adjust the climate.

Driver Overhead Control



Front Controls

AUX: Turn the knob, located on the left side of the control panel, to this position to allow the rear seat passengers to have control over the rear climate control system. See “Rear Passenger Console Control” later for more information.

(Off): Turn the knob, located on the left side of the control panel, to this position to turn the rear climate control system off.

(Fan): To adjust the airflow speed, turn the fan knob located on the left side of the control panel to the desired setting. Choose AUTO if you want the system to automatically choose the fan speed to maintain a selected temperature. See “Auto Mode” later in this section for more information on using this feature.

°F (°C): To adjust the air temperature, turn the temperature knob on the center of the control panel. For cooler or warmer air turn the knob counterclockwise toward 66°F (19°C) or clockwise toward 82°F (27°C).

To regulate the airflow direction, adjust the right knob on the control panel. Turn the knob clockwise for floor vent airflow or counterclockwise for headliner vent airflow. Generally, the upper vents are used for air conditioning and the floor vents for heating. The knob can be set to any blend setting. Choose AUTO if you want the system to automatically regulate the airflow. See “Auto Mode” later in this section for more information on using this feature.

Rear Passenger Console Control

To use the rear climate control from the rear passenger position, use the rear passenger console control. The driver overhead control fan knob must be set to the AUX position.

Rear Controls

The rear seat controls have the following settings:

⏻ **(On/Off):** Press this button to turn the rear seat comfort controls on or off when the front overhead control is set to AUX.

(Mode): Press this button to select the air delivery mode and AUTO mode. Choose AUTO if you want the system to automatically regulate the airflow. See “Auto Mode” later in this section for more information on using this feature.

(Temperature): Press this button up or down to increase or decrease the temperature setting.

△ ▽ **(Fan):** Press this button up or down to adjust the fan speed. Choose AUTO if you want the system to automatically choose the fan speed to maintain a selected temperature. See “Auto Mode” later in this section for more information on using this feature.

AUTO Mode

When using the system in auto mode, find your comfort setting by placing the temperature control to 74°F (23°C) and allowing about 20 minutes for the system to regulate. Then adjust the temperature setting as necessary. If you choose full cold 60° F (15°C), the system will remain at the maximum cooling setting. If you choose full hot 90 F (32°C), the system will remain at the maximum heat setting.

Warning Lights, Gages, and Indicators

This part describes the warning lights and gages on your vehicle. The pictures will help you locate them.

Warning lights and gages can signal that something is wrong before it becomes serious enough to cause an expensive repair or replacement. Paying attention to your warning lights and gages could also save you or others from injury.

Warning lights come on when there may be or is a problem with one of your vehicle's functions. As you will see in the details on the next few pages, some warning lights come on briefly when you start the engine just to let you know they're working. If you are familiar with this section, you should not be alarmed when this happens.

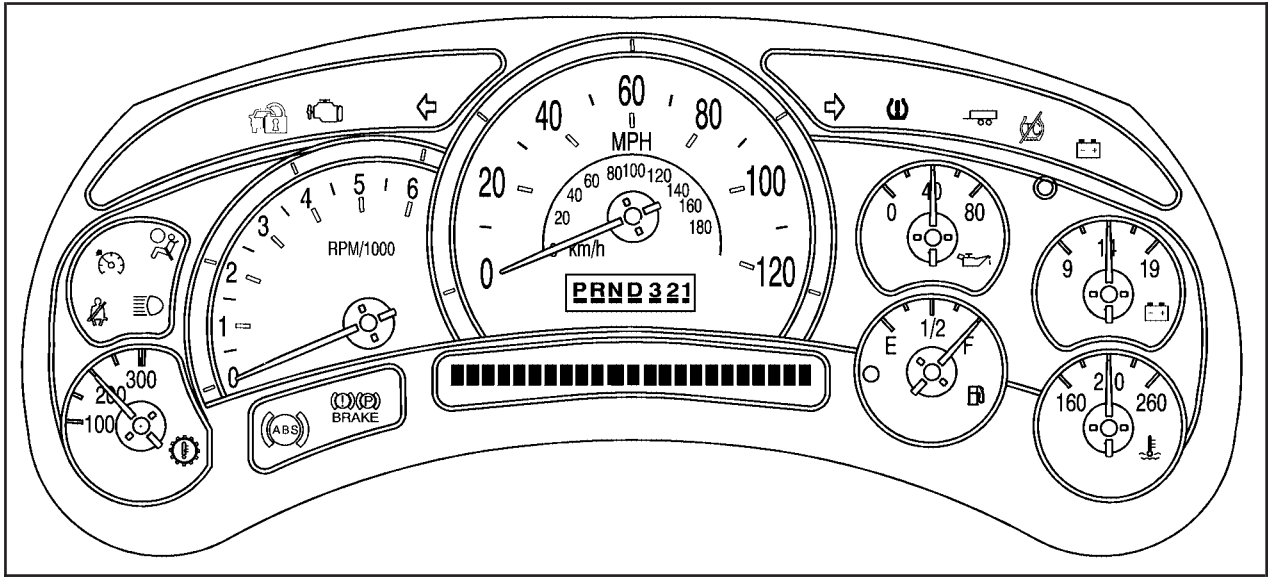
Gages can indicate when there may be or is a problem with one of your vehicle's functions. Often gages and warning lights work together to let you know when there's a problem with your vehicle.

When one of the warning lights comes on and stays on when you are driving, or when one of the gages shows there may be a problem, check the section that tells you what to do about it. Please follow this manual's advice. Waiting to do repairs can be costly – and even dangerous. So please get to know your warning lights and gages. They're a big help.

Your vehicle also has a message center that works along with the warning lights and gages. See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 3-49*.

Instrument Panel Cluster

Your instrument panel cluster is designed to let you know at a glance how your vehicle is running. You'll know how fast you're going, about how much fuel you have and many other things you'll need to know to drive safely and economically.



United States version shown, Canada similar.

Speedometer and Odometer

Your speedometer lets you see your speed in both miles per hour (mph) and kilometers per hour (km/h).

Your vehicle's odometer works together with the driver information center. You can set a Trip A and Trip A odometer. See "Trip Information" under *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-50*.

The odometer mileage can be checked without the vehicle running. Simply press the trip stem on the instrument panel cluster.

If your vehicle ever needs a new odometer installed, the new one will be set to the correct mileage total of the old odometer.

Tachometer

Your tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm).

Safety Belt Reminder Light

When the key is turned to RUN or START, a chime will be provided for several seconds to remind people to buckle their safety belts. The driver safety belt light will also be provided and stay on for several seconds, then it will flash for several more. You should buckle your seat belt.

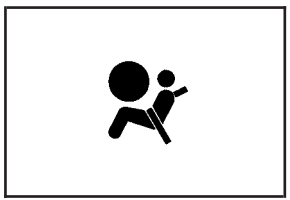
If your vehicle is not equipped with the passenger sensing system, this chime and light will be repeated if the driver remains unbuckled and the vehicle is in motion.

See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-80* for more information.

If the driver's belt is buckled, neither the chime nor the light will come on.

Airbag Readiness Light

There is an airbag readiness light on the instrument panel, which shows the airbag symbol. The system checks the airbag's electrical system for malfunctions. The light tells you if there is an electrical problem. The system check includes the airbag sensors, the airbag modules, the wiring and the crash sensing and diagnostic module. For more information on the airbag system, see *Airbag System on page 1-72*.



This light will come on when you start your vehicle, and it will flash for a few seconds. Then the light should go out. This means the system is ready.

If the airbag readiness light stays on after you start the vehicle or comes on when you are driving, your airbag system may not work properly. Have your vehicle serviced right away.

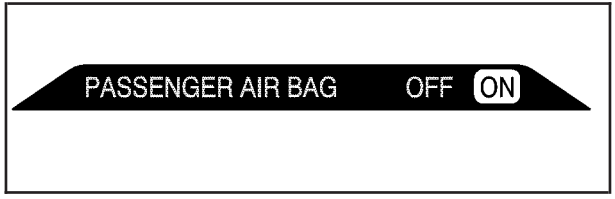
⚠ CAUTION:

If the airbag readiness light stays on after you start your vehicle, it means the airbag system may not be working properly. The airbags in your vehicle may not inflate in a crash, or they could even inflate without a crash. To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have your vehicle serviced right away if the airbag readiness light stays on after you start your vehicle.

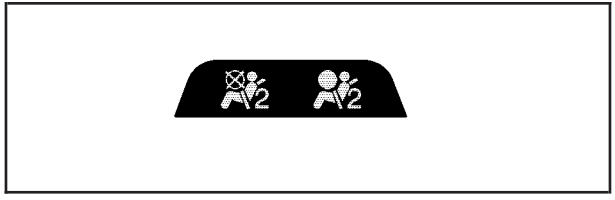
The airbag readiness light should flash for a few seconds when you turn the ignition key to RUN. If the light doesn't come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

Passenger Airbag Status Indicator

If your vehicle has the passenger sensing system your rearview mirror will have a passenger airbag status indicator.



Passenger Airbag Status Indicator – United States



Passenger Airbag Status Indicator – Canada

When the ignition key is turned to RUN or START, the passenger airbag status indicator will light ON and OFF, or the symbol for on and off, for several seconds as a system check. Then, after several more seconds, the status indicator will light either ON or OFF, or either the on or off symbol to let you know the status of the right front passenger's frontal airbag.

If the word ON or the on symbol is lit on the passenger airbag status indicator, it means that the right front passenger's frontal airbag is enabled (may inflate).

⚠ CAUTION:

If the on indicator comes on when you have a rear-facing child restraint installed in the right front passenger's seat, it means that the passenger sensing system has not turned off the passenger's frontal airbag. A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the right front passenger's airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. Do not use a rear-facing child restraint in the right front passenger's seat unless the airbag has been turned off.

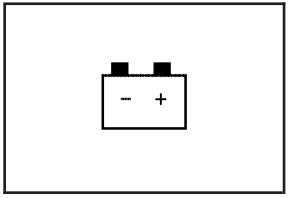
If the word OFF or the off symbol is lit on the airbag status indicator, it means that the passenger sensing system has turned off the right front passenger's frontal airbag. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-80* for more on this, including important safety information.

If, after several seconds, all status indicator lights remain on, or if there are no lights at all, there may be a problem with the lights or the passenger sensing system. See your dealer for service.

⚠ CAUTION:

If the off indicator and the airbag readiness light ever come on together, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. If this ever happens, have the vehicle serviced promptly, because an adult-size person sitting in the right front passenger seat may not have the protection of the frontal airbag. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 3-34*.

Charging System Light



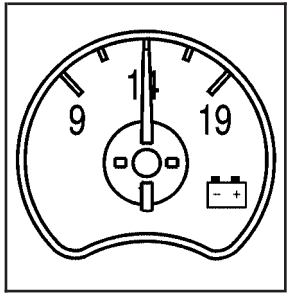
The charging system light will come on briefly when you turn on the ignition, but the engine is not running, as a check to show you it is working.

It should go out once the engine is running. If it stays on, or comes on while you are driving, you may have a problem with the charging system. It could indicate that you have problems with a generator drive belt, or another electrical problem. Have it checked right away. Driving while this light is on could drain your battery.

When this light comes on the DIC will also display the battery not charging message. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-53*.

If you must drive a short distance with the light on, be certain to turn off all your accessories, such as the radio and air conditioner.

Voltmeter Gage



When your engine is not running, but the ignition is in RUN, this gage shows your battery's state of charge in DC volts.

When the engine is running, the gage shows the condition of the charging system. The gage may transition from a higher to lower or a lower to higher reading, this is normal. Readings between the low and high warning zones indicate the normal operating range.

Readings in the low warning zone may occur when a large number of electrical accessories are operating in the vehicle and the engine is left at an idle for an extended period. This condition is normal since the charging system is not able to provide full power at engine idle. As engine speeds are increased, this condition should correct itself as higher engine speeds allow the charging system to create maximum power.

You can only drive for a short time with the reading in either warning zone. If you must drive, turn off all unnecessary accessories.

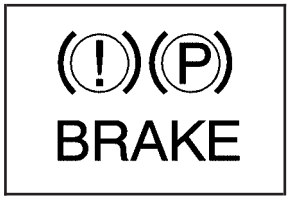
Readings in either warning zone indicate a possible problem in the electrical system. Have the vehicle serviced as soon as possible.

Brake System Warning Light

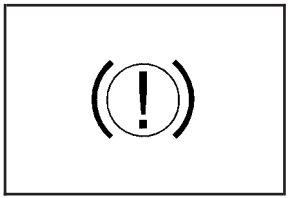
With the ignition on, the brake system warning light will flash when you set the parking brake. The light will flash if the parking brake doesn't release fully. If you try to drive with the parking brake engaged, a chime will sound when the vehicle speed is greater than 3 mph (5 km/h).

Your vehicle's hydraulic brake system is divided into two parts. If one part isn't working, the other part can still work and stop you. For good braking, though, you need both parts working well.

If the warning light comes on and a chime sounds there could be a brake problem. Have your brake system inspected right away.



United States



Canada

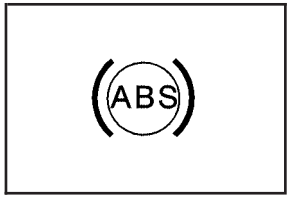
This light should come on briefly when you turn the ignition key to RUN. If it doesn't come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there's a problem.

If the light comes on while you are driving, pull off the road and stop carefully. You may notice that the pedal is harder to push or may go closer to the floor. It may take longer to stop. If the light is still on, have the vehicle towed for service. See *Towing Your Vehicle on page 4-53*.

⚠ CAUTION:

Your brake system may not be working properly if the brake system warning light is on. Driving with the brake system warning light on can lead to an accident. If the light is still on after you have pulled off the road and stopped carefully, have the vehicle towed for service.

Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Light

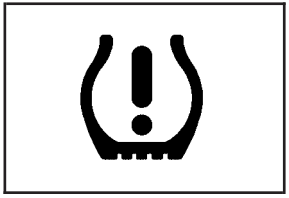


With the anti-lock brake system, this light will come on when you start your engine and may stay on for several seconds.

That's normal. If the light doesn't come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

If the light stays on, or comes on when you're driving, your vehicle needs service. You will also hear a chime sound when the light is on steady. If the regular brake system warning light isn't on, you still have brakes, but you don't have anti-lock brakes. If the regular brake system warning light is also on you don't have anti-lock brakes and there's a problem with your regular brakes. In addition to both lights, you will also hear a chime sound on the first occurrence of a problem and each time the vehicle is shut off and then restarted. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 3-37*.

Low Tire Pressure Warning Light



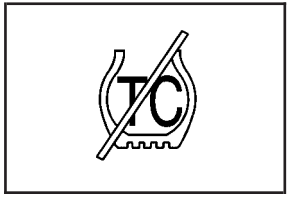
This light and a chime will come on along with the CHECK TIRE PRESSURE message in the DIC when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

This light will also come on briefly when you turn the ignition to RUN.

See "CHECK TIRE PRESSURE" under *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-53* for more information.

Stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure as indicated on the vehicle's certification/tire label. See *Tires on page 5-60* for more information on your vehicle's tires.

Traction Off Light

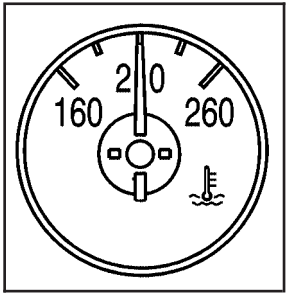


If you have the StabiliTrak® system, this light should come on briefly when you turn the ignition to RUN.

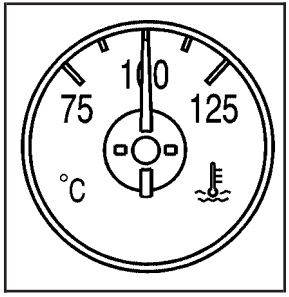
If the light doesn't come on then, the system may require service; have it fixed so it will be there to warn you if the system is turned off.

For more information on the traction off light, see *StabiliTrak® System on page 4-9*.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gage



United States



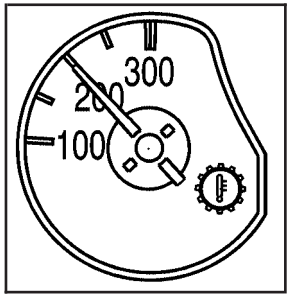
Canada

This gage shows the engine coolant temperature.

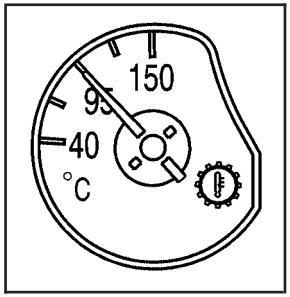
It also provides an indicator of how hard your vehicle is working. During a majority of the operation, the gage will read 210°F (100°C) or less. If you are pulling a load or going up hills, it is normal for the temperature to fluctuate and approach the 250°F (122°C) mark. If the gage reaches the 260°F (125°C) mark, it indicates that the cooling system is working beyond its capacity.

See *Engine Overheating on page 5-26*.

Transmission Temperature Gage



United States



Canada

Your vehicle is equipped with a transmission temperature gage.

When your ignition is on, the gage shows the temperature of the transmission fluid. The normal operating range is from 180°F (82°C) to about 200°F (93°C).

At approximately 265°F (130°C), the DIC will display a TRANSMISSION HOT message and the transmission will enter a transmission protection mode. When the transmission enters the protection mode, you may notice a change in the transmission shifting patterns. The transmission will return to normal shifting patterns when the transmission fluid temperature falls below 260°F (127°C).

See *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 3-49* for further information.

If the transmission fluid reaches temperatures of approximately 275°F (135°C) or greater, the DIC will display a TRANS HOT IDLE ENGINE warning message and a chime will sound. Pull the vehicle off the roadway when it is safe to do so. Set the parking brake, place the transmission in PARK (P) and allow the engine to idle until the transmission temperature falls below 260°F (127°C). If the transmission continues to operate above 265°F (130°C), please contact your nearest dealer or the Roadside Assistance Center.

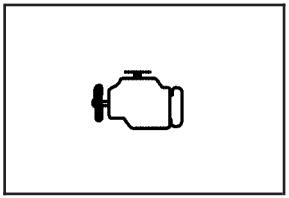
Notice: **If you drive your vehicle with the transmission temperature gage above normal operating range, you can damage the transmission. This could lead to costly repairs that would not be covered by your warranty. Do not drive your vehicle while the transmission temperature gage reading is above normal. See your dealer for service.**

The following situations can cause the transmission to operate at higher temperatures:

- Towing a trailer,
- hot outside air temperatures,
- hauling a large or heavy load,
- low transmission fluid level,
- high transmission fluid level,
- restricted air flow to the radiator.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp

Check Engine Light



Your vehicle is equipped with a computer which monitors operation of the fuel, ignition, and emission control systems.

This system is called OBD II (On-Board Diagnostics-Second Generation) and is intended to assure that emissions are at acceptable levels for the life of the vehicle, helping to produce a cleaner environment. The check engine light comes on to indicate that there is a problem and service is required. Malfunctions often will be indicated by the system before any problem is apparent. This may prevent more serious damage to your vehicle. This system is also designed to assist your service technician in correctly diagnosing any malfunction.

Notice: **If you keep driving your vehicle with this light on, after awhile, your emission controls may not work as well, your fuel economy may not be as good, and your engine may not run as smoothly. This could lead to costly repairs that may not be covered by your warranty.**

Notice: **Modifications made to the engine, transmission, exhaust, intake, or fuel system of your vehicle or the replacement of the original tires with other than those of the same Tire Performance Criteria (TPC) can affect your vehicle's emission controls and may cause this light to come on. Modifications to these systems could lead to costly repairs not covered by your warranty. This may also result in a failure to pass a required Emission Inspection/Maintenance test.**

This light should come on, as a check to show you it is working, when the ignition is on and the engine is not running. If the light does not come on, have it repaired. This light will also come on during a malfunction in one of two ways:

- **Light Flashing** — A misfire condition has been detected. A misfire increases vehicle emissions and may damage the emission control system on your vehicle. Diagnosis and service may be required.
- **Light On Steady** — An emission control system malfunction has been detected on your vehicle. Diagnosis and service may be required.

If the Light is Flashing

The following may prevent more serious damage to your vehicle:

- Reducing vehicle speed
- Avoiding hard accelerations
- Avoiding steep uphill grades
- If you are towing a trailer, reduce the amount of cargo being hauled as soon as it is possible

If the light stops flashing and remains on steady, see "If the Light Is On Steady" following.

If the light continues to flash, when it is safe to do so, stop the vehicle. Find a safe place to park your vehicle. Turn the key off, wait at least 10 seconds and restart the engine. If the light remains on steady, see "If the Light Is On Steady" following. If the light is still flashing, follow the previous steps, and see your dealer for service as soon as possible.

If the Light Is On Steady

You may be able to correct the emission system malfunction by considering the following:

Did you recently put fuel into your vehicle?

If so, reinstall the fuel cap, making sure to fully install the cap. See *Filling Your Tank on page 5-8*. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. A loose or missing fuel cap will allow fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. A few driving trips with the cap properly installed should turn the light off.

Did you just drive through a deep puddle of water?

If so, your electrical system may be wet. The condition will usually be corrected when the electrical system dries out. A few driving trips should turn the light off.

Have you recently changed brands of fuel?

If so, be sure to fuel your vehicle with quality fuel. See *Gasoline Octane on page 5-5*. Poor fuel quality will cause your engine not to run as efficiently as designed. You may notice this as stalling after start-up, stalling when you put the vehicle into gear, misfiring, hesitation on acceleration, or stumbling on acceleration. (These conditions may go away once the engine is warmed up.) This will be detected by the system and cause the light to turn on.

If you experience one or more of these conditions, change the fuel brand you use. It will require at least one full tank of the proper fuel to turn the light off.

If none of the above steps have made the light turn off, your dealer can check the vehicle. Your dealer has the proper test equipment and diagnostic tools to fix any mechanical or electrical problems that may have developed.

Emissions Inspection and Maintenance Programs

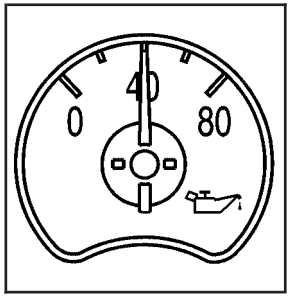
Some state/provincial and local governments have or may begin programs to inspect the emission control equipment on your vehicle. Failure to pass this inspection could prevent you from getting a vehicle registration.

Here are some things you need to know to help your vehicle pass an inspection:

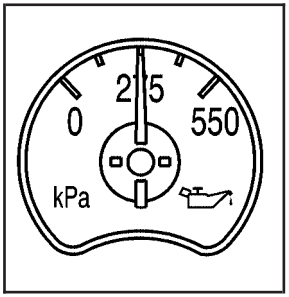
Your vehicle will not pass this inspection if the check engine light is on or not working properly.

Your vehicle will not pass this inspection if the OBD (on-board diagnostic) system determines that critical emission control systems have not been completely diagnosed by the system. The vehicle would be considered not ready for inspection. This can happen if you have recently replaced your battery or if your battery has run down. The diagnostic system is designed to evaluate critical emission control systems during normal driving. This may take several days of routine driving. If you have done this and your vehicle still does not pass the inspection for lack of OBD system readiness, your GM dealer can prepare the vehicle for inspection.

Oil Pressure Gage



United States



Canada

The oil pressure gage shows the engine oil pressure in psi (pounds per square inch) when the engine is running. Canadian vehicles indicate pressure in kPa (kilopascals).

Oil pressure may vary with engine speed, outside temperature and oil viscosity, but readings above the low pressure zone indicate the normal operating range.

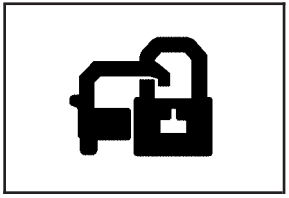
A reading in the low pressure zone may be caused by a dangerously low oil level or some other problem causing low oil pressure. Check your oil as soon as possible. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-53*.

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not keep driving if the oil pressure is low. If you do, your engine can become so hot that it catches fire. You or others could be burned. Check your oil as soon as possible and have your vehicle serviced.

Notice: **Lack of proper engine oil maintenance may damage the engine. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Always follow the maintenance schedule in this manual for changing engine oil.**

Security Light



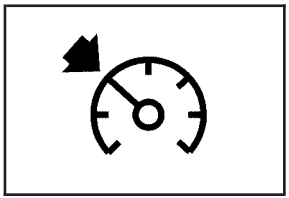
This light will come on briefly when you turn the key toward START. The light will stay on until the engine starts.

If the light flashes, the Passlock® system has entered a tamper mode. If the vehicle fails to start, see *Passlock® on page 2-17*.

If the light comes on continuously while driving and stays on, there may be a problem with the Passlock® system. Your vehicle will not be protected by Passlock®, and you should see your dealer.

Also, see *Content Theft-Deterrent on page 2-16* for additional information regarding the security light.

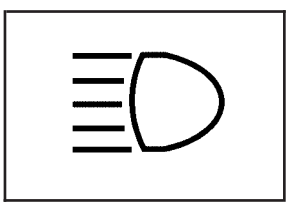
Cruise Control Light



This light comes on whenever you set your cruise control.

The light will go out when the cruise control is turned off. See *Cruise Control on page 3-11* for more information.

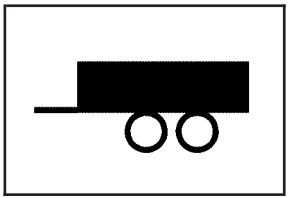
Highbeam On Light



This light will come on when the high-beam headlamps are in use.

See *Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer on page 3-8*.

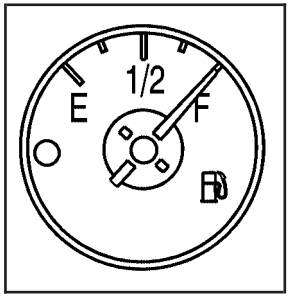
Tow/Haul Mode Light



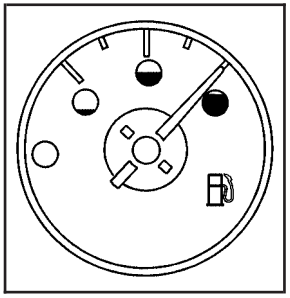
This light is displayed when the tow/haul mode has been activated.

For more information, see “Tow/Haul Mode” under *Towing a Trailer on page 4-54*.

Fuel Gage



United States



Canada

When the ignition is on, the fuel gage tells you about how much fuel you have left in your tank.

The gage will first indicate empty before you are out of fuel, and you should get more fuel as soon as possible.

Here are some situations you may experience with your fuel gage. None of these indicate a problem with the fuel gage.

- At the gas station, the fuel pump shuts off before the gage reads full.
- It takes a little more or less fuel to fill up than the fuel gage indicated. For example, the gage may have indicated the tank was half full, but it actually took a little more or less than half the tank's capacity to fill the tank.
- The gage goes back to empty when you turn off the ignition.

Low Fuel Warning Light

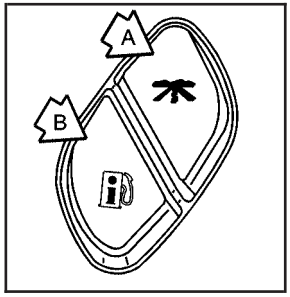
The light next to the fuel gage will come on briefly when you are starting the engine.

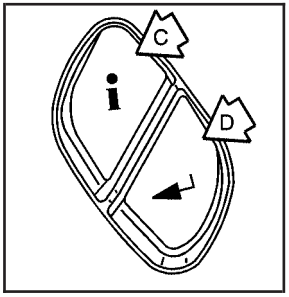
This light comes on when the fuel tank is low on fuel. To turn it off, add fuel to the fuel tank. See *Fuel on page 5-5*.

Driver Information Center (DIC)

The Driver Information Center (DIC) display is located on the instrument panel cluster, below the speedometer. The DIC buttons, if equipped, are located on the steering wheel. The DIC can display information such as the trip odometer, fuel economy, customization features and warning/status messages.

If your vehicle is not equipped with the DIC steering wheel buttons, you will not have all of the features listed. You will scroll through the odometer, trip odometer and engine hours by pressing the trip odometer reset stem located on the instrument panel cluster. You will also turn off, or acknowledge, DIC messages by pressing the trip odometer reset stem. See *Speedometer and Odometer on page 3-33* for information on features for vehicles without DIC buttons.





A (Trip Information): Press this button to display the odometer, trip odometers, tire pressure for vehicles equipped with a tire pressure monitor, timer and engine hours.

B (Fuel Information): Press this button to display the current range, fuel used, average fuel economy and engine oil life.

C i (Customization): Press this button to access the vehicle settings menu and customize the personal settings on your vehicle.

D (Select): Press this button to reset certain DIC functions and set your customization settings.

Pressing any of the four DIC buttons will acknowledge DIC messages and clear them from the DIC display.

DIC Operation and Displays

The Driver Information Center (DIC) comes on when the ignition is on. After a short delay, the DIC will display the information that was last displayed before the engine was turned off.

The DIC has different modes which can be accessed by pressing the four DIC buttons located on the steering wheel. These buttons are trip information, fuel information, customization and select. The button functions are detailed in the following pages.

Trip Information Button

(Trip Information): Press the trip information button to scroll through the ODOMETER, TRIP A, TRIP B, TIRE PRESSURES, TIMER and ENGINE HOURS.

Odometer: Press the trip information button until ODOMETER appears on the display. This mode shows the total distance the vehicle has been driven in either miles or kilometers. Pressing the reset stem located on the instrument cluster with the vehicle off will also display the odometer.

Trip A: Press the trip information button until TRIP A appears on the display. This mode shows the current distance traveled since the last reset for TRIP A in either miles or kilometers.

Trip B: Press the trip information button until TRIP B appears on the display. This mode shows the current distance traveled since the last reset for TRIP B in either miles or kilometers.

To reset TRIP A or TRIP B information, press and hold the select button for one second while in one of the trip modes. This will reset the information for TRIP A or TRIP B.

You can also reset TRIP A or TRIP B while they are displayed by pressing the reset stem on the cluster. If you press and hold the reset stem or the select button for four seconds, the display will show the distance traveled since the last ignition cycle for TRIP A or TRIP B.

Tire Pressures: The tire pressure mode is available only on vehicles equipped with a tire pressure monitor. Press the trip information button until TIRE PRESSURES appears on the display. This mode shows the tire pressure in pounds per square inch (psi) or kilopascals (kPa). Press the select button to scroll through the following information:

- LF TIRE shows the tire pressure for the left front tire.
- RF TIRE shows the tire pressure for the right front tire.

- LR TIRE shows the tire pressure for the left rear tire.
- RR TIRE shows the tire pressure for the right rear tire.

Timer: The DIC can be used as a timer. Press the select button while TIMER is displayed to start the timer. The display will show the amount of time that has passed since the timer was last reset, not including time the ignition is off. Time will continue to be counted as long as the ignition is on, even if another display is being shown on the DIC. The timer will record up to 99 hours, 59 minutes and 59 seconds (99:59:59) after which the display will roll back to zero.

To stop the counting of time, press the select button briefly while TIMER is displayed.

To reset the timer to zero, press and hold the select button while TIMER is displayed.

Engine Hours: Press the trip information button until ENGINE HOURS appears on the display. This mode shows the total number of hours the engine has run. Pressing and holding the reset stem located on the instrument cluster for about four seconds will also display the engine hour information after the odometer is displayed when the vehicle is off.

Fuel Information Button

(Fuel Information): Press the fuel information button to scroll through the range, fuel used, average fuel economy and the engine oil life system.

Fuel Range: Press the fuel information button until RANGE appears on the display. This mode shows the remaining distance you can drive without refueling. It is based on fuel economy and the fuel remaining in the tank. The display will show LOW if the fuel level is low.

The fuel economy data used to determine fuel range is an average of recent driving conditions. As your driving conditions change, this data is gradually updated. Fuel range cannot be reset.

Fuel Used: Press the fuel information button until FUEL USED appears on the display. This mode shows the number of gallons or liters of fuel used since the last reset of this menu item. To reset the fuel used information, press and hold the select button for one second while FUEL USED is displayed.

Average Fuel Economy: Press the fuel information button until AVG ECON appears on the display. This mode shows how many miles per gallon (MPG) or liters per 100 kilometers (L/100 km) your vehicle is getting based on current and past driving conditions.

Press and hold the select button for one second while AVG ECON is displayed to reset the average fuel economy. Average fuel economy will then be calculated starting from that point. If the average fuel economy is not reset, it will be continually updated each time you drive.

Engine Oil Life System: Press the fuel information button until ENGINE OIL LIFE appears on the display. The engine oil life system shows an estimate of the oil's remaining useful life. It will show 100% when the system is reset after an oil change. It will alert you to change your oil on a schedule consistent with your driving conditions.

Always reset the engine oil life system after an oil change. To reset the engine oil life system, use the fuel button to reach the ENGINE OIL LIFE screen and then press and hold the select button for five seconds while ENGINE OIL LIFE is displayed. OIL LIFE RESET will appear on the display for 10 seconds to let you know the system is reset. See *Engine Oil Life System on page 5-16* for more information.

In addition to the engine oil life system monitoring the oil life, additional maintenance is recommended in the Maintenance Schedule in this manual. See *Engine Oil on page 5-13* and *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4*.

Customization Button

i (Customization): Press the customization button to access the VEHICLE SETTINGS menu and customize the settings to your vehicle. See *DIC Vehicle Customization on page 3-63* for more information.

Select Button

(Select): Press the select button to reset certain DIC functions and set your customization settings. For example, this button will reset the trip odometers and scroll through the languages in which you can select the DIC to display information.

DIC Warnings and Messages

Warning messages are displayed on the Driver Information Center (DIC) to notify the driver that the status of the vehicle has changed and that some action may be needed by the driver to correct the condition. If there is more than one message that needs to be displayed they will appear one after another. Some messages may not require immediate action, but you should press any of the four DIC buttons on the steering wheel, if equipped, to acknowledge that you received the messages and clear them from the display. If your vehicle is not equipped with DIC buttons on the steering wheel, press the trip odometer reset stem located on the instrument panel cluster to acknowledge messages and clear them from the display. Some messages cannot be cleared from the display because they are more urgent. These messages require action before they can be removed from the DIC display. You should take any messages that appear on the display seriously and remember that clearing the messages will only make the messages disappear, not correct the problem. The following are the possible messages that can be displayed and some information about them.

BATTERY NOT CHARGING

On some vehicles, if the battery is not charging during operation, this message will appear on the DIC. Driving with this problem could drain your battery. Have the electrical system checked by your GM dealer as soon as possible. Pressing any of the four DIC buttons, if equipped, will clear the message from the DIC display. If your vehicle is not equipped with the four DIC buttons, pressing the trip odometer reset stem will clear the message from the DIC display. See *Charging System Light on page 3-36* and *Voltmeter Gage on page 3-37*.

BUCKLE PASSENGER

If your vehicle is equipped with the passenger sensing system, this message reminds you to buckle the passenger's seat belt. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-80*.

This message will display and a chime will sound when the ignition is on, the driver's seat belt is buckled, the passenger's seat belt is unbuckled with the passenger airbag enabled and the vehicle is in motion. You should have the passenger buckle their seat belt.

This reminder will be repeated if the ignition is on, the vehicle is in motion, the driver is buckled and the passenger is still unbuckled and the passenger airbag is enabled. If the passenger's seat belt is already buckled, this message and chime will not come on.

Pressing any of the four DIC buttons, if equipped, will acknowledge the message and clear it from the DIC display. If your vehicle is not equipped with the four DIC buttons, pressing the trip odometer reset stem will acknowledge the message and clear it from the DIC display.

BUCKLE SEATBELT

If your vehicle is equipped with the passenger sensing system, this message reminds you to buckle the driver's seat belt. See *Passenger Sensing System on page 1-80*.

This message will display and a chime will sound when the ignition is on, the driver's seat belt is unbuckled and the vehicle is in motion. You should buckle your seat belt.

If the driver remains unbuckled when the ignition is on and the vehicle is in motion, the reminder will be repeated. If the driver's seat belt is already buckled, this message and chime will not come on.

This message is an additional reminder to the Safety Belt Reminder Light in the instrument panel cluster. See *Safety Belt Reminder Light on page 3-33*.

Pressing any of the four DIC buttons, if equipped, will acknowledge the message and clear it from the DIC display. If your vehicle is not equipped with the four DIC buttons, pressing the trip odometer reset stem will acknowledge the message and clear it from the DIC display.

CHANGE ENGINE OIL

This message is displayed when the engine oil needs to be changed and service is required for your vehicle. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4* and *Engine Oil on page 5-13* for more information. Also see *Engine Oil Life System on page 5-16* for information on how to reset the message. This message will clear itself after 10 seconds until the next ignition cycle.

CHARGING SYSTEM FAILURE

On some vehicles, if there is a problem with the generator and battery charging system, this message will appear on the DIC, a chime will sound and the charging system light on the instrument panel cluster will come on. See *Charging System Light on page 3-36* and *Voltmeter Gage on page 3-37* for more information. Driving with this problem could drain your battery. Turn off all unnecessary accessories. Stop and turn off the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Have the electrical system checked by your GM dealer immediately.

CHECK OIL LEVEL

If the oil level in the vehicle is low, this message will appear on the DIC. Check the oil level and correct it as necessary. You may need to let the vehicle cool or warm up and cycle the ignition to be sure this message will clear. Once the problem is corrected, pressing any of the four DIC buttons, if equipped, will clear the message from the DIC display. If your vehicle is not equipped with the four DIC buttons, pressing the trip odometer reset stem will clear the message from the DIC display. This message will clear itself after 10 seconds until the next ignition cycle. See *Engine Oil on page 5-13* for additional information.

CHECK TIRE PRESSURE

If a low tire pressure is detected in any of the vehicle's tires, this message will appear on the DIC. Pressing any of the four DIC buttons, if equipped, will clear the message from the DIC display. If your vehicle is not equipped with the four DIC buttons, pressing the trip odometer reset stem will clear the message from the DIC display. It will appear at each ignition cycle until the tires are inflated to the correct inflation pressure.

See *Tire Pressure Monitor System on page 5-68* for more information on tires and the correct inflation pressures.

CHECK WASHER FLUID

If the washer fluid level is low, this message will appear on the DIC. Adding washer fluid will clear the message. See *Windshield Washer Fluid on page 5-35*. Pressing any of the four DIC buttons, if equipped, will clear the message from the DIC display. If your vehicle is not equipped with the four DIC buttons, pressing the trip odometer reset stem will clear the message from the DIC display. This message will clear itself after 10 seconds until the next ignition cycle.

DRIVER DOOR AJAR

If the driver's door is not fully closed and the vehicle is in a drive gear, this message will appear on the display and you will hear a chime. Stop and turn off the vehicle, check the door for obstacles and close the door again. Check to see if the message still appears on the DIC. Pressing any of the four DIC buttons, if equipped, will clear the message from the DIC display. If your vehicle is not equipped with the four DIC buttons, pressing the trip odometer reset stem will clear the message from the DIC display.

ENGINE COOLANT HOT

If the cooling system temperature gets hot, this message will appear in the DIC. Stop the vehicle and let the engine idle in PARK (P) to allow the coolant to reach a safe temperature. This message will clear when the coolant temperature drops to a safe operating temperature. Pressing any of the four DIC buttons, if equipped, will clear the message from the DIC display. If your vehicle is not equipped with the four DIC buttons, pressing the trip odometer reset stem will clear the message from the DIC display.

ENGINE OVERHEATED

If the engine cooling system reaches unsafe temperatures for operation, this message will appear in the DIC and you will hear a chime. Stop and turn off the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so to avoid severe damage. This message will clear when the engine has cooled to a safe operating temperature.

Notice: **If you drive your vehicle while the engine is overheating, severe engine damage may occur. If an overheat warning appears on the instrument panel cluster and/or DIC, stop the vehicle as soon as possible. Do not increase the engine speed above normal idling speed. See *Engine Overheating on page 5-26* for more information.**

FUEL LEVEL LOW

If the fuel level is low, this message will appear on the DIC and you will hear a chime. Refuel as soon as possible. Pressing any of the four DIC buttons, if equipped, will clear the message from the DIC display. If your vehicle is not equipped with the four DIC buttons, pressing the trip odometer reset stem will clear the message from the DIC display. It will also clear itself after 10 seconds until the next ignition cycle. The low fuel light near the fuel gage will still remain on in either case. See *Low Fuel Warning Light on page 3-48*,*Fuel Gage on page 3-48* and *Fuel on page 5-5*.

KEYFOB X BATTERY LOW

If a remote keyless entry transmitter battery is low, this message will appear on the DIC. The battery needs to be replaced in the transmitter. See “Battery Replacement” under *Remote Keyless Entry System Operation on page 2-5*. Pressing any of the four DIC buttons, if equipped, will clear the message from the DIC display. If your vehicle is not equipped with the four DIC buttons, pressing the trip odometer reset stem will clear the message from the DIC display.

LEFT REAR DOOR AJAR

If the driver's side rear door is not fully closed and the vehicle is in a drive gear, this message will appear on the display and you will hear a chime. Stop and turn off the vehicle, check the door for obstacles and close the door again. Check to see if the message still appears on the DIC. Pressing any of the four DIC buttons, if equipped, will clear the message from the DIC display. If your vehicle is not equipped with the four DIC buttons, pressing the trip odometer reset stem will clear the message from the DIC display.

LOW COOLANT LEVEL

If your vehicle has a low coolant sensor and the engine coolant level is low, this message will appear on the DIC. Adding coolant will clear the message. See *Cooling System on page 5-29*. Pressing any of the four DIC buttons, if equipped, will clear the message from the DIC display. If your vehicle is not equipped with the four DIC buttons, pressing the trip odometer reset stem will clear the message from the DIC display.

Notice: **Engine damage from running your engine without coolant is not covered by your warranty. See "Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode" in the Index for information on driving to a safe place in an emergency.**

OIL LIFE RESET

This message will appear on the display for about 10 seconds after resetting the change engine oil message. See "Engine Oil Life System" under *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-50* and *Engine Oil on page 5-13* for more information.

OIL PRESSURE LOW

If low oil pressure levels occur, this message will be displayed on the DIC and a chime will sound. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible and do not operate it until the cause of the low oil pressure has been corrected. Check your oil as soon as possible and have your vehicle serviced by your GM dealer.

Notice: **If you drive your vehicle while the engine oil pressure is low, severe engine damage may occur. If a low oil pressure warning appears on the Driver Information Center (DIC), stop the vehicle as soon as possible. Do not drive the vehicle until the cause of the low oil pressure is corrected. See *Engine Oil on page 5-13* for more information.**

PASSENGER DOOR AJAR

If the passenger's door is not fully closed and the vehicle is in a drive gear, this message will appear on the display and you will hear a chime. Stop and turn off the vehicle, check the door for obstacles and close the door again. Check to see if the message still appears on the DIC. Pressing any of the four DIC buttons, if equipped, will clear the message from the DIC display. If your vehicle is not equipped with the four DIC buttons, pressing the trip odometer reset stem will clear the message from the DIC display.

REAR ACCESS OPEN

If the liftgate is open while the ignition is in RUN, this message will appear on the DIC and you will hear a chime. Turn off the vehicle and check the liftgate. Restart the vehicle and check for the message on the DIC display. Pressing any of the four DIC buttons, if equipped, will clear the message from the DIC display. If your vehicle is not equipped with the four DIC buttons, pressing the trip odometer reset stem will clear the message from the DIC display.

REDUCED ENGINE POWER

This message is displayed and you will hear a chime when the cooling system temperature gets too hot and the engine further enters the engine coolant protection mode. See *Engine Overheating on page 5-26* for further information.

You may also see this message when the vehicle determines a problem with the electronic throttle control. See your GM dealer for service.

REPLACE LIFTGATE FUSE

This message will be displayed if the liftgate lock malfunctions and/or the liftgate fuse blows. For more information on fuses, see *Fuses and Circuit Breakers on page 5-109*. If the message returns after replacing the fuse, see your GM dealer for service.

RIGHT REAR DOOR AJAR

If the passenger's side rear door is not fully closed and the vehicle is in a drive gear, this message will appear on the display and you will hear a chime. Stop and turn off the vehicle, check the door for obstacles and close the door again. Check to see if the message still appears on the DIC. Pressing any of the four DIC buttons, if equipped, will clear the message from the DIC display. If your vehicle is not equipped with the four DIC buttons, pressing the trip odometer reset stem will clear the message from the DIC display.

SERVICE 4WD

If you have all-wheel-drive and a problem occurs with the all-wheel-drive system, this message will appear on the DIC. If this message appears, stop as soon as possible and turn off the vehicle. Restart the vehicle and check for the message on the DIC display. If the message is still displayed or appears again when you begin driving, the four-wheel-drive system needs service. See your GM dealer. Pressing any of the four DIC buttons, if equipped, will clear the message from the DIC display. If your vehicle is not equipped with the four DIC buttons, pressing the trip odometer reset stem will clear the message from the DIC display.

SERVICE AIR BAG

If there is a problem with the airbag system, this message will be displayed on the DIC. Have your GM dealer inspect the system for problems. See *Airbag Readiness Light on page 3-34* and *Airbag System on page 1-72*. Pressing any of the four DIC buttons, if equipped, will clear the message from the DIC display. If your vehicle is not equipped with the four DIC buttons, pressing the trip odometer reset stem will clear the message from the DIC display.

SERVICE BRAKE SYSTEM

If a problem occurs with the brake system, this message will appear on the DIC. If this message appears, stop as soon as possible and turn off the vehicle. Restart the vehicle and check for the message on the DIC display. If the message is still displayed or appears again when you begin driving, the brake system needs service. See your GM dealer. Pressing any of the four DIC buttons, if equipped, will clear the message from the DIC display. If your vehicle is not equipped with the four DIC buttons, pressing the trip odometer reset stem will clear the message from the DIC display.

SERVICE CHARGING SYSTEM

On some vehicles, if there is a problem with the battery charging system, this message will appear on the DIC. Under certain conditions, the charging system light may also turn on in the instrument panel cluster. See *Charging System Light on page 3-36*. The battery will not be charging at an optimal rate and the vehicle will lose the ability to enter the fuel economy mode. The vehicle is safe to drive, however you should have the electrical system checked by your GM dealer. Pressing any of the four DIC buttons, if equipped, will clear the message from the DIC display. If your vehicle is not equipped with the four DIC buttons, pressing the trip odometer reset stem will clear the message from the DIC display.

SERVICE RIDE CONTROL

If a problem occurs with the suspension system, this message will appear on the DIC. If this message appears, stop and turn off the vehicle. Restart the vehicle and check for the message on the DIC display. If the message is still displayed or appears again when you begin driving, the suspension system needs service. See your GM dealer. Pressing any of the four DIC buttons, if equipped, will clear the message from the DIC display. If your vehicle is not equipped with the four DIC buttons, pressing the trip odometer reset stem will clear the message from the DIC display.

SERVICE STABILITY

If you ever see the SERVICE STABILITY message, it means there may be a problem with your StabiliTrak® system. If you see this message try to reset the system. Stop; turn off the engine; then start the engine again. If the SERVICE STABILITY message still comes on, it means there is a problem. You should see your GM dealer for service. The vehicle is safe to drive, however, you do not have the benefit of StabiliTrak®, so reduce your speed and drive accordingly.

For more information on the StabiliTrak® system, see *StabiliTrak® System on page 4-9*.

SERVICE TIRE MONITOR

This message will be displayed if any of the tire monitor sensors have malfunctioned, if the tire monitor sensors have not been programmed or if the recommended tire pressures are not programmed. See your GM dealer for service. Pressing any of the four DIC buttons, if equipped, will clear the message from the DIC display. If your vehicle is not equipped with the four DIC buttons, pressing the trip odometer reset stem will clear the message from the DIC display.

STABILITY SYS ACTIVE

You may see the STABILITY SYS ACTIVE message on the DIC. It means that an advanced computer-controlled system has come on to help your vehicle continue to go in the direction in which you are steering.

For more information on the StabiliTrak system, see *StabiliTrak® System on page 4-9*.

STABILITY SYS DISABLED

The STABILITY SYS DISABLED message will turn on when you press the StabiliTrak® button, or when the stability control has been automatically disabled.

There are four conditions that can cause this message to appear.

- One condition is overheating, which could occur if StabiliTrak® activates continuously for an extended period of time.
- The message will also be displayed if the brake system warning light is on. See *Brake System Warning Light on page 3-37*.
- The message could be displayed if the stability system takes longer than usual to complete its diagnostic checks due to driving conditions.
- Also, if an engine or vehicle related problem has been detected, and the vehicle needs service, the message will appear. See your GM dealer.

The message will turn off as soon as the conditions that caused the message to be displayed are no longer present.

For more information on the StabiliTrak® system, see *StabiliTrak® System on page 4-9*.

TIGHTEN FUEL CAP

If the vehicle's fuel cap is not tightened properly this message may appear along with the check engine light on the instrument panel. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 3-42*. Reinstall the fuel cap, making sure to fully install the cap. See *Filling Your Tank on page 5-8*. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. A loose or missing fuel cap will allow fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. A few driving trips with the cap properly installed should turn the light and message off.

TRACTION ACTIVE

When the traction control system has detected that any of the vehicle's wheels are slipping, the traction control system will activate and this message will appear on the DIC. For more information on traction control and the StabiliTrak® system, see *StabiliTrak® System on page 4-9*.

TRACTION SYS LIMITED

If the brake traction control system activates constantly or if the brakes have heated up due to high-speed braking, brake traction control will be disabled and the TRACTION SYS LIMITED message will be displayed.

For more information on the StabiliTrak® system and traction control, see *StabiliTrak® System on page 4-9*.

TRANS HOT IDLE ENGINE

If the transmission fluid gets hot, this message will appear on the DIC along with a continuous chime. Driving with the transmission fluid temperature high can cause damage to the vehicle. Stop the vehicle and let it idle to allow the transmission to cool. This message will clear and the chime will stop when the fluid temperature reaches a safe level.

Notice: **If you drive your vehicle while the transmission fluid is overheating and the transmission temperature warning is displayed on the instrument panel cluster and/or DIC, you can damage the transmission. This could lead to costly repairs that would not be covered by your warranty. Do not drive your vehicle with overheated transmission fluid or while transmission temperature warning is displayed.**

TRANSMISSION HOT

If the transmission fluid temperature becomes high, this message will appear on the DIC display.

When the transmission enters the protection mode, you may notice a change in the transmission shifting patterns. When the transmission fluid temperature returns to normal, the display will turn off and the transmission shifting patterns will return to normal.

Notice: **If you drive your vehicle while the transmission fluid is overheating and the transmission temperature warning is displayed on the instrument panel cluster and/or DIC, you can damage the transmission. This could lead to costly repairs that would not be covered by your warranty. Do not drive your vehicle with overheated transmission fluid or while transmission temperature warning is displayed.**

The following situations can cause the transmission to operate at higher temperatures:

- Towing a trailer
- Hot outside air temperatures
- Hauling a large or heavy load
- Over-loading
- Low transmission fluid level
- High transmission fluid level
- Restricted air flow to the radiator

A temporary solution to hotter transmission operating temperatures may be to let the transmission cool down. If the transmission is operated at higher temperatures on a frequent basis, see *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4* for the proper transmission maintenance intervals.

TURN SIGNAL ON

If a turn signal is left on for 3/4 of a mile (1.2 km), this message will appear on the display and you will hear a chime. Move the turn signal/multifunction lever to the off position. Pressing any of the four DIC buttons, if equipped, will clear the message from the DIC display. If your vehicle is not equipped with the four DIC buttons, pressing the trip odometer reset stem will clear the message from the DIC display.

DIC Vehicle Customization

Your vehicle may have customization capabilities that allow you to program some features to one setting based on your preference. All of the customizable options listed may not be available on your vehicle. Only the options available will be displayed on your Driver Information Center (DIC).

The default settings for the customization features were set when your vehicle left the factory, but may have been changed from their default state since then.

To change feature preferences, make sure the ignition is on and the vehicle is in PARK (P). Press the customization button to scroll through the available customizable options.

After pressing the customization button, VEHICLE SETTINGS will momentarily display before going to a customization option.

Lock Doors

Press the customization button until LOCK DOORS appears in the display. To select your preference for automatic locking, press the select button while LOCK DOORS is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following choices:

LOCK DOORS: IN GEAR (default): The doors will lock when the vehicle is shifted out of PARK (P).

LOCK DOORS: WITH SPEED: The doors will lock when the vehicle speed is above 8 mph (13 km/h) for three seconds.

Choose one of the available options and press the customization button while it is displayed on the DIC to select it and move on to the next feature. For more information on automatic door locks, see *Programmable Automatic Door Locks on page 2-10*.

Unlock Doors

Press the customization button until UNLOCK DOORS appears in the display. To select your preference for automatic unlocking, press the select button while UNLOCK DOORS is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following choices:

UNLOCK DOORS: IN PARK (default): All of the doors will unlock when the vehicle is shifted into PARK (P).

UNLOCK DRIVER: IN PARK: The driver's door will be unlocked when the vehicle is shifted into PARK (P).

UNLOCK DOORS: KEY OUT: All of the doors will unlock when the key is taken out of the ignition.

UNLOCK DOORS: MANUALLY: The doors will not be unlocked automatically.

Choose one of the available options and press the customization button while it is displayed on the DIC to select it and move on to the next feature. For more information on automatic door locks, see *Programmable Automatic Door Locks on page 2-10*.

Door Lock Delay

If your DIC does not have this feature, you can still program the delayed locking feature. See *Delayed Locking on page 2-9* for more information.

When locking the doors with the power lock switch or the remote keyless entry transmitter and a door or the liftgate is open, the delayed locking feature will delay locking the doors and liftgate until five seconds after the last door is closed.

Press the customization button until DOOR LOCK DELAY appears in the display. To select your preference for delayed locking, press the select button while DOOR LOCK DELAY is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following choices:

DOOR LOCK DELAY: OFF (default): The doors will lock immediately when pressing the power lock switch or the lock button on the remote keyless entry transmitter.

DOOR LOCK DELAY: ON: The doors will not lock until five seconds after the last door or the liftgate is closed. You will hear three chimes to signal that the delayed locking feature is in use. You can temporarily override delayed locking by pressing the lock button on the door or the remote keyless entry transmitter a second time.

Choose one of the available options and press the customization button while it is displayed on the DIC to select it and move on to the next feature. For more information on automatic door locks, see *Programmable Automatic Door Locks on page 2-10*.

This feature will not operate if the key is in the ignition.

Lock Feedback

Press the customization button until LOCK FEEDBACK appears in the display. To select your preference for the feedback you receive when locking the vehicle with the remote keyless entry transmitter, press the select button while LOCK FEEDBACK is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following choices:

LOCK FEEDBACK: BOTH (default): The parking lamps will flash each time you press the button with the lock symbol on the remote keyless entry transmitter and the horn will chirp the second time you press the lock button.

LOCK FEEDBACK: LAMPS: The parking lamps will flash each time you press the button with the lock symbol on the remote keyless entry transmitter.

LOCK FEEDBACK: HORN: The horn will chirp the second time you press the button with the lock symbol on the remote keyless entry transmitter.

LOCK FEEDBACK: OFF: There will be no feedback when locking the vehicle.

Choose one of the available options and press the customization button while it is displayed on the DIC to select it and move on to the next feature.

Unlock Feedback

Press the customization button until UNLOCK FEEDBACK appears in the display. To select your preference for the feedback you will receive when unlocking the vehicle with the remote keyless entry transmitter, press the select button while UNLOCK FEEDBACK is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following choices:

UNLOCK FEEDBACK: LAMPS (default): The parking lamps will flash each time you press the button with the unlock symbol on the remote keyless entry transmitter.

UNLOCK FEEDBACK: HORN: The horn will chirp the second time you press the button with the unlock symbol on the remote keyless entry transmitter.

UNLOCK FEEDBACK: BOTH: The parking lamps will flash each time you press the button with the unlock symbol on the remote keyless entry transmitter and the horn will chirp the second time you press the unlock button.

UNLOCK FEEDBACK: OFF: There will be no feedback when unlocking the vehicle.

Choose one of the available options and press the customization button while it is displayed on the DIC to select it and move on to the next feature.

Headlamp Delay

Press the customization button until HEADLAMP DELAY appears in the display. To select your preference for how long the headlamps will stay on when you turn off the vehicle, press the select button while HEADLAMP DELAY is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following choices:

- HEADLAMP DELAY: 10 SEC (default)
- HEADLAMP DELAY: 20 SEC
- HEADLAMP DELAY: 40 SEC
- HEADLAMP DELAY: 1 MIN
- HEADLAMP DELAY: 2 MIN
- HEADLAMP DELAY: 3 MIN
- HEADLAMP DELAY: OFF

The amount of time you choose will be the amount of time that the headlamps stay on after you turn off the vehicle. If you choose off, the headlamps will turn off as soon as you turn off the vehicle.

Choose one of the available options and press the customization button while it is displayed on the DIC to select it and move on to the next feature.

Perimeter Lights

Press the customization button until PERIMETER LIGHTS appears in the display. To select your preference for perimeter lighting, press the select button while PERIMETER LIGHTS is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following choices:

PERIMETER LIGHTS: ON (default): The headlamps and back-up lamps will come on for 40 seconds, if it is dark enough outside, when you unlock the vehicle with the remote keyless entry transmitter.

PERIMETER LIGHTS: OFF: The perimeter lights will not come on when you unlock the vehicle with the remote keyless entry transmitter.

Choose one of the available options and press the customization button while it is displayed on the DIC to select it and move on to the next feature.

Easy Exit Seat

Press the customization button until EASY EXIT SEAT appears in the display. To select your preference for seat position exit, press the select button while EASY EXIT SEAT is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following choices:

EASY EXIT SEAT: OFF (default): No seat exit recall will occur.

EASY EXIT SEAT: ON: The driver's seat will move to the exit position when the key is removed from the ignition.

Choose one of the available options and press the customization button while it is displayed on the DIC to select it and move on to the next feature. For more information on seat position exit, see *Memory Seat on page 2-46*.

Curb View

Press the customization button until CURB VIEW appears in the display. To select your preference for curb view, press the select button while CURB VIEW is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following choices:

CURB VIEW: OFF (default): Neither outside mirror will be tilted down when the vehicle is shifted into REVERSE (R).

CURB VIEW: PASSENGER: The passenger's outside mirror will be tilted down when the vehicle is shifted into REVERSE (R).

CURB VIEW: DRIVER: The driver's outside mirror will be tilted down when the vehicle is shifted into REVERSE (R).

CURB VIEW: BOTH: The driver's and passenger's outside mirrors will be tilted down when the vehicle is shifted into REVERSE (R).

Choose one of the available options and press the customization button while it is displayed on the DIC to select it and move on to the next feature. For more information on tilt mirror in reverse, see *Outside Automatic Dimming Mirror with Curb View Assist on page 2-35*.

Alarm Warning

Press the customization button until ALARM WARNING appears in the display. To select your preference for alarm warning, press the select button while ALARM WARNING is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following choices:

ALARM WARNING: BOTH (default): The headlamps will flash and the horn will chirp when the alarm is active.

ALARM WARNING: OFF: There will be no alarm warning on activation.

ALARM WARNING: HORN: The horn will chirp when the alarm is active.

ALARM WARNING: LAMPS: The headlamps will flash when the alarm is active.

Choose one of the available options and press the customization button while your choice is displayed on the DIC to select it and move on to the next feature. For more information on alarm warning type, see *Content Theft-Deterrent on page 2-16*.

Language

To select your preference for display language, press the select button while LANGUAGE is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following languages:

- ENGLISH
- FRANCAIS (French)
- ESPANOL (Spanish)

Choose one of the available options and press the customization button while it is displayed on the DIC to select it.

If you accidentally choose a language that you do not want or understand, press and hold the customization button and the trip information button at the same time. The DIC will begin scrolling through the languages in their particular language. English will be in English, Francais will be in French and Espanol will be in Spanish. When you see the language that you would like, release both buttons. The DIC will then display the information in the language you chose.

You can also scroll through the different languages by pressing and holding the trip reset stem for four seconds, as long as you are in the odometer mode.

Display Units

Press the customization button until DISPLAY UNITS appears in the display. To select English or metric, press the select button while DISPLAY UNITS is displayed on the DIC. Pressing the select button will scroll through the following choices:

- DISPLAY UNITS: ENGLISH
- DISPLAY UNITS: METRIC

If you choose English, all information will be displayed in English units. For example, distance in miles and fuel economy in miles per gallon.

Choose one of the available options and press the customization button while it is displayed on the DIC to select it and end out of the customizable options.

Audio System(s)

Notice: **Before adding any sound equipment to your vehicle, like a tape player, CB radio, mobile telephone, or two-way radio, make sure that it can be added by checking with your dealer. Also, check federal rules covering mobile radio and telephone units. If sound equipment can be added, it is very important to do it properly. Added sound equipment may interfere with the operation of your vehicle's engine, radio, or other systems, and even damage them. Your vehicle's systems may interfere with the operation of sound equipment that has been added improperly.**

Figure out which audio system is in your vehicle, find out what your audio system can do, and how to operate all of its controls.

Your vehicle has a feature called Retained Accessory Power (RAP). With RAP, the audio system can be played even after the ignition is turned off. See *Retained Accessory Power (RAP) on page 2-19* for more information.

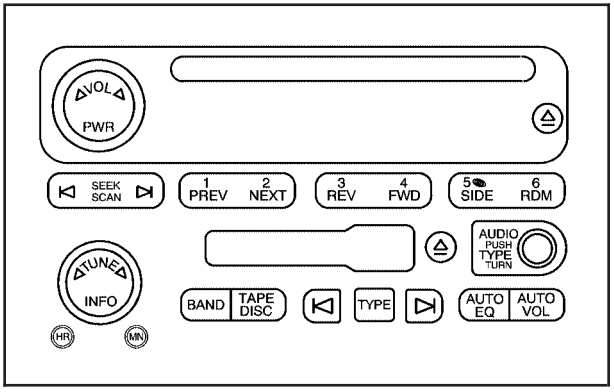
Setting the Time

Press and hold the HR button until the correct hour appears on the display. Press and hold the MN button until the correct minute appears on the display. The time can be set with the ignition on or off.

To synchronize the time with an FM station broadcasting Radio Data System (RDS) information, press and hold the hour and minute buttons at the same time until RDS TIME appears on the display. To accept this time, press and hold the hour and minute buttons, at the same time, for another two seconds. If the time is not available from the station, NO UPDAT will appear on the display.

RDS time is broadcast once a minute. After tuning to an RDS broadcast station, it may take a few minutes for the time to update.

Radio with Cassette and CD



Radio Data System (RDS)

The audio system has a Radio Data System (RDS). RDS features are available for use only on FM stations that broadcast RDS information.

With RDS, the radio can do the following:

- Seek to stations broadcasting the selected type of programming
- Receive announcements concerning local and national emergencies
- Display messages from radio stations

This system relies upon receiving specific information from these stations and will only work when the information is available. In rare cases, a radio station may broadcast incorrect information that will cause the radio features to work improperly. If this happens, contact the radio station.

While the radio is tuned to an RDS station, the station name or call letters will appear on the display instead of the frequency. RDS stations may also provide the time of day, a program type (PTY) for current programming, and the name of the program being broadcast.

XM™ Satellite Radio Service

XM™ is a satellite radio service that is based in the 48 contiguous United States. XM™ offers 100 coast-to-coast channels including music, news, sports, talk, and children's programming. XM™ provides digital quality audio and text information that includes song title and artist name. A service fee is required in order to receive the XM™ service. For more information, contact XM™ at www.xmradio.com or call 1-800-852-XMXM (9696).

Playing the Radio

PWR (Power): Press this knob to turn the system on and off.

◁ **VOL** ▷ **(Volume):** Turn this knob to increase or to decrease the volume.

INFO (Information): Press this knob to switch the display between the radio station frequency and the time. When the ignition is off, press this knob to display the time.

For RDS, press the INFO knob to change what appears on the display while using RDS. The display options are station name, RDS station frequency, PTY, and the name of the program (if available).

For XM™ (if equipped), press the INFO knob while in XM™ mode to retrieve four different categories of information related to the current song or channel: Artist, Song Title, Category or PTY, Channel Number/Channel Name.

To change the default on the display, press the INFO knob until you see the display you want, then hold the knob until you hear a beep. The selected display will now be the default.

AUTO VOL (Automatic Volume): Your vehicle has the Bose® AudioPilot® noise compensation technology. When turned on, AudioPilot® continuously adjusts the audio system to compensate for background noise, so that your music always sounds the same at the set volume level. This feature is most effective at lower radio volume settings where background noise can affect how well you hear the music being played through your vehicle's audio system. At higher volume settings, where the music is much louder than the background noise, there may be little or no adjustments by AudioPilot®.

To use AudioPilot®, set the radio volume to your desired level. Turn AudioPilot® on by pressing the AUTO VOL button until AVOL ON appears on the display. As you increase vehicle speed, the background noise in your vehicle will increase. AudioPilot® will adjust your audio system's output for the background noise it hears. To turn AudioPilot® off, press AUTO VOL until AVOL OFF appears on the display. For additional information on AudioPilot®, please visit www.bose.com.

Finding a Station

BAND: Press this button to switch between FM1, FM2, AM, or XM1 or XM2 (if equipped). The display will show the selection.

◁ **TUNE** ▷ **:** Turn this knob to select radio stations.

⏮ **SEEK** ⏭ **:** Press either the SEEK or the TYPE arrows to go to the next or to the previous station and stay there.

The radio will only seek stations with a strong signal that are in the selected band.

⏮ **SCAN** ⏭ **:** Press and hold either the SCAN or the TYPE arrows for two seconds until SCAN appears on the display and you hear a beep. The radio will go to a station, play for a few seconds, then go on to the next station. Press either the SCAN or the TYPE arrows again to stop scanning.

To scan preset stations, press and hold either the SCAN or the TYPE arrows for more than four seconds. PSCN will appear on the display and you will hear a double beep. The radio will go to a preset station, play for a few seconds, then go on to the next preset station. Press either the SCAN or the TYPE arrows again to stop scanning presets.

The radio will only scan stations with a strong signal that are in the selected band.

Setting Preset Stations

Up to 30 stations (six FM1, six FM2, and six AM, six XM1 and six XM2 (if equipped), can be programmed on the six numbered pushbuttons, by performing the following steps:

1. Turn the radio on.
2. Press BAND to select FM1, FM2, AM, or XM1 or XM2.
3. Tune in the desired station.
4. Press and hold one of the six numbered pushbuttons until you hear a beep. Whenever that numbered pushbutton is pressed, the station that was set will return for that pushbutton.
5. Repeat the steps for each pushbutton.

To store an equalization setting to a preset station perform the following:

1. Tune to the preset station.
2. Press and release the AUTO EQ button to select the equalization setting.

   Once the equalization no longer appears on the display, the equalization will be set for that preset station.

Setting the Tone (Bass/Treble)

AUDIO: Push and release the AUDIO knob until BASS or TREB appears on the display. Turn the knob to increase or to decrease. The display will show the bass or treble level. If a station is weak or noisy, decrease the treble.

To adjust the bass and treble to the middle position, push and hold the AUDIO knob. The radio will produce one beep and adjust the display level to the middle position.

To adjust all tone and speaker controls to the middle position, push and hold the AUDIO knob when no tone or speaker control is displayed. ALL CENTERED will appear on the display, you will hear a beep, and the display level will be adjusted to the middle position.

AUTO EQ (Automatic Equalization): Press this button to enhance the audio performance for different passengers in the vehicle.

The setting last chosen will appear on the display when you first press AUTO EQ. Each time you press this button, another setting will appear on the display and AUTO EQ will switch to one of the preset settings listed.

The audio system allows you to choose from four different equalization settings: normal, driver, rear and spacious. These settings can be used while listening to the radio, cassette or the CD player.

NORMAL: This setting provides the best overall vehicle sound quality for all seating locations.

DRIVER: This setting gives the driver the best sound quality.

REAR: This setting gives the rear seat passengers the best sound quality.

SPACIOUS: This setting makes the listening space seem larger.

The radio can save separate AUTO EQ settings for each preset and source.

Adjusting the Speakers (Balance/Fade)

AUDIO: To adjust the balance between the right and the left speakers, push and release the AUDIO knob until BAL appears on the display. Turn the knob to move the sound toward the right or the left speakers.

To adjust the fade between the front and the rear speakers, push and release the AUDIO knob until FADE appears on the display. Turn the knob to move the sound toward the front or the rear speakers.

To adjust the balance and fade to the middle position, push the AUDIO knob, then push it again and hold it until the radio produces one beep. The balance and fade will be adjusted to the middle position and the display will show the speaker balance.

To adjust all tone and speaker controls to the middle position, push and hold the AUDIO knob when no tone or speaker control is displayed. ALL CENTERED will appear on the display, you will hear a beep, and the display level will be adjusted to the middle position.

Finding a Program Type (PTY) Station (RDS and XM™)

To select and find a desired PTY perform the following:

1. Press the TYPE button to activate program type select mode. TYPE and a PTY will appear on the display.
2. Turn the TYPE knob or press and release the TYPE button to select a PTY.
3. Once the desired PTY is displayed, press and release either the TYPE or the SEEK arrows to select and to take you to the PTY's first station.
4. To go to another station within that PTY and the PTY is displayed, press either TYPE or SEEK arrow once. If the PTY is not displayed, go back to Step 1.
5. Press either the TYPE or the SEEK arrows to exit program type select mode.

If the radio cannot find the desired program type, NONE will appear on the display and the radio will return to the last station you were listening to.

SCAN: Scan the stations within a PTY by performing the following:

1. Press the TYPE button to activate program type select mode. TYPE and the last selected PTY will appear on the display.
2. Turn the TYPE knob or press and release the TYPE button to select a PTY.
3. Once the desired PTY is displayed, press and hold either the TYPE or the SCAN arrows for two seconds, and the radio will begin scanning the stations in the PTY.
4. Press either the TYPE or the SCAN arrows to stop at a station.

BAND (Alternate Frequency): Alternate frequency allows the radio to switch to a stronger station with the same program type. To turn alternate frequency on, press and hold BAND for two seconds. AF ON will appear on the display. The radio may switch to stations with a stronger frequency.

To turn alternate frequency off, press and hold BAND again for two seconds. AF OFF will appear on the display. The radio will not switch to other stations.

This function does not apply for XM™ Satellite Radio Service.

Setting Preset PTYs (RDS Only)

These buttons have factory PTY presets. Up to 12 PTYs (six FM1 and six FM2), can be programmed on the six numbered pushbuttons, by performing the following steps:

1. Press BAND to select FM1 or FM2.
2. Press the TYPE button to activate program type select mode. TYPE and the last selected PTY will appear on the display.
3. Turn the TYPE knob or press and release the TYPE button to select a PTY.
4. Press and hold one of the six numbered pushbuttons until you hear a beep. Whenever that numbered pushbutton is pressed, the PTY that was set will return.
5. Repeat the steps for each pushbutton.

RDS Messages

INFO (Information): If the current station has a message, the information symbol will appear on the display. Press this button to see the message. The message may display the artist, song title, call in phone numbers, etc.

If the entire message is not displayed, parts of the message will appear every three seconds. To scroll through the message, press and release the INFO button. A new group of words will appear on the display after every press of the button. Once the complete message has been displayed, the information symbol will disappear from the display until another new message is received. The last message can be displayed by pressing the INFO button. You can view the last message until a new message is received or a different station is tuned to.

Radio Messages

CAL ERR (Calibration Error): The audio system has been calibrated for your vehicle from the factory. If CAL ERR appears on the display, it means that the radio has not been configured properly for the vehicle and must be returned to your GM dealer for service.

LOCKED: This message is displayed when the THEFTLOCK® system has locked up. Take the vehicle to your GM dealer for service.

If any error occurs repeatedly, or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your GM dealer.

XM™ Radio Messages

Radio Display Message	Condition	Action Required
XL (Explicit Language Channels)	XL on the radio display, after the channel name, indicates content with explicit language.	These channels, or any others, can be blocked at a customer's request, by calling 1-800-852-XMXM (9696).
Updating	Updating encryption code	The encryption code in the receiver is being updated, and no action is required. This process should take no longer than 30 seconds.
No Signal	Loss of signal	The system is functioning correctly, but the vehicle is in a location that is blocking the XM™ signal. When you move into an open area, the signal should return.
Loading XM	Acquiring channel audio (after 4 second delay)	The audio system is acquiring and processing audio and text data. No action is needed. This message should disappear shortly.
CH Off Air	Channel not in service	This channel is not currently in service. Tune to another channel.
CH Unavail	Channel no longer available	This previously assigned channel is no longer assigned. Tune to another station. If this station was one of the presets, choose another station for that preset button.
No Info	Artist Name/Feature not available	No artist information is available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.
No Info	Song/Program Title not available	No song title information is available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.

XM™ Radio Messages (cont'd)

Radio Display Message	Condition	Action Required
No Info	Category Name not available	No category information is available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.
No Info	No Text/Informational message available	No text or informational messages are available at this time on this channel. The system is working properly.
Not Found	No channel available for the chosen category	There are no channels available for the selected category. The system is working properly.
XM Locked	Theft lock active	The XM™ receiver in the vehicle may have previously been in another vehicle. For security purposes, XM™ receivers cannot be swapped between vehicles. If this message is received after having your vehicle serviced, check with your GM dealer.
Radio ID	Radio ID label (channel 0)	If tuned to channel 0, this message will alternate with the XM™ Radio eight digit radio ID label. This label is needed to activate the service.
Unknown	Radio ID not known (should only be if hardware failure)	If this message is received when tuned to channel 0, there may be a receiver fault. Consult with your GM dealer.
Chk XMRcvr	Hardware failure	If this message does not clear within a short period of time, the receiver may have a fault. Consult with your GM dealer.

Playing a Cassette Tape

The tape player is built to work best with tapes that are up to 30 to 45 minutes long on each side. Tapes longer than that are so thin they may not work well in this player. The longer side with the tape visible should face to the right. If you hear nothing or hear a garbled sound, the tape may not be in squarely. Press the eject button to remove the tape and start over.

If the ignition and radio are off, press the eject button or the INFO knob to insert and to begin play of a tape. If the ignition is on and the radio is off, the tape can be inserted and will begin playing.

While the tape is playing, use the VOL, AUDIO, and SEEK controls just as you do for the radio. The cassette tape symbol will appear on the display and an arrow showing which side of the tape is playing. The tape player will play the other side of the tape when it reaches the end.

Cassette tape adapter kits for portable CD players will work in the cassette tape player. See “CD Adapter Kits” later for more information.

The tape bias is set automatically when a metal or chrome tape is inserted.

If an error appears on the display, see “Cassette Tape Messages” later in this section.

1 PREV (Previous): The tape must have at least three seconds of silence between each selection for previous to work. Press this pushbutton to go to the previous selection on the tape if the current selection has been playing for less than three seconds. If pressed when the current selection has been playing from three to 13 seconds, it will go to the beginning of the previous selection or the beginning of the current selection, depending on the position on the tape. If pressed when the current selection has been playing for more than 13 seconds, it will go to the beginning of the current selection.

SEEK and a negative number will appear on the display while the cassette player is in the previous mode. Pressing this pushbutton multiple times will increase the number of selections to be searched back, up to –9.

2 NEXT: The tape must have at least three seconds of silence between each selection for next to work. Press this pushbutton to go to the next selection on the tape. Pressing this pushbutton multiple times, in next mode, will increase the number of selections to be searched forward. SEEK and a positive number will appear on the display.

3 REV (Reverse): Press this pushbutton to quickly reverse the tape. The radio will play while the tape reverses. Press it again to return to playing speed. The station frequency and REV will appear on the display. Select stations during reverse operation by using TUNE and SEEK.

4 FWD (Forward): Press this pushbutton to quickly advance the tape. The radio will play while the tape advances. Press this pushbutton again to return to playing speed. The station frequency and FWD will appear on the display. Select stations during forward operation by using TUNE and SEEK.

5 ⧵ SIDE: Press this pushbutton to play the other side of the tape.

⊲ SEEK ⊳ : The right arrow is the same as the NEXT pushbutton, and the left arrow is the same as the PREV pushbutton. If either arrow is held or pressed more than once, the player will continue moving forward or backward through the tape. SEEK and a positive or negative number will appear on the display.

⊲ SCAN ⊳ : Press and hold either the SCAN or the TYPE arrows for more than two seconds until SCAN appears on the display and you hear a beep. The radio will go to the next selection, play for 10 seconds, then go on to the next selection. Press either the SCAN or the TYPE arrows again, to stop scanning. The tape must have at least three seconds of silence between each selection for scan to work.

BAND: Press this button to listen to the radio when a cassette tape or CD is playing. The inactive tape or CD will remain safely inside the radio for future listening.

TAPE DISC: Press this button to play a cassette tape or CD when listening to the radio. The inactive tape or CD will remain safely inside the radio for future listening.

⏏ (Eject): Press this button to stop a tape when it is playing or to eject a tape when it is not playing. Eject may be activated with the radio off. Cassette tapes may be loaded with the radio off if this button is pressed first.

Cassette Tape Messages

CHK TAPE (Check Tape): If this message appears on the display, the tape will not play due to one of the following errors:

- The tape is tight and the player cannot turn the tape hubs. Remove the tape. Hold the tape with the open end down and try to turn the right hub counterclockwise with a pencil. Turn the tape over and repeat. If the hubs do not turn easily, the tape may be damaged and should not be used in the player. Try a new tape to make sure your player is working properly.
- The tape is broken. Try a new tape.
- The tape is wrapped around the tape head. Attempt to get the cassette out. Try a new tape.

CLEAN: If this message appears on the display, the cassette tape player needs to be cleaned. It will still play tapes, but it should be cleaned as soon as possible to prevent damage to the tapes and player. See *Care of Your Cassette Tape Player on page 3-104*.

If the cassette tape is not playing correctly, for any other reason, try a known good cassette.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your GM dealer. If the radio displays an error message, write it down and provide it to your GM dealer when reporting the problem.

CD Adapter Kits

It is possible to use a portable CD player with the cassette tape player after activating the bypass feature on your tape player.

To activate the bypass feature, perform the following steps:

1. Turn the ignition on.
2. Turn the radio off.
3. Press and hold the TAPE DISC button for five seconds. READY will appear on the display and the tape symbol on the display will flash, indicating the feature is active.
4. Insert the adapter into the cassette tape slot. It will power up the radio and begin playing.

The override feature will remain active until the eject button is pressed.

Playing a CD

Insert a CD partway into the slot, label side up. The player will pull it in and the CD should begin playing. If you want to insert a CD with the ignition off, first press the eject button or the INFO knob.

If the ignition or radio is turned off with the CD in the player, it will stay in the player. When the ignition or radio is turned on, the CD will start playing where it stopped, if it was the last selected audio source.

When a CD is inserted, the CD symbol will appear on the display. As each new track starts to play, the track number will appear on the display.

The CD player can play the smaller 3 inch (8 cm) single CDs with an adapter ring. Full-size CDs and the smaller CDs are loaded in the same manner.

If playing a CD-R the sound quality may be reduced due to CD-R quality, the method of recording, the quality of the music that has been recorded, and the way the CD-R has been handled. There may be an increase in skipping, difficulty in finding tracks, and/or difficulty in loading and ejecting. If these problems occur try a known good CD.

Do not add paper labels to CDs, they could get caught in the CD player.

If an error appears on the display, see “CD Messages” later in this section.

1 PREV (Previous): Press this pushbutton to go to the beginning of the current track if more than eight seconds have played. TRACK and the track number will appear on the display. If this pushbutton is held or pressed more than once, the player will continue moving backward through the CD.

2 NEXT: Press this pushbutton to go to the next track. TRACK and the track number will appear on the display. If this pushbutton is held or pressed more than once, the player will continue moving forward through the CD.

3 REV (Reverse): Press and hold this pushbutton to quickly reverse within a track. Press and hold this pushbutton for less than two seconds to reverse at six times the normal playing speed. Press and hold it for more than two seconds to reverse at 17 times the normal playing speed. Release this pushbutton to play the passage. ET and the elapsed time of the track will appear on the display.

4 FWD (Forward): Press and hold this pushbutton to quickly advance within a track. Press and hold this pushbutton for less than two seconds to advance at six times the normal playing speed. Press and hold it for more than two seconds to advance at 17 times the normal playing speed. Release this pushbutton to play the passage. ET and the elapsed time of the track will appear on the display.

6 RDM (Random): Press this pushbutton to hear the tracks in random, rather than sequential, order. RDM ON will appear on the display. RDM T and the track number will appear on the display when each track starts to play. Press this pushbutton again to turn off random play. RDM OFF will appear on the display.

⏮ **SEEK** ⏭ **:** Press the left arrow to go to the start of the current or to the previous track. Press the right arrow to go to the start of the next track. If either arrow is held or pressed more than once, the player will continue moving backward or forward through the CD.

⏮ **SCAN** ⏭ **:** Press and hold either the SCAN or the TYPE arrows for more than two seconds until SCAN appears on the display and you hear a beep. The radio will go to the next track, play for 10 seconds, then go on to the next track. Press either the SCAN or the TYPE arrows again, to stop scanning.

INFO (Information): Press this knob to see how long the current track has been playing. ET and the elapsed time will appear on the display. To change the default on the display, track or elapsed time, press the knob until you see the display you want, then hold the knob for two seconds. The radio will produce one beep and the selected display will now be the default.

BAND: Press this button to listen to the radio when a cassette tape or CD is playing. The inactive tape or CD will remain safely inside the radio for future listening.

TAPE DISC: Press this button to play a cassette tape or CD when listening to the radio. The inactive tape or CD will remain safely inside the radio for future listening.

⏏ **(Eject):** Press this button to stop a CD when it is playing or to eject a CD when it is not playing. Eject may be activated with either the ignition or radio off. CDs may be loaded with the radio and ignition off if this button is pressed first.

CD Messages

If the CD comes out, it could be for one of the following reasons:

- It is very hot. When the temperature returns to normal, the CD should play.
- You are driving on a very rough road. When the road becomes smoother, the CD should play.
- The CD is dirty, scratched, wet, or upside down.
- The air is very humid. If so, wait about an hour and try again.
- There may have been a problem while burning the CD.
- The label may be caught in the CD player.

If the CD is not playing correctly, for any other reason, try a known good CD.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your GM dealer. If the radio displays an error message, write it down and provide it to your GM dealer when reporting the problem.

Listening to a DVD

If your vehicle has the Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) system and a DVD is playing, the DVD symbol will appear on the radio display indicating that the DVD is available and can be listened to through your vehicle's speakers.

To listen to the DVD, press the TAPE DISC button until RSE appears on the radio display. The current radio source will stop and the DVD sound will come through the speakers.

To stop listening to the DVD, press the TAPE DISC button, if a cassette tape or a CD is loaded, or press the BAND button to select a different source.

When the RSE system is turned off, the DVD symbol will go off of the radio display and the radio will display RSE OFF. The radio will return to the last radio source that you were listening to.

See *Rear Seat Entertainment System on page 3-84* for more information.

Rear Seat Entertainment System

Your vehicle may have a DVD Rear Seat Entertainment (RSE) system. The RSE system includes a DVD player, a video display screen, two sets of wireless headphones, and a remote control.

Parental Control

This button is located behind the video screen. Press this button while a DVD or CD is playing to freeze the video and mute the audio. The video screen will display Parental Control ON and the power indicator light on the DVD player will flash. It will also disable all other button operations from the remote control and the DVD player, with the exception of the eject button. Press this button again to restore operation of the DVD player.

This button may also be used to turn the DVD player power on and automatically resume play if the ignition is in RUN, ACCESSORY, or if RAP is active.

Before You Drive

The RSE system is for rear seat passengers only. The driver cannot safely view the video screen while driving and should not try to do so.

Headphones

The RSE system includes two sets of wireless headphones.

Each set of headphones has an ON/OFF control. An indicator light will illuminate on the headphones when they are on. If the light does not illuminate, the batteries may need to be replaced. See “Battery Replacement” later in this section for more information. To turn the headphones off activate the ON/OFF control.

Each set of headphones has a volume knob. To adjust the volume, adjust this knob.

The transmitters are located below the video display screen. The headphones will shut off automatically if they lose the signal from the system after about four minutes to save battery power. The signal may be lost if the system is turned off or if the headphones are out of range of the transmitters.

When using the wired headphones, if the front seat passengers use XM™ Satellite Radio Service (if equipped), you will hear the audio for XM™, instead of the DVD or CD that is currently playing through the RSE.

Notice: **Do not store the headphones in heat or direct sunlight. This could damage the headphones and repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Keep the headphones stored in a cool, dry place.**

Battery Replacement

To change the batteries, do the following:

1. Loosen the screw on the battery compartment door located on the left side of the headphone earpiece.
2. Replace the two AAA batteries in the compartment. Make sure that they are installed correctly, using the diagram on the inside of the battery compartment.
3. Tighten the screw to close the compartment door.

If the headphones are to be stored for a long period of time, remove the batteries and keep them in a cool, dry place.

Stereo RCA Jacks

The RCA jacks are located behind the video screen. The RCA jacks allow audio and video signals to be connected from an auxiliary device such as a camcorder or a video game unit to the RSE system. Standard RCA cables, not included, are needed to connect the auxiliary device to the RCA jacks. The yellow connector inputs video and the red and white connectors input right and left audio. Refer to the manufacturer’s instructions for proper connection of the auxiliary device.

To use the auxiliary inputs on the RSE system, connect an external auxiliary device to the color-coded RCA jacks and turn both the auxiliary device and the RSE system power on. If the RSE system had been previously in the DVD player mode, pressing the SRCE button on the faceplate or the remote control will switch the RSE system between the auxiliary device and the DVD player.

How to Change the Video Format when in the Auxiliary Mode

The auxiliary input video format is preset to NTSC. In some countries, the video format may be in PAL system. To change the video format, perform the following:

1. Press the display menu button.
2. Press the down arrow button to highlight the Video Format option.
3. Press the enter button to select Video Format.
4. Press the right or left arrow button to select the desired video format.
5. Press the enter button to accept the change.

Audio Output

Audio from the DVD player or auxiliary inputs may be heard through the following possible sources:

- Wireless Headphones
- Vehicle Speakers
- Vehicle wired headphone jacks on the Rear Seat Audio system (if equipped)

The RSE system will always transmit the audio signal by infrared to the wireless headphones, if there is audio available. See “Headphones” previously for more information.

The RSE system is capable of outputting audio to the vehicle speakers by using the radio. The RSE system may be selected as an audio source on the radio if the RSE system power is on. Once the RSE system is selected as an audio source on the radio, adjust the speaker volume on the radio, if necessary. If the RSE system power is not on, the RSE system will not be an available source on the radio. Refer to the radio information for the radio that your vehicle has for more information.

The RSE system is capable of outputting audio to the wired headphone jacks on the Rear Seat Audio system (if equipped). The RSE system may be selected as an audio source on the Rear Seat Audio system if the RSE system power is on. Refer to *Rear Seat Audio (RSA) on page 3-97* for more information.

Video Screen

The video screen is located in the overhead console. To use the video screen, push forward on the release latch and the screen will fold down. Adjust the screen's position as desired. When the video screen is not in use, push it up into its latched position.

The DVD player and display will continue to operate when the screen is in the up or the down position. This video screen contains the transmitters for the wireless headphones and the remote control. If the screen is in the closed position, the signals will not be available for the operation of the wireless headphones and the remote control.

Your vehicle may also have a video screen for the third row passengers. The second row video screen must be in the down position for the wireless headphones and the remote control to work with the third row video screen.

To use the video screen, push forward on the release latch and the screen will fold down. Adjust the screen's position as desired. When the video screen is not in use, push it up into its latched position.

Notice: **Directly touching the video screen may damage it. Do not touch the screen. See "Cleaning the Video Screen" later in this section for more information.**

DVD Player

The DVD player is located in the overhead console. The DVD player can be controlled by the buttons on the DVD player and by the buttons on the remote control. See "Remote Control" later in this section for more information.

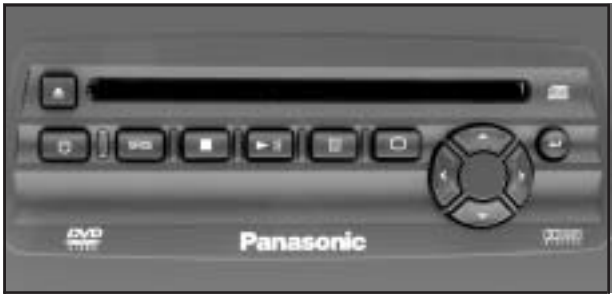
The DVD player power may be turned on when the ignition is in RUN, ACCESSORY, or when Retained Accessory Power (RAP) is active.

The RSE system DVD player is only compatible with DVDs of the appropriate region code for the country that the vehicle was sold in. The DVD region code is printed on the jacket of most DVDs.

Standard audio CDs, CD-R, CD-RW, Video CD and Photo CD/CD-R media are fully supported by this DVD player. DVD-R and DVD-RW media is supported if formatted as DVD-Video. DVD+R and DVD+RW media may or may not be supported by the DVD player. The DVD player does not support DVD-RAM, DVD-ROM, and DVD Audio media. An error message will appear on the display if this type of media is inserted into the DVD player.

When using the wired headphones, if the front seat passengers use XM™ Satellite Radio Service (if equipped), you will hear the audio for XM™, instead of the DVD or CD that is currently playing through the RSE.

If an error message appears on the video screen, see “DVD Messages” later in this section.



DVD Player Buttons

⏻ **(Power):** Press this button to turn the RSE system on and off. The power indicator light will illuminate when the power is on.

⏏ **(Eject):** Press this button to eject a DVD or CD.

SRCE (Source): Press this button to switch between the DVD player and an auxiliary source.

■ **(Stop):** Press this button to stop playing, rewinding, or fast forwarding a DVD or CD. Press this button twice to return to the beginning of the DVD.

►‖ **(Play/Pause):** Press this button to start play of a DVD or CD. Press this button while a DVD or CD is playing to pause it. Press this button again to continue the play of the DVD or CD.

(Main DVD Menu): Press this button to access the DVD menu. The DVD menu is different on every DVD. Use the up, down, left, and right arrow buttons to move the cursor around the DVD menu. After making a selection press the enter button. This button only operates when playing a DVD.

(Set-up Menu): Press this button to adjust the color, tint, brightness, contrast, display mode, and dynamic range compression. The dynamic range compression feature can be used to reduce loud audio and increase low audio produced by some DVDs.

If your vehicle has the third row video screen, press the set-up menu button twice, to access the set-up menu.

To change a feature back to the factory default setting, press this button to display the feature, then press and hold this button. The default setting will appear on the display.

While playing an Audio or DVD disc, press and hold this button to display and to remove the track and time information.

▲, ▼, ◄, ► **(Menu Navigation Arrows):** Use the arrow buttons to navigate through a menu.

◄┘ **(Enter):** Press this button to select the choices that are highlighted in any menu.

Playing a Disc

To play a disc, gently insert the disc with the label side up into the loading slot. The DVD player will continue loading the disc and the player will automatically start, if the vehicle is in RUN, ACCESSORY, or when RAP is active.

If a disc is already in the player, press the play/pause button on the DVD player faceplate or on the remote control.

Some DVDs will not allow fast forwarding or skipping of the copyright information or previews. Some DVDs will begin playing after the previews have finished. If the DVD does not begin to play the main title, refer to the on-screen instructions.

Stopping and Resume Playback

To stop playing a disc, press and release the stop button on the DVD player faceplate or the remote control.

To resume playback, press the play/pause button on the DVD player faceplate or the remote control. The movie should resume play from where it was last stopped, if the disc has not been ejected and the stop button has not been pressed twice. If the disc has been ejected or if the stop button has been pressed twice, the disc will resume play at the beginning.

Ejecting a Disc

Press the eject button on the DVD player faceplate to eject the disc. There is not an eject button on the remote control.

If a disc is ejected from the player, but is not removed, the DVD player will reload the disc after a short period of time. The disc will be stored in the DVD player. The DVD player will not resume play of the disc automatically.

Remote Control

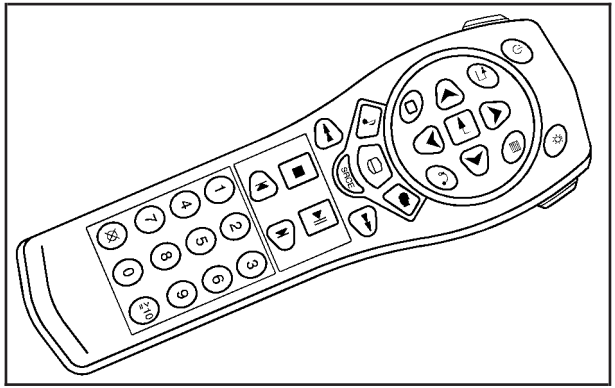
To use the remote control, aim it at the transmitter window below the video screen and press the desired button. Direct sunlight or very bright light may affect the ability of the RSE system to receive signals from the remote control. If the remote control does not seem to be working, the batteries may need to be replaced. See “Battery Replacement” later in this section.

Objects blocking the line of sight may also affect the function of the remote control.

Notice: **Storing the remote control in a hot area or in direct sunlight may damage it, and the repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Keep the remote control stored in a cool, dry place.**

To extend the life of the batteries, the remote control does not have a press and hold feature.

Remote Control Buttons



(Power): Press this button to turn the DVD player on and off.

(Title): Press this button to return the DVD to the main menu of the DVD.

▲, ▼, ◀, ▶ (Menu Navigation Arrows): Use the arrow buttons to navigate through a menu.

(Set-up Menu): Press this button to adjust the color, tint, brightness, contrast, display mode, and dynamic range compression. The dynamic range compression feature can be used to reduce loud audio and increase low audio produced by some DVDs.

(Audio): Press this button to display a menu that will only appear when a DVD is playing. The format and content of this function will vary for each disc.

(Fast Reverse): Press this button to fast reverse the DVD or CD. To stop fast reversing, press this button again. This button may not work when the DVD is playing the copyright information or the previews.

SRCE (Source): Press this button to switch between the DVD player and an auxiliary source.

(Stop): Press this button to stop playing, rewinding, or fast forwarding a DVD or CD. Press this button twice to return to the beginning of the DVD.

(Previous Track/Chapter): Press this button to return to the start of the current track or chapter. Press this button again to return to the previous track or chapter. This button may not work when the DVD is playing the copyright information or the previews.

1 through 0 (Numeric Keypad): The numeric keypad provides the capability of direct chapter, title, and track number selection.

≥10 (Double Digit Entries): Press the button, to select chapter, title, and track numbers greater than 9. Press this button before inputting the number.

(Clear): Press this button, within three seconds after inputting a number to clear the number(s).

(Illumination): Press this button to turn the remote control backlight on. The backlight will time out after about 7 to 10 seconds if no other button is pressed while the backlight is on.

(Main DVD Menu): Press this button to access the DVD menu. The DVD menu is different on every DVD. Use the up, down, left, and right arrow buttons to move the cursor around the DVD menu. After making a selection press the enter button. This button only operates when playing a DVD.

(Enter): Press this button to select the choices that are highlighted in any menu.

(Return): Press this button to exit the current active menu and return to the previous menu. This button will operate only when a DVD is playing and a menu is active.

(Camera Angle): Press this button to change camera angles on DVDs that have this feature when a DVD is playing. The format and content of this function will vary for each disc.

(Subtitle): Press this button to turn on subtitles and to move through subtitle options when a DVD is playing. The format and content of this function will vary for each disc.

(Fast Forward): Press this button to fast forward the DVD or CD. To stop fast forwarding, press this button again. This button may not work when the DVD is playing the copyright information or the previews.

(Play/Pause): Press this button to start play of a DVD or CD. Press this button while a DVD or CD is playing to pause it. Press this button again to continue the play of the DVD or CD.

When the DVD is playing, press the pause button then press the fast forward button. The DVD will continue playing in a slow play mode. To cancel slow play mode, press the play/pause button.

(Next Track/Chapter): Press this button to advance to the beginning of the next track or chapter. This button may not work when the DVD is playing the copyright information or the previews.

Battery Replacement

To change the batteries, do the following:

1. Remove the battery compartment door located on the bottom of the remote control.
2. Replace the two AA batteries in the compartment. Make sure that they are installed correctly, using the diagram on the inside of the battery compartment.
3. Close the battery door securely.

If the remote control is to be stored for a long period of time, remove the batteries and keep them in a cool, dry place.

Problem	Recommended Action
No power.	The ignition might not be in on or accessory. The parental control button might have been turned on. The power indicator light will flash.
Disc will not play.	The system might be off. The parental control button might have been turned on. The power indicator light will flash. The system might be in auxiliary mode. The disc is upside down or is not compatible.
The picture does not fill the screen. There are black borders on the top and bottom or on both sides or it looks stretched out.	Check the display mode settings in the display menu.
The disc was ejected, but it was pulled back into the DVD player.	The disc is being stored in the DVD player. Press the eject button again to eject the disc.

Problem	Recommended Action
In auxiliary mode, the picture moves or scrolls.	Check the auxiliary input connections at both devices. Change the Video Format to PAL or NTSC. See “Stereo RCA Jacks” previously for how to change the video format.
The language in the audio or on the screen is wrong.	Check the audio or language selection in the main DVD menu.
The remote control does not work.	Check to make sure there is no obstruction between the remote control and the transmitter window. Check the batteries to make sure they are not dead or installed incorrectly. The parental control button might have been turned on. The power indicator light will flash.

Problem	Recommended Action
After stopping the player, I push Play but sometimes the DVD starts where I left off and sometimes at the beginning.	If the stop button was pressed one time, the DVD player will resume playing where the DVD was stopped. If the stop button was pressed two times the DVD player will begin to play from the beginning of the DVD.
The auxiliary source is running but there is no picture or sound.	Check that the DVD player is in the auxiliary source mode. Check the auxiliary input connections at both devices.
My disc is stuck in the player. The Load/Eject button does not work.	Turn the DVD power off, then on, then press the load/eject button on the DVD player. Do not attempt to forcibly remove the disc from the DVD player. This could permanently damage the disc and DVD player.

Problem	Recommended Action
Sometimes the wireless headphone audio cuts out or buzzes.	Check for obstructions, low batteries, reception range and interference from cellular telephone towers or by using your cellular telephone in the vehicle. Check that the headphones are facing the front of the vehicle.
I lost the remote and/or the headphones.	See your dealer for assistance.
The DVD is playing, but there is no picture or sound.	Check that the DVD player is in DVD mode.
The audio/video skips or jumps.	The DVD or CD could be dirty, scratched, or damaged.
The audio from XM™ has taken over the audio from the DVD or CD when using the wired headphones.	The RSE is working correctly. Use the wireless headphones or have the front seat passengers listen to another audio source.

DVD Messages

The following errors may be displayed on the video screen:

Disc Format Error: This message will be displayed if a disc is inserted upside down, if the disc is not readable, or if the format is not compatible with the DVD player.

Load/Eject Error: This message will be displayed if the disc is not properly loaded or ejected.

Disc Play Error: This message will be displayed if the DVD player cannot play the disc. Scratched or damaged discs will cause this error.

Region Code Error: This message will be displayed if the region code of the DVD is not compatible with the region code of the DVD player.

No Disc: This message will be displayed if any of the buttons on the DVD faceplate or remote control are pressed and no disc is present in the DVD player.

DVD Distortion

There may be an experience with audio distortion in the wireless headphones when operating cellular phones, scanners, CB radios, Global Positioning Systems (GPS)*, two-way radios, mobile fax, or walkie talkies.

It may be necessary to turn off the DVD player when operating one of these devices in or near the vehicle.

* Excludes the OnStar® System.

Cleaning the Video Screen

Pour some isopropyl or rubbing alcohol on a clean cloth and gently wipe the video screen. Do not spray directly onto the screen and do not press too hard or too long on the video screen.

Navigation/Radio System

Your vehicle may have a navigation radio system that includes Radio Data System (RDS) with Program Type (PTY) selections that will seek out the kind of music you want to listen to and XM™ Satellite Radio Service capabilities (if equipped). The radio can also communicate with the navigation system to broadcast announcements on traffic, weather, and emergency alert communications. For information on how to use this system, see the “Navigation System” manual.

Rear Seat Audio (RSA)

This feature allows rear seat passengers to listen to any of the sources: radio, cassette tapes, CDs, or DVDs. However, the rear seat passengers can only control the sources that the front seat passengers are not listening to. For example, rear seat passengers may listen to and control cassette tapes, CDs, or DVDs through the headphones while the driver listens to the radio through the front speakers. The rear seat passengers have control of the volume for each set of headphones.

The front seat audio controls always have priority over the RSA controls. If the front seat passengers switch the source for the main radio to a remote source, the RSA will not be able to control the source. You can operate the rear seat audio when the main radio is off.

(Power): Press this button to turn the system on or off. The rear speakers will be muted when the power is turned on unless your vehicle is equipped with the Bose® audio system.

(Volume): Turn this knob to increase or to decrease the volume. The left knob controls the left headphones and the right knob controls the right headphones.

SRC (Source): Press this button to select a source: radio, cassette tapes, CDs, or DVDs.

▽ **SEEK** △**:** When listening to FM1, FM2, or AM, press the up or the down arrow to go to the next or to the previous station and stay there. This function is inactive if the front seat passengers are listening to the radio.

When a cassette tape is playing, press the up or the down arrow to go to the next or previous selection. This function is inactive if the front seat passengers are listening to a cassette tape.

When a CD is playing, press the up arrow to go to the next track on the CD. Press the down arrow to go to the start of the current track if more than eight seconds have played. This function is inactive if the front seat passengers are listening to a CD.

PROG (Program): Press this button to go to the next preset radio station set on the pushbuttons on the main radio. This function is inactive if the front seat passengers are listening to the radio.

When a cassette tape is playing, press this button to go to the other side of the tape. This function is inactive if the front seat passengers are listening to a cassette tape.

When a CD is playing, press this button to go to the beginning of the CD. This function is inactive if the front seat passengers are listening to a CD.

When a CD is playing in the six-disc CD changer, press this button to select the next CD, if multiple CDs are loaded. This function is inactive if the front seat passengers are listening to a CD.

CD Changer

The CD changer plays up to six standard size CDs continuously. Individual CDs may be loaded or ejected into or from any position.

A green light on each numbered button indicates a CD is loaded in the respective position. An amber light on a numbered button indicates that a CD is playing. When loading CDs, the loading slot indicators turn amber to indicate that the player is ready to accept a CD. CDs can be loaded or ejected with the radio or the ignition off.

You must load CDs with the label side up. If you do not, the player will automatically eject the CDs.

Notice: **Loading CDs with adhesive labels will damage the player.**

To load a CD, perform the following steps:

1. Press the LOAD button. Available positions will blink amber.
2. Select a position by pressing the numbered button with the amber blinking light. If a button is not pressed within five seconds, the changer will go to the lowest available position.
3. Load the CD when the loading slot indicators turn amber. An internal door will open allowing a single CD to be inserted into the changer. After approximately 10 seconds the changer will be ready to play.

To load two or more CDs, perform the following steps:

1. Press and hold the LOAD button. The first CD will be loaded into the lowest numbered empty position.
2. Load a single CD when the loading slot indicators turn amber. After about 10 seconds the changer will cycle to the next available position.
3. Repeat Step 2 until all CDs are loaded into all of the desired positions. If you do not wish to load all of the positions, cancel loading by pressing a button with a green flashing indicator light or wait 20 seconds for the changer to time out.

To eject a single CD, perform the following steps:

1. Press the eject button (upward pointing arrow). The buttons with loaded CDs will blink amber.
2. Press one of the amber blinking buttons to select the location of the CD you want to eject. The changer will move to that location and eject the CD. If you do not remove the CD from the player within 10 seconds, it will be reloaded. If the eject button is pressed and a numbered location button is not pressed within five seconds, the current or last played CD will be ejected.

To eject all CDs, press and hold the eject button.

To play a CD, perform one of the following:

- With the radio on, press the numbered button with a green indicator light on the CD changer.
- Press the TAPE CD button on the radio. The CD changer will go to its last played position.

CD Functions

All of the CD changer functions are performed by the radio, except for loading and ejecting.

1 PREV (Previous): Press this pushbutton to go to beginning of the current track if more than eight seconds have played. If this pushbutton is held or pressed more than once, the player will continue moving backward through the CD.

2 NEXT: Press this pushbutton to go to the next track. If this pushbutton is held or pressed more than once, the player will continue moving forward through the CD.

3 REV (Reverse): Press and hold this pushbutton to reverse quickly within a track. Release it to play the passage. The elapsed time of the track will appear on the display.

4 FWD (Forward): Press and hold this pushbutton to advance quickly within a track. Release it to play the passage. The elapsed time of the track will appear on the display.

5 SIDE: Press this pushbutton to select a CD. The CD number and track number will appear on the display.

6 RDM (Random): Press and release this pushbutton to hear all of the tracks on all of the loaded CDs in random, rather than sequential, order. RDM ALL will appear on the display.

Press and hold this pushbutton to hear the tracks on the current CD in random, rather than sequential order. You will hear a beep and RDM ONE will appear on the display. Press this pushbutton again to turn off random play. RDM OFF will appear on the display.

◀ **SEEK** ▶**:** Press the right or the left arrow to go to the next or to the previous track on the CD.

◀ **SCAN** ▶**:** Press and hold either arrow for more than two seconds until SCAN appears on the display and you hear a beep. The radio will go to the next track, play for 10 seconds, then go on to the next track. Press either SCAN arrow again to stop scanning.

BAND: Press this button to listen to the radio when a CD is playing. The inactive CD(s) will remain safely inside the player for future listening.

TAPE DISC: Press this button to play a CD, if a CD is loaded in the changer and the radio is on.

Press this button to switch between playing a tape and a CD in the CD changer if both are loaded.

CD Changer Errors

CHK CD (Check): If this message appears on the display, it could be for one of the following reasons:

- It is very hot. When the temperature returns to normal, the CD should play.
- You are driving on a very rough road. When the road becomes smoother, the CD should play.
- The CD is dirty, scratched, wet, or upside down.
- The air is very humid. If so, wait about an hour and try again.
- There may have been a problem while burning the CD.
- The label may be caught in the CD player.
- The CD player is very hot.

If the CD is not playing correctly, for any other reason, try a known good CD.

If any error occurs repeatedly or if an error cannot be corrected, contact your GM dealer. If the radio displays an error message, write it down and provide it to your GM dealer when reporting the problem.

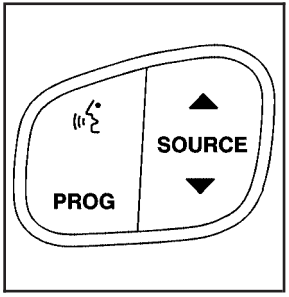
Theft-Deterrent Feature

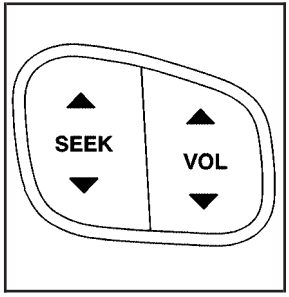
THEFTLOCK® is designed to discourage theft of your vehicle's radio. The feature works automatically by learning a portion of the Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). If the radio is moved to a different vehicle, it will not operate and LOCKED will appear on the display.

When the radio and vehicle are turned off, the blinking red light indicates that THEFTLOCK® is armed.

With THEFTLOCK® activated, the radio will not operate if stolen.

Audio Steering Wheel Controls





Some audio controls can be adjusted at the steering wheel. They include the following:

(OnStar/Voice Recognition): If your vehicle has OnStar®, press this button to interact with the OnStar® system. See the OnStar® manual provided with your vehicle for more information.

If your vehicle does not have OnStar®, press this button to silence the system. Press it again, or any other radio button, to turn on the sound.

PROG (Program): Press this button to play a station you have programmed on the radio preset pushbuttons. The radio will only seek preset stations with a strong signal that are in the selected band.

When a CD is playing in the CD changer, press this button to go to the next available CD, if multiple CDs are loaded.

▲ **SOURCE** ▼**:** Press this button to switch between FM1, FM2, AM, or XM1 or XM2 (if equipped), or a CD. If a CD is loaded the CD symbol will appear on the display.

▲ **SEEK** ▼**:** Press the up or the down arrow to go to the next or to the previous radio station and stay there. The radio will only seek stations with a strong signal that are in the selected band.

When a CD is playing, press the up or the down arrow to fast forward or reverse.

▲ **VOL** ▼ **(Volume):** Press the up or the down arrow to increase or to decrease the volume.

Radio Reception

AM

The range for most AM stations is greater than for FM, especially at night. The longer range can cause station frequencies to interfere with each other. Static can occur on AM stations caused by things like storms and power lines. Try reducing the treble to reduce this noise.

FM Stereo

FM stereo will give the best sound, but FM signals will reach only about 10 to 40 miles (16 to 65 km). Tall buildings or hills can interfere with FM signals, causing the sound to fade in and out.

XM™ Satellite Radio Service

XM™ Satellite Radio Service gives digital radio reception from coast to coast. Just as with FM, tall buildings or hills can interfere with satellite radio signals, causing the sound to fade in and out. The radio may display NO SIGNAL to indicate interference.

Care of Your Cassette Tape Player

A tape player that is not cleaned regularly can cause reduced sound quality, ruined cassettes, or a damaged mechanism. Cassette tapes should be stored in their cases away from contaminants, direct sunlight, and extreme heat. If they are not, they may not operate properly or may cause failure of the tape player.

The tape player should be cleaned regularly after every 50 hours of use. The radio may display CLEAN to indicate that the tape player has been used for 50 hours without resetting the tape clean timer. If this message appears on the display, the cassette tape player needs to be cleaned. It will still play tapes, but it should be cleaned as soon as possible to prevent damage to the tapes and player. If there is a reduction in sound quality, try a known good cassette to see if the tape or the tape player is at fault. If this other cassette has no improvement in sound quality, clean the tape player.

For best results, use a scrubbing action, non-abrasive cleaning cassette with pads which scrub the tape head as the hubs of the cleaner cassette turn. The recommended cleaning cassette is available through your dealer.

When cleaning the cassette tape player with the recommended non-abrasive cleaning cassette, it is possible that the cassette may eject, because the cut tape detection feature on the radio may recognize it as a broken tape, in error. To prevent the cleaning cassette from being ejected, use the following steps:

1. Turn the ignition on.
2. Turn the radio off.
3. Press and hold the TAPE DISC button for five seconds. READY will appear on the display and the cassette symbol will flash for five seconds.
4. Insert the scrubbing action cleaning cassette.
5. Eject the cleaning cassette after the manufacturer’s recommended cleaning time.

   When the cleaning cassette has been ejected, the cut tape detection feature will be active again.

A non-scrubbing action, wet-type cleaner which uses a cassette with a fabric belt to clean the tape head can be used. This type of cleaning cassette will not eject on its own. A non-scrubbing action cleaner may not clean as thoroughly as the scrubbing type cleaner. The use of a non-scrubbing action, dry-type cleaning cassette is not recommended.

After the player is cleaned, press and hold the eject button for five seconds to reset the CLEAN indicator. The radio will display --- or CLEANED to show the indicator was reset.

Cassettes are subject to wear and the sound quality may degrade over time. Always make sure the cassette tape is in good condition before the tape player is serviced.

Care of Your CDs and DVDs

Handle discs carefully. Store them in their original cases or other protective cases and away from direct sunlight and dust. If the surface of a disc is soiled, dampen a clean, soft cloth in a mild, neutral detergent solution and clean it, wiping from the center to the edge.

Be sure never to touch the side without writing when handling discs. Pick up discs by grasping the outer edges or the edge of the hole and the outer edge.

Care of Your CD Player

The use of CD lens cleaners for CD players is not advised, due to the risk of contaminating the lens of the CD optics with lubricants internal to the CD mechanism.

Care of Your CD and DVD Player

The use of CD lens cleaners for CDs is not advised, due to the risk of contaminating the lens of the CD optics with lubricants internal to the CD mechanism.

Diversity Antenna System

Your AM-FM antennas are located in the rear side windows. Be sure that the inside surfaces of the rear side windows are not scratched and that the lines on the glass are not damaged. If the inside surfaces are damaged, they could interfere with radio reception.

Notice: **Using a razor blade or sharp object to clear the inside of the windshield or rear window may affect radio reception or damage the rear window defogger. Repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Do not clear the inside windshield or rear window with sharp objects.**

Notice: **Do not apply aftermarket glass tinting with metallic film. The metallic film in some tinting materials will interfere with or distort the incoming radio reception. Any damage caused to your backglass antenna due to metallic tinting materials will not be covered by your warranty.**

If you choose to add an aftermarket cellular telephone to your vehicle, and the antenna needs to be attached to the glass, be sure that you do not damage the grid lines for the AM-FM antennas or place the cellular telephone antenna over the grid lines.

XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System

The XM™ Satellite Radio antenna is located on the roof of your vehicle. Keep this antenna clear of snow and ice build up for clear radio reception.

The performance of the XM™ system may be affected if the sunroof is open.

Loading items onto the roof of your vehicle can interfere with the performance of the XM™ system. Make sure that the XM™ satellite antenna is not obstructed.

Chime Level Adjustment

The radio is the vehicle chime producer. To change the volume level, press and hold pushbutton 6 with the ignition on and the radio power off. The chime volume level will change from the normal level to loud, and LOUD will appear on the radio display. To change back to the default or normal setting, press and hold pushbutton 6 again. The chime level will change from the loud level to normal, and NORMAL will appear on the radio display. Each time the chime volume is changed, three chimes will sound as an example of the new volume selected. Removing the radio and not replacing it with a factory radio or chime module will disable vehicle chimes.

Section 4 Driving Your Vehicle

Your Driving, the Road, and Your Vehicle 4-2
Defensive Driving 4-2
Drunken Driving 4-2
Control of a Vehicle 4-6
Braking 4-6
Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) 4-7
Braking in Emergencies 4-8
Road Sensing Suspension 4-9
StabiliTrak® System 4-9
Steering 4-13
Off-Road Recovery 4-15
Passing 4-15
Loss of Control 4-17
Operating Your All-Wheel-Drive Vehicle Off Paved Roads 4-18
Driving at Night 4-31
Driving in Rain and on Wet Roads 4-33
City Driving 4-36
Freeway Driving 4-37
Before Leaving on a Long Trip 4-38
Highway Hypnosis 4-39
Hill and Mountain Roads 4-39
Winter Driving 4-41
If You Are Stuck: In Sand, Mud, Ice or Snow 4-45
Rocking Your Vehicle to Get It Out 4-46
Recovery Hooks 4-46
Loading Your Vehicle 4-47
Towing 4-53
Towing Your Vehicle 4-53
Recreational Vehicle Towing 4-53
Trailer Recommendations 4-54
Towing a Trailer 4-54

Your Driving, the Road, and Your Vehicle

Defensive Driving

The best advice anyone can give about driving is: Drive defensively.

Please start with a very important safety device in your vehicle: Buckle up. See *Safety Belts: They Are for Everyone on page 1-28*.

Defensive driving really means “be ready for anything.” On city streets, rural roads, or freeways, it means “always expect the unexpected.”

Assume that pedestrians or other drivers are going to be careless and make mistakes. Anticipate what they might do. Be ready for their mistakes.

Rear-end collisions are about the most preventable of accidents. Yet they are common. Allow enough following distance. It is the best defensive driving maneuver, in both city and rural driving. You never know when the vehicle in front of you is going to brake or turn suddenly.

Defensive driving requires that a driver concentrate on the driving task. Anything that distracts from the driving task — such as concentrating on a cellular telephone call, reading, or reaching for something on the floor — makes proper defensive driving more difficult and can even cause a collision, with resulting injury. Ask a passenger to help do things like this, or pull off the road in a safe place to do them yourself. These simple defensive driving techniques could save your life.

Drunken Driving

Death and injury associated with drinking and driving is a national tragedy. It is the number one contributor to the highway death toll, claiming thousands of victims every year.

Alcohol affects four things that anyone needs to drive a vehicle:

- Judgment
- Muscular Coordination
- Vision
- Attentiveness

Police records show that almost half of all motor vehicle-related deaths involve alcohol. In most cases, these deaths are the result of someone who was drinking and driving. In recent years, more than 16,000 annual motor vehicle-related deaths have been associated with the use of alcohol, with more than 300,000 people injured.

Many adults — by some estimates, nearly half the adult population — choose never to drink alcohol, so they never drive after drinking. For persons under 21, it is against the law in every U.S. state to drink alcohol. There are good medical, psychological and developmental reasons for these laws.

The obvious way to eliminate the leading highway safety problem is for people never to drink alcohol and then drive. But what if people do? How much is “too much” if someone plans to drive? It is a lot less than many might think. Although it depends on each person and situation, here is some general information on the problem.

The Blood Alcohol Concentration (BAC) of someone who is drinking depends upon four things:

- The amount of alcohol consumed
- The drinker’s body weight
- The amount of food that is consumed before and during drinking
- The length of time it has taken the drinker to consume the alcohol

According to the American Medical Association, a 180 lb (82 kg) person who drinks three 12 ounce (355 ml) bottles of beer in an hour will end up with a BAC of about 0.06 percent. The person would reach the same BAC by drinking three 4 ounce (120 ml) glasses of wine or three mixed drinks if each had 1-1/2 ounces (45 ml) of liquors like whiskey, gin, or vodka.

It is the amount of alcohol that counts. For example, if the same person drank three double martinis (3 ounces or 90 ml of liquor each) within an hour, the person's BAC would be close to 0.12 percent. A person who consumes food just before or during drinking will have a somewhat lower BAC level.

There is a gender difference, too. Women generally have a lower relative percentage of body water than men. Since alcohol is carried in body water, this means that a woman generally will reach a higher BAC level than a man of her same body weight will when each has the same number of drinks.

The law in most U.S. states, and throughout Canada, sets the legal limit at 0.08 percent. In some other countries, the limit is even lower. For example, it is 0.05 percent in both France and Germany. The BAC limit for all commercial drivers in the United States is 0.04 percent.

The BAC will be over 0.10 percent after three to six drinks (in one hour). Of course, as we have seen, it depends on how much alcohol is in the drinks, and how quickly the person drinks them.

But the ability to drive is affected well below a BAC of 0.10 percent. Research shows that the driving skills of many people are impaired at a BAC approaching 0.05 percent, and that the effects are worse at night. All drivers are impaired at BAC levels above 0.05 percent. Statistics show that the chance of being in a collision increases sharply for drivers who have a BAC of 0.05 percent or above. A driver with a BAC level of 0.06 percent has doubled his or her chance of having a collision. At a BAC level of 0.10 percent, the chance of this driver having a collision is 12 times greater; at a level of 0.15 percent, the chance is 25 times greater!

The body takes about an hour to rid itself of the alcohol in one drink. No amount of coffee or number of cold showers will speed that up. “I will be careful” is not the right answer. What if there is an emergency, a need to take sudden action, as when a child darts into the street? A person with even a moderate BAC might not be able to react quickly enough to avoid the collision.

There is something else about drinking and driving that many people do not know. Medical research shows that alcohol in a person’s system can make crash injuries worse, especially injuries to the brain, spinal cord, or heart. This means that when anyone who has been drinking — driver or passenger — is in a crash, that person’s chance of being killed or permanently disabled is higher than if the person had not been drinking.

⚠ CAUTION:

Drinking and then driving is very dangerous. Your reflexes, perceptions, attentiveness, and judgment can be affected by even a small amount of alcohol. You can have a serious — or even fatal — collision if you drive after drinking. Please do not drink and drive or ride with a driver who has been drinking. Ride home in a cab; or if you are with a group, designate a driver who will not drink.

Control of a Vehicle

You have three systems that make your vehicle go where you want it to go. They are the brakes, the steering, and the accelerator. All three systems have to do their work at the places where the tires meet the road.

Sometimes, as when you are driving on snow or ice, it is easy to ask more of those control systems than the tires and road can provide. That means you can lose control of your vehicle. See *StabiliTrak® System on page 4-9*.

Braking

Braking action involves perception time and reaction time.

First, you have to decide to push on the brake pedal. That is perception time. Then you have to bring up your foot and do it. That is reaction time.

Average reaction time is about three-fourths of a second. But that is only an average. It might be less with one driver and as long as two or three seconds or more with another. Age, physical condition, alertness, coordination and eyesight all play a part. So do alcohol, drugs and frustration. But even in three-fourths of a second, a vehicle moving at 60 mph (100 km/h) travels 66 feet (20 m). That could be a lot of distance in an emergency, so keeping enough space between your vehicle and others is important.

And, of course, actual stopping distances vary greatly with the surface of the road (whether it is pavement or gravel); the condition of the road (wet, dry, icy); tire tread; the condition of your brakes; the weight of the vehicle and the amount of brake force applied.

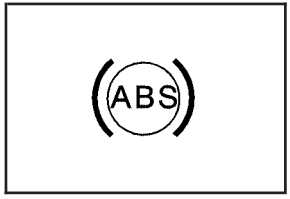
Avoid needless heavy braking. Some people drive in spurts — heavy acceleration followed by heavy braking — rather than keeping pace with traffic. This is a mistake. Your brakes may not have time to cool between hard stops. Your brakes will wear out much faster if you do a lot of heavy braking. If you keep pace with the traffic and allow realistic following distances, you will eliminate a lot of unnecessary braking. That means better braking and longer brake life.

If your engine ever stops while you are driving, brake normally but do not pump your brakes. If you do, the pedal may get harder to push down. If your engine stops, you will still have some power brake assist. But you will use it when you brake. Once the power assist is used up, it may take longer to stop and the brake pedal will be harder to push.

Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS)

Your vehicle has anti-lock brakes. ABS is an advanced electronic braking system that will help prevent a braking skid.

When you start your engine and begin to drive away, your anti-lock brake system will check itself. You may hear a momentary motor or clicking noise while this test is going on. This is normal.



If there is a problem with the anti-lock brake system, this warning light will stay on. See *Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Light on page 3-39*.

Along with ABS, your vehicle has a Dynamic Rear Proportioning (DRP) system. If there is a DRP problem, both the brake and ABS warning lights will come on accompanied by a 10-second chime. The lights and chime will come on each time the ignition is turned on until the problem is repaired. See your dealer for service.

Let us say the road is wet and you are driving safely. Suddenly, an animal jumps out in front of you. You slam on the brakes and continue braking. Here is what happens with ABS:

A computer senses that wheels are slowing down. If one of the wheels is about to stop rolling, the computer will separately work the brakes at each front wheel and at both rear wheels.

The anti-lock system can change the brake pressure faster than any driver could. The computer is programmed to make the most of available tire and road conditions. This can help you steer around the obstacle while braking hard.

As you brake, your computer keeps receiving updates on wheel speed and controls braking pressure accordingly.

Remember: Anti-lock does not change the time you need to get your foot up to the brake pedal or always decrease stopping distance. If you get too close to the vehicle in front of you, you will not have time to apply your brakes if that vehicle suddenly slows or stops. Always leave enough room up ahead to stop, even though you have anti-lock brakes.

Using Anti-Lock

Do not pump the brakes. Just hold the brake pedal down firmly and let anti-lock work for you. You may feel the brakes vibrate, or you may notice some noise, but this is normal.

Braking in Emergencies

With anti-lock, you can steer and brake at the same time. In many emergencies, steering can help you more than even the very best braking.

Road Sensing Suspension

The Road Sensing Suspension (RSS) feature provides superior vehicle ride and handling under a variety of passenger and loading conditions.

The system is fully automatic and uses a computer controller to continuously monitor vehicle speed, wheel to body position, lift/dive and steering position of the vehicle. The controller then sends signals to each shock absorber to independently adjust the damping level to provide the optimum vehicle ride.

RSS also interacts with the tow/haul mode that, when engaged, will provide additional control of the shock absorbers. This additional control results in better ride and handling characteristics when the vehicle is loaded or towing a trailer. See “Tow/Haul Mode” under *Towing a Trailer on page 4-54*.

StabiliTrak® System

Your vehicle is equipped with StabiliTrak®, which combines antilock brake, traction and stability control systems and helps the driver maintain directional control of the vehicle in most driving conditions.

When you first start your vehicle and begin to drive away, the system performs several diagnostic checks to insure there are no problems. You may hear or feel the system working. This is normal and does not mean there is a problem with your vehicle. The system should initialize before the vehicle reaches 20 mph (32 km/h). In some cases, it may take approximately two miles of driving before the system initializes.

If the system fails to turn on or activate, the STABILITY SYS DISABLED or SERVICE STABILITY message will be displayed. If the vehicle has gone through heavy acceleration or braking or multiple turns during the first two miles of driving after starting your vehicle, the STABILITY SYS DISABLED message may appear. If this is the case, your vehicle does not need servicing. You will need to turn the vehicle off and then restart it to initialize StabiliTrak®. If either message appears on the Driver Information Center (DIC), and your vehicle hasn’t gone through hard acceleration, braking or multiple turns in the first two miles of driving, your vehicle should be taken in for service.

The STABILITY SYS ACTIVE message will appear on the Driver Information Center (DIC) only when the system is both on and activated. It means that an advanced computer-controlled system has come on to help your vehicle continue to go in the direction in which you're steering. StabiliTrak® activates when the computer senses that your vehicle is just starting to spin, as it might if you hit a patch of ice or other slippery spot on the road. When the system activates, you may hear a noise or feel a vibration in the brake pedal. This is normal. When the STABILITY SYS ACTIVE message is on, you should continue to steer in the direction you want to go. The system is designed to help you in bad weather or other difficult driving situations by making the most of whatever road conditions will permit. For more information on the stability messages, see *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 3-49*.

StabiliTrak® and part of the traction control system can be turned off or back on by pressing the StabiliTrak® button located on the instrument panel.

When the system is turned off, the traction off light will illuminate, and the STABILITY SYS DISABLED message will appear on the DIC to warn the driver that both the stability system and part of the traction control system are disabled. Your vehicle will still have brake-traction control when StabiliTrak® is off, but will not be able to use the engine speed management system. See "Traction Control Operation" next for more information.

When the StabiliTrak® system has been turned off you may still hear system noises as a result of the brake-traction control coming on.

To limit wheel spin and realize the full benefits of the stability enhancement system, you should normally leave StabiliTrak® on, but it may be necessary to turn the system off if your vehicle is stuck in sand, mud, ice or snow, and you want to “rock” your vehicle to attempt to free it. It may also be necessary to turn off the system when driving in extreme off-road conditions where high wheel spin is required. See *If You Are Stuck: In Sand, Mud, Ice or Snow on page 4-45*.

Traction Control Operation

The traction control system is part of the StabiliTrak® system. Traction control limits wheel spin by reducing engine power to the wheels (engine speed management) and by applying brakes to each individual wheel (brake-traction control) as necessary.

The traction control system is enabled automatically when you start your vehicle, and it will activate and display the TRACTION ACTIVE message in the Driver Information Center (DIC) if it senses that any of the wheels are spinning or beginning to lose traction while driving. If you turn off StabiliTrak®, only the brake-traction control portion of traction control will work. The engine speed management will be disabled. In this state, engine power is not reduced automatically and the driven wheels can spin more freely. This can cause the brake-traction control to activate constantly. For more information on the traction active message, see *Driver Information Center (DIC) on page 3-49*.

Notice: **If the traction off light comes on due to heavy braking and/or because the traction control system has been continuously active, do not allow the wheel(s) of one axle to spin excessively. If you do, you may be causing damage to the transfer case. This could lead to costly repairs not covered by your warranty.**

If the brake traction-control system activates constantly or if the brakes have heated up due to high-speed braking, brake traction-control will be disabled and the TRACTION SYS LIMITED message will be displayed. In the limited mode, the traction control system will only use engine traction-control and is limited in its ability to provide optimal performance since the system will not utilize brake traction-control to control slip on the drive wheels. The system will return to normal operation after the brakes have cooled. This can take up to two minutes or longer depending on brake usage.

Notice: **If you allow the wheel(s) of one axle to spin excessively while the traction off, ABS and brake warning lights and the SERVICE STABILITY message are displayed, you could damage the transfer case. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Reduce engine power and do not spin the wheel(s) excessively while these lights and this message are displayed.**

The traction control system may activate on dry or rough roads or under conditions such as heavy acceleration while turning or abrupt upshifts/downshifts of the transmission. When this happens you may notice a reduction in acceleration, or may hear a noise or vibration. This is normal.

If your vehicle is in cruise control when the system activates, the STABILITY SYS ACTIVE message will appear on the Driver Information Center and the cruise control will automatically disengage. When road conditions allow you to use cruise again, you may re-engage the cruise control. See *Cruise Control on page 3-11*.

StabiliTrak® may also turn off automatically if it determines that a problem exists with the system. If the problem does not clear itself after restarting the vehicle, you should see your dealer for service.

Steering

Power Steering

If you lose power steering assist because the engine stops or the system is not functioning, you can steer but it will take much more effort.

Steering Tips

Driving on Curves

It is important to take curves at a reasonable speed.

A lot of the “driver lost control” accidents mentioned on the news happen on curves. Here is why:

Experienced driver or beginner, each of us is subject to the same laws of physics when driving on curves. The traction of the tires against the road surface makes it possible for the vehicle to change its path when you turn the front wheels. If there is no traction, inertia will keep the vehicle going in the same direction. If you have ever tried to steer a vehicle on wet ice, you will understand this.

The traction you can get in a curve depends on the condition of your tires and the road surface, the angle at which the curve is banked, and your speed. While you are in a curve, speed is the one factor you can control.

Suppose you are steering through a sharp curve. Then you suddenly accelerate. Both control systems — steering and acceleration — have to do their work where the tires meet the road. Adding the sudden acceleration can demand too much of those places. You can lose control. See *StabiliTrak® System on page 4-9*.

What should you do if this ever happens? Ease up on the accelerator pedal, steer the vehicle the way you want it to go, and slow down.

If you have StabiliTrak®, you may see the STABILITY SYSTEM ACTIVE message on the message center. See “Stability System Active Message” under *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-53*.

Speed limit signs near curves warn that you should adjust your speed. Of course, the posted speeds are based on good weather and road conditions. Under less favorable conditions you will want to go slower.

If you need to reduce your speed as you approach a curve, do it before you enter the curve, while your front wheels are straight ahead.

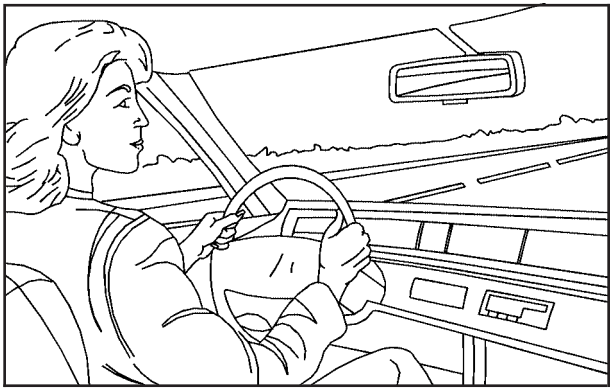
Try to adjust your speed so you can “drive” through the curve. Maintain a reasonable, steady speed. Wait to accelerate until you are out of the curve, and then accelerate gently into the straightaway.

Steering in Emergencies

There are times when steering can be more effective than braking. For example, you come over a hill and find a truck stopped in your lane, or a car suddenly pulls out from nowhere, or a child darts out from between parked cars and stops right in front of you. You can avoid these problems by braking — if you can stop in time. But sometimes you cannot; there is not room. That is the time for evasive action — steering around the problem.

Your vehicle can perform very well in emergencies like these. First apply your brakes.

See *Braking on page 4-6*. It is better to remove as much speed as you can from a possible collision. Then steer around the problem, to the left or right depending on the space available.

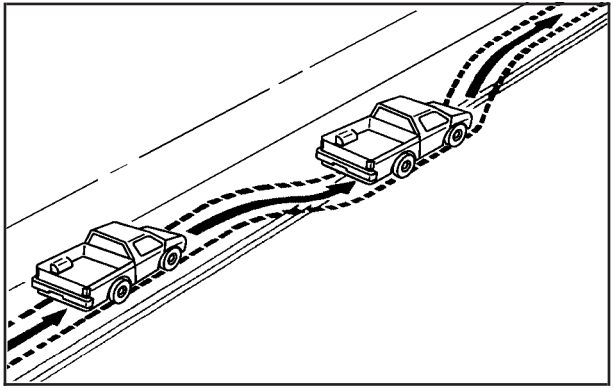


An emergency like this requires close attention and a quick decision. If you are holding the steering wheel at the recommended 9 and 3 o'clock positions, you can turn it a full 180 degrees very quickly without removing either hand. But you have to act fast, steer quickly, and just as quickly straighten the wheel once you have avoided the object.

The fact that such emergency situations are always possible is a good reason to practice defensive driving at all times and wear safety belts properly.

Off-Road Recovery

You may find that your right wheels have dropped off the edge of a road onto the shoulder while you are driving.



If the level of the shoulder is only slightly below the pavement, recovery should be fairly easy. Ease off the accelerator and then, if there is nothing in the way, steer so that your vehicle straddles the edge of the pavement. You can turn the steering wheel up to one-quarter turn until the right front tire contacts the pavement edge. Then turn your steering wheel to go straight down the roadway.

Passing

The driver of a vehicle about to pass another on a two-lane highway waits for just the right moment, accelerates, moves around the vehicle ahead, then goes back into the right lane again. A simple maneuver?

Not necessarily! Passing another vehicle on a two-lane highway is a potentially dangerous move, since the passing vehicle occupies the same lane as oncoming traffic for several seconds. A miscalculation, an error in judgment, or a brief surrender to frustration or anger can suddenly put the passing driver face to face with the worst of all traffic accidents — the head-on collision.

So here are some tips for passing:

- Drive ahead. Look down the road, to the sides and to crossroads for situations that might affect your passing patterns. If you have any doubt whatsoever about making a successful pass, wait for a better time.
- Watch for traffic signs, pavement markings and lines. If you can see a sign up ahead that might indicate a turn or an intersection, delay your pass. A broken center line usually indicates it is all right to pass, providing the road ahead is clear. Never cross a solid line on your side of the lane or a double solid line, even if the road seems empty of approaching traffic.

- Do not get too close to the vehicle you want to pass while you are awaiting an opportunity. For one thing, following too closely reduces your area of vision, especially if you are following a larger vehicle. Also, you will not have adequate space if the vehicle ahead suddenly slows or stops. Keep back a reasonable distance.
- When it looks like a chance to pass is coming up, start to accelerate but stay in the right lane and do not get too close. Time your move so you will be increasing speed as the time comes to move into the other lane. If the way is clear to pass, you will have a running start that more than makes up for the distance you would lose by dropping back. And if something happens to cause you to cancel your pass, you need only slow down and drop back again and wait for another opportunity.
- If other vehicles are lined up to pass a slow vehicle, wait your turn. But take care that someone is not trying to pass you as you pull out to pass the slow vehicle. Remember to glance over your shoulder and check the blind spot.
- Check your mirrors, glance over your shoulder and start your left lane change signal before moving out of the right lane to pass. When you are far enough ahead of the passed vehicle to see its front in your inside mirror, activate your right lane change signal and move back into the right lane. Remember that if your right outside mirror is convex, the vehicle you just passed may seem to be farther away from you than it really is.
- Try not to pass more than one vehicle at a time on two-lane roads. Reconsider before passing the next vehicle.
- Do not overtake a slowly moving vehicle too rapidly. Even though the brake lamps are not flashing, it may be slowing down or starting to turn.
- If you are being passed, make it easy for the following driver to get ahead of you. Perhaps you can ease a little to the right.

Loss of Control

Let us review what driving experts say about what happens when the three control systems — brakes, steering, and acceleration — do not have enough friction where the tires meet the road to do what the driver has asked.

In any emergency, do not give up. Keep trying to steer and constantly seek an escape route or area of less danger.

Skidding

In a skid, a driver can lose control of the vehicle. Defensive drivers avoid most skids by taking reasonable care suited to existing conditions, and by not overdriving those conditions. But skids are always possible.

The three types of skids correspond to your vehicle's three control systems. In the braking skid, your wheels are not rolling. In the steering or cornering skid, too much speed or steering in a curve causes tires to slip and lose cornering force. And in the acceleration skid, too much throttle causes the driving wheels to spin.

A cornering skid is best handled by easing your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Remember: Any traction control system helps avoid only the acceleration skid. If your traction control system is off, then an acceleration skid is also best handled by easing your foot off the accelerator pedal.

If your vehicle starts to slide, ease your foot off the accelerator pedal and quickly steer the way you want the vehicle to go. If you start steering quickly enough, your vehicle may straighten out. Always be ready for a second skid if it occurs.

Of course, traction is reduced when water, snow, ice, gravel, or other material is on the road. For safety, you will want to slow down and adjust your driving to these conditions. It is important to slow down on slippery surfaces because stopping distance will be longer and vehicle control more limited.

While driving on a surface with reduced traction, try your best to avoid sudden steering, acceleration, or braking, including engine braking by shifting to a lower gear. Any sudden changes could cause the tires to slide. You may not realize the surface is slippery until your vehicle is skidding. Learn to recognize warning clues — such as enough water, ice, or packed snow on the road to make a mirrored surface — and slow down when you have any doubt.

Remember: Any anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps avoid only the braking skid.

Operating Your All-Wheel-Drive Vehicle Off Paved Roads

This off-road guide is for vehicles that have all-wheel drive. If your vehicle does not have all-wheel drive or if it has 20-inch tire/wheel assemblies, you should not drive off-road unless you are on a level, solid surface. See *Tires on page 5-60*.

Many of the same design features that help make your vehicle responsive on paved roads during poor weather conditions — features like all-wheel drive — help make it much better suited for off-road use. Its higher ground clearance also helps your vehicle step over some off-road obstacles. But your vehicle does not have features like special underbody shielding and a transfer case low gear range, things that are usually thought necessary for extended or severe off-road service.

Also, see *Braking on page 4-6*.

Off-road driving can be great fun. But it does have some definite hazards. The greatest of these is the terrain itself.

"Off-roading" means you have left the North American road system behind. Traffic lanes are not marked. Curves are not banked. There are no road signs. Surfaces can be slippery, rough, uphill or downhill. In short, you have gone right back to nature.

Off-road driving involves some new skills. And that is why it is very important that you read this guide. You will find many driving tips and suggestions. These will help make your off-road driving safer and more enjoyable.

Before You Go Off-Roading

There are some things to do before you go out. For example, be sure to have all necessary maintenance and service work done. Check to make sure all underbody shields (if equipped) are properly attached. Is there enough fuel? Is the spare tire fully inflated? Are the fluid levels up where they should be? What are the local laws that apply to off-roading where you will be driving? If you do not know, you should check with law enforcement people in the area. Will you be on someone's private land? If so, be sure to get the necessary permission.

Loading Your Vehicle for Off-Road Driving

There are some important things to remember about how to load your vehicle.

- The heaviest things should be on the load floor and forward of your rear axle. Put heavier items as far forward as you can.
- Be sure the load is secured properly, so driving on the off-road terrain does not toss things around.

⚠ CAUTION:

- **Cargo on the load floor piled higher than the seatbacks can be thrown forward during a sudden stop. You or your passengers could be injured. Keep cargo below the top of the seatbacks.**
- **Unsecured cargo on the load floor can be tossed about when driving over rough terrain. You or your passengers can be struck by flying objects. Secure the cargo properly.**
- **Heavy loads on the roof raise the vehicle's center of gravity, making it more likely to roll over. You can be seriously or fatally injured if the vehicle rolls over. Put heavy loads inside the cargo area, not on the roof. Keep cargo in the cargo area as far forward and low as possible.**

You will find other important information in this manual. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-47*, *Luggage Carrier on page 2-42* and *Tires on page 5-60*.

Environmental Concerns

Off-road driving can provide wholesome and satisfying recreation. However, it also raises environmental concerns. We recognize these concerns and urge every off-roader to follow these basic rules for protecting the environment:

- Always use established trails, roads and areas that have been specially set aside for public off-road recreational driving; obey all posted regulations.
- Avoid any driving practice that could damage the environment — shrubs, flowers, trees, grasses — or disturb wildlife (this includes wheel-spinning, breaking down trees or unnecessary driving through streams or over soft ground).
- Always carry a litter bag — make sure all refuse is removed from any campsite before leaving.
- Take extreme care with open fires (where permitted), camp stoves and lanterns.
- Never park your vehicle over dry grass or other combustible materials that could catch fire from the heat of the vehicle's exhaust system.

Traveling to Remote Areas

It makes sense to plan your trip, especially when going to a remote area. Know the terrain and plan your route. You are much less likely to get bad surprises. Get accurate maps of trails and terrain. Try to learn of any blocked or closed roads.

It is also a good idea to travel with at least one other vehicle. If something happens to one of them, the other can help quickly.

Getting Familiar with Off-Road Driving

It is a good idea to practice in an area that is safe and close to home before you go into the wilderness. Off-road driving does require some new and different driving skills. Here is what we mean.

Tune your senses to different kinds of signals. Your eyes, for example, need to constantly sweep the terrain for unexpected obstacles. Your ears need to listen for unusual tire or engine sounds. With your arms, hands, feet and body, you will need to respond to vibrations and vehicle bounce.

Controlling your vehicle is the key to successful off-road driving. One of the best ways to control your vehicle is to control your speed. Here are some things to keep in mind. At higher speeds:

- you approach things faster and you have less time to scan the terrain for obstacles.
- you have less time to react.
- you have more vehicle bounce when you drive over obstacles.
- you will need more distance for braking, especially since you are on an unpaved surface.

⚠ CAUTION:

When you are driving off-road, bouncing and quick changes in direction can easily throw you out of position. This could cause you to lose control and crash. So, whether you're driving on or off the road, you and your passengers should wear safety belts.

Scanning the Terrain

Off-road driving can take you over many different kinds of terrain. You need to be familiar with the terrain and its many different features. Here are some things to consider.

Surface Conditions: Off-roading can take you over hard-packed dirt, gravel, rocks, grass, sand, mud, snow or ice. Each of these surfaces affects the steering, acceleration and braking of your vehicle in different ways. Depending upon the kind of surface you are on, you may experience slipping, sliding, wheel spinning, delayed acceleration, poor traction and longer braking distances.

Surface Obstacles: Unseen or hidden obstacles can be hazardous. A rock, log, hole, rut or bump can startle you if you are not prepared for them. Often these obstacles are hidden by grass, bushes, snow or even the rise and fall of the terrain itself. Here are some things to consider:

- Is the path ahead clear?
- Will the surface texture change abruptly up ahead?
- Does the travel take you uphill or downhill? There is more discussion of these subjects later.
- Will you have to stop suddenly or change direction quickly?

When you drive over obstacles or rough terrain, keep a firm grip on the steering wheel. Ruts, troughs or other surface features can jerk the wheel out of your hands if you are not prepared.

When you drive over bumps, rocks, or other obstacles, your wheels can leave the ground. If this happens, even with one or two wheels, you cannot control the vehicle as well or at all.

Because you will be on an unpaved surface, it is especially important to avoid sudden acceleration, sudden turns or sudden braking.

In a way, off-road driving requires a different kind of alertness from driving on paved roads and highways. There are no road signs, posted speed limits or signal lights. You have to use your own good judgment about what is safe and what is not.

Drinking and driving can be very dangerous on any road. And this is certainly true for off-road driving. At the very time you need special alertness and driving skills, your reflexes, perceptions and judgment can be affected by even a small amount of alcohol. You could have a serious — or even fatal — accident if you drink and drive or ride with a driver who has been drinking. See *Drunken Driving on page 4-2*.

Driving on Off-Road Hills

Off-road driving often takes you up, down or across a hill. Driving safely on hills requires good judgment and understanding of what your vehicle can and cannot do. There are some hills that simply cannot be driven, no matter how well built the vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION:

Many hills are simply too steep for any vehicle. If you drive up them, you will stall. If you drive down them, you cannot control your speed. If you drive across them, you will roll over. You could be seriously injured or killed. If you have any doubt about the steepness, do not drive the hill.

Approaching a Hill

When you approach a hill, you need to decide if it is one of those hills that is just too steep to climb, descend or cross. Steepness can be hard to judge. On a very small hill, for example, there may be a smooth, constant incline with only a small change in elevation where you can easily see all the way to the top. On a large hill, the incline may get steeper as you near the top, but you may not see this because the crest of the hill is hidden by bushes, grass or shrubs.

Here are some other things to consider as you approach a hill.

- Is there a constant incline, or does the hill get sharply steeper in places?
- Is there good traction on the hillside, or will the surface cause tire slipping?
- Is there a straight path up or down the hill so you will not have to make turning maneuvers?
- Are there obstructions on the hill that can block your path, such as boulders, trees, logs, or ruts?
- What is beyond the hill? Is there a cliff, an embankment, a drop-off, a fence? Get out and walk the hill if you do not know. It is the smart way to find out.
- Is the hill simply too rough? Steep hills often have ruts, gullies, troughs and exposed rocks because they are more susceptible to the effects of erosion.

Driving Uphill

Once you decide you can safely drive up the hill, you need to take some special steps.

- Use a low gear and get a firm grip on the steering wheel.
- Get a smooth start up the hill and try to maintain your speed. Do not use more power than you need, because you do not want your wheels to start spinning or sliding.
- Try to drive straight up the hill if at all possible. If the path twists and turns, you might want to find another route.

⚠ CAUTION:

Turning or driving across steep hills can be dangerous. You could lose traction, slide sideways, and possibly roll over. You could be seriously injured or killed. When driving up hills, always try to go straight up.

- Ease up on your speed as you approach the top of the hill.
- Attach a flag to the vehicle to make you more visible to approaching traffic on trails or hills.
- Sound the horn as you approach the top of the hill to let opposing traffic know you are there.
- Use your headlamps even during the day. They make you more visible to oncoming traffic.

⚠ CAUTION:

Driving to the top (crest) of a hill at full speed can cause an accident. There could be a drop-off, embankment, cliff, or even another vehicle. You could be seriously injured or killed. As you near the top of a hill, slow down and stay alert.

Q: What should I do if my vehicle stalls, or is about to stall, and I cannot make it up the hill?

A: If this happens, there are some things you should do, and there are some things you must not do? First, here is what you *should* do:

- Push the brake pedal to stop the vehicle and keep it from rolling backwards. Also, apply the parking brake.
- If your engine is still running, shift the transmission to REVERSE (R), release the parking brake, and slowly back down the hill in REVERSE (R).
- If your engine has stopped running, you will need to restart it. With the brake pedal pressed and the parking brake still applied, shift the transmission to PARK (P) and restart the engine. Then shift to REVERSE (R), release the parking brake, and slowly back down the hill as straight as possible in REVERSE (R).
- As you are backing down the hill, put your left hand on the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position. This way you will be able to tell if your wheels are straight and maneuver as you back down. It is best that you back down the hill with your wheels straight rather than in the left or right direction. Turning the wheel too far to the left or right will increase the possibility of a rollover.

Here are some things you *must not* do if you stall, or are about to stall, when going up a hill.

- Never attempt to prevent a stall by shifting into NEUTRAL (N) to rev-up the engine and regain forward momentum. This will not work. Your vehicle will roll backwards very quickly and you could go out of control.

  Instead, apply the regular brake to stop the vehicle. Then apply the parking brake. Shift to REVERSE (R), release the parking brake, and slowly back straight down.
- Never attempt to turn around if you are about to stall when going up a hill. If the hill is steep enough to stall your vehicle, it is steep enough to cause you to roll over if you turn around. If you cannot make it up the hill you must back straight down the hill.

Q: Suppose, after stalling, I try to back down the hill and decide I just cannot do it. What should I do?

A: Set the parking brake, put your transmission in PARK (P) and turn off the engine. Leave the vehicle and go get some help. Exit on the uphill side and stay clear of the path the vehicle would take if it rolled downhill.

Driving Downhill

When off-roading takes you downhill, you will want to consider a number of things:

- How steep is the downhill? Will I be able to maintain vehicle control?
- What's the surface like? Smooth? Rough? Slippery? Hard-packed dirt? Gravel?
- Are there hidden surface obstacles? Ruts? Logs? Boulders?
- What is at the bottom of the hill? Is there a hidden creek bank or even a river bottom with large rocks?

If you decide you can go down a hill safely, then try to keep your vehicle headed straight down, and use a low gear. This way, engine drag can help your brakes and they will not have to do all the work. Descend slowly, keeping your vehicle under control at all times.

⚠ CAUTION:

Heavy braking when going down a hill can cause your brakes to overheat and fade. This could cause loss of control and a serious accident. Apply the brakes lightly when descending a hill and use a low gear to keep vehicle speed under control.

Q: Are there some things I should not do when driving down a hill?

A: Yes! These are important because if you ignore them you could lose control and have a serious accident.

- When driving downhill, avoid turns that take you across the incline of the hill. A hill that is not too steep to drive down may be too steep to drive across. You could roll over if you do not drive straight down.
- Never go downhill with the transmission in NEUTRAL (N). This is called "free wheeling." Your brakes will have to do all the work and could overheat and fade.

Q: Am I likely to stall when going downhill?

A: It is much more likely to happen going uphill. But if it happens going downhill, here is what to do.

1. Stop your vehicle by applying the regular brakes. Apply the parking brake.
2. Shift to PARK (P) and, while still braking, restart the engine.
3. Shift back to a low gear, release the parking brake, and drive straight down.
4. If the engine will not start, get out and get help.

Driving Across an Incline

Sooner or later, an off-road trail will probably go across the incline of a hill. If this happens, you have to decide whether to try to drive across the incline. Here are some things to consider:

- A hill that can be driven straight up or down may be too steep to drive across. When you go straight up or down a hill, the length of the wheel base — the distance from the front wheels to the rear wheels — reduces the likelihood the vehicle will tumble end over end. But when you drive across an incline, the much more narrow track width — the distance between the left and right wheels — may not prevent the vehicle from tilting and rolling over. Also, driving across an incline puts more weight on the downhill wheels. This could cause a downhill slide or a rollover.
- Surface conditions can be a problem when you drive across a hill. Loose gravel, muddy spots, or even wet grass can cause your tires to slip sideways, downhill. If the vehicle slips sideways, it can hit something that will trip it — a rock, a rut, etc. — and roll over.
- Hidden obstacles can make the steepness of the incline even worse. If you drive across a rock with the uphill wheels, or if the downhill wheels drop into a rut or depression, your vehicle can tilt even more.

For reasons like these, you need to decide carefully whether to try to drive across an incline. Just because the trail goes across the incline does not mean you have to drive it. The last vehicle to try it might have rolled over.

⚠ CAUTION:

Driving across an incline that is too steep will make your vehicle roll over. You could be seriously injured or killed. If you have any doubt about the steepness of the incline, do not drive across it. Find another route instead.

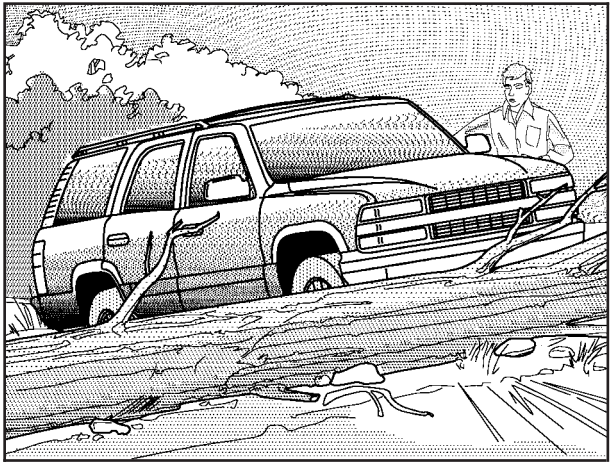
Q: What if I am driving across an incline that is not too steep, but I hit some loose gravel and start to slide downhill. What should I do?

A: If you feel your vehicle starting to slide sideways, turn downhill. This should help straighten out the vehicle and prevent the side slipping. However, a much better way to prevent this is to get out and "walk the course" so you know what the surface is like before you drive it.

Stalling on an Incline

If your vehicle stalls when you are crossing an incline, be sure you, and any passengers, get out on the uphill side, even if the door there is harder to open. If you get out on the downhill side and the vehicle starts to roll over, you will be right in its path.

If you have to walk down the slope, stay out of the path the vehicle will take if it does roll over.



⚠ CAUTION:

Getting out on the downhill (low) side of a vehicle stopped across an incline is dangerous. If the vehicle rolls over, you could be crushed or killed. Always get out on the uphill (high) side of the vehicle and stay well clear of the rollover path.

Driving in Mud, Sand, Snow or Ice

When you drive in mud, snow or sand, your wheels will not get good traction. You cannot accelerate as quickly, turning is more difficult, and you will need longer braking distances.

It is best to use a low gear when you are in mud — the deeper the mud, the lower the gear. In really deep mud, the idea is to keep your vehicle moving so you do not get stuck.

When you drive on sand, you will sense a change in wheel traction. But it will depend upon how loosely packed the sand is. On loosely packed sand, such as on beaches or sand dunes, your tires will tend to sink into the sand. This has an effect on steering, accelerating and braking. Drive at a reduced speed and avoid sharp turns or abrupt maneuvers.

Hard packed snow and ice offer the worst tire traction. On these surfaces, it is very easy to lose control. On wet ice, for example, the traction is so poor that you will have difficulty accelerating. And, if you do get moving, poor steering and difficult braking can cause you to slide out of control.

⚠ CAUTION:

Driving on frozen lakes, ponds or rivers can be dangerous. Underwater springs, currents under the ice, or sudden thaws can weaken the ice. Your vehicle could fall through the ice and you and your passengers could drown. Drive your vehicle on safe surfaces only.

Driving in Water

Heavy rain can mean flash flooding, and flood waters demand extreme caution.

Find out how deep the water is before you drive through it. If it is deep enough to cover your wheel hubs, axles or exhaust pipe, do not try it — you probably will not get through. Also, water that deep can damage your axle and other vehicle parts.

If the water is not too deep, drive slowly through it. At faster speeds, water splashes on your ignition system and your vehicle can stall. Stalling can also occur if you get your tailpipe under water. And, as long as your tailpipe is under water, you will never be able to start your engine. When you go through water, remember that when your brakes get wet, it may take you longer to stop.

⚠ CAUTION:

Driving through rushing water can be dangerous. Deep water can sweep your vehicle downstream and you and your passengers could drown. If it is only shallow water, it can still wash away the ground from under your tires, and you could lose traction and roll the vehicle over. Do not drive through rushing water.

See *Driving in Rain and on Wet Roads on page 4-33* for more information on driving through water.

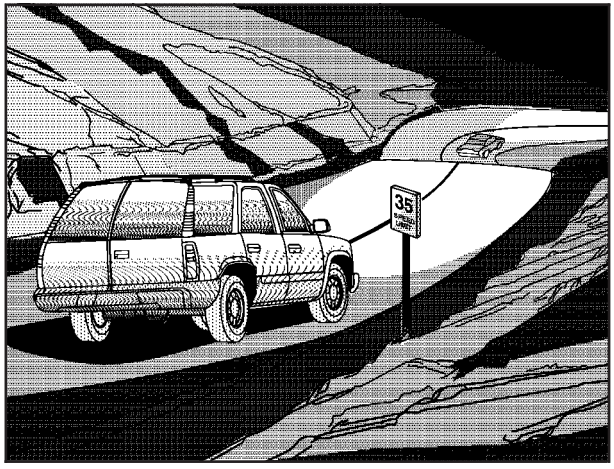
After Off-Road Driving

Remove any brush or debris that has collected on the underbody, chassis or under the hood. These accumulations can be a fire hazard.

After operation in mud or sand, have the brake linings cleaned and checked. These substances can cause glazing and uneven braking. Check the body structure, steering, suspension, wheels, tires and exhaust system for damage. Also, check the fuel lines and cooling system for any leakage.

Your vehicle will require more frequent service due to off-road use. Refer to the Maintenance Schedule for additional information.

Driving at Night



Night driving is more dangerous than day driving. One reason is that some drivers are likely to be impaired — by alcohol or drugs, with night vision problems, or by fatigue.

Here are some tips on night driving.

- Drive defensively.
- Do not drink and drive.
- Since you cannot see as well, you may need to slow down and keep more space between you and other vehicles.
- Slow down, especially on higher speed roads. Your headlamps can light up only so much road ahead.
- In remote areas, watch for animals.
- If you are tired, pull off the road in a safe place and rest.

No one can see as well at night as in the daytime. But as we get older these differences increase. A 50-year-old driver may require at least twice as much light to see the same thing at night as a 20-year-old.

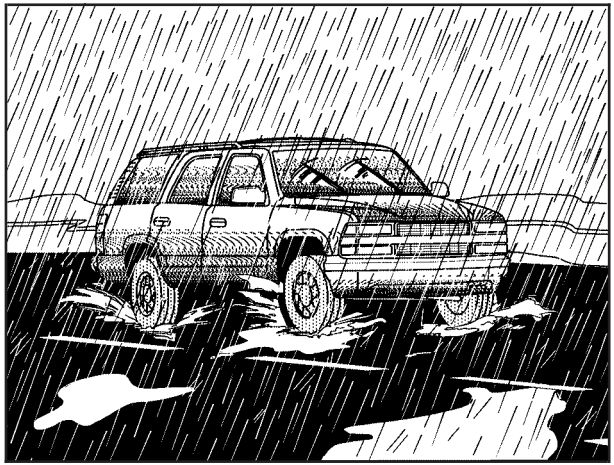
What you do in the daytime can also affect your night vision. For example, if you spend the day in bright sunshine you are wise to wear sunglasses. Your eyes will have less trouble adjusting to night. But if you are driving, do not wear sunglasses at night. They may cut down on glare from headlamps, but they also make a lot of things invisible.

You can be temporarily blinded by approaching headlamps. It can take a second or two, or even several seconds, for your eyes to re-adjust to the dark. When you are faced with severe glare, as from a driver who does not lower the high beams, or a vehicle with misaimed headlamps, slow down a little. Avoid staring directly into the approaching headlamps.

Keep your windshield and all the glass on your vehicle clean — inside and out. Glare at night is made much worse by dirt on the glass. Even the inside of the glass can build up a film caused by dust. Dirty glass makes lights dazzle and flash more than clean glass would, making the pupils of your eyes contract repeatedly.

Remember that your headlamps light up far less of a roadway when you are in a turn or curve. Keep your eyes moving; that way, it is easier to pick out dimly lighted objects. Just as your headlamps should be checked regularly for proper aim, so should your eyes be examined regularly. Some drivers suffer from night blindness — the inability to see in dim light — and are not even aware of it.

Driving in Rain and on Wet Roads



Rain and wet roads can mean driving trouble. On a wet road, you cannot stop, accelerate, or turn as well because your tire-to-road traction is not as good as on dry roads. And, if your tires do not have much tread left, you will get even less traction. It is always wise to go slower and be cautious if rain starts to fall while you are driving. The surface may get wet suddenly when your reflexes are tuned for driving on dry pavement.

The heavier the rain, the harder it is to see. Even if your windshield wiper blades are in good shape, a heavy rain can make it harder to see road signs and traffic signals, pavement markings, the edge of the road, and even people walking.

It is wise to keep your wiping equipment in good shape and keep your windshield washer tank filled with washer fluid. Replace your windshield wiper inserts when they show signs of streaking or missing areas on the windshield, or when strips of rubber start to separate from the inserts.

Driving too fast through large water puddles or even going through some car washes can cause problems, too. The water may affect your brakes. Try to avoid puddles. But if you cannot, try to slow down before you hit them.

⚠ CAUTION:

Wet brakes can cause accidents. They will not work as well in a quick stop and may cause pulling to one side. You could lose control of the vehicle.

After driving through a large puddle of water or a car wash, apply your brake pedal lightly until your brakes work normally.

Hydroplaning

Hydroplaning is dangerous. So much water can build up under your tires that they can actually ride on the water. This can happen if the road is wet enough and you are going fast enough. When your vehicle is hydroplaning, it has little or no contact with the road.

Hydroplaning does not happen often. But it can if your tires do not have much tread or if the pressure in one or more is low. It can happen if a lot of water is standing on the road. If you can see reflections from trees, telephone poles, or other vehicles, and raindrops dimple the water's surface, there could be hydroplaning.

Hydroplaning usually happens at higher speeds. There just is not a hard and fast rule about hydroplaning. The best advice is to slow down when it is raining.

Driving Through Deep Standing Water

Notice: **If you drive too quickly through deep puddles or standing water, water can come in through your engine's air intake and badly damage your engine. Never drive through water that is slightly lower than the underbody of your vehicle. If you cannot avoid deep puddles or standing water, drive through them very slowly.**

Driving Through Flowing Water

⚠ CAUTION:

Flowing or rushing water creates strong forces. If you try to drive through flowing water, as you might at a low water crossing, your vehicle can be carried away. As little as six inches of flowing water can carry away a smaller vehicle. If this happens, you and other vehicle occupants could drown. Do not ignore police warning signs, and otherwise be very cautious about trying to drive through flowing water.

Some Other Rainy Weather Tips

- Turn on your low-beam headlamps — not just your parking lamps — to help make you more visible to others.
- Besides slowing down, allow some extra following distance. And be especially careful when you pass another vehicle. Allow yourself more clear room ahead, and be prepared to have your view restricted by road spray.
- Have good tires with proper tread depth. See *Tires on page 5-60*.

City Driving

One of the biggest problems with city streets is the amount of traffic on them. You will want to watch out for what the other drivers are doing and pay attention to traffic signals.

Here are ways to increase your safety in city driving:

- Know the best way to get to where you are going. Get a city map and plan your trip into an unknown part of the city just as you would for a cross-country trip.
- Try to use the freeways that rim and crisscross most large cities. You will save time and energy. See *Freeway Driving on page 4-37*.
- Treat a green light as a warning signal. A traffic light is there because the corner is busy enough to need it. When a light turns green, and just before you start to move, check both ways for vehicles that have not cleared the intersection or may be running the red light.

Freeway Driving

Mile for mile, freeways — also called thruways, parkways, expressways, turnpikes, or superhighways — are the safest of all roads. But they have their own special rules.

The most important advice on freeway driving is: Keep up with traffic and keep to the right. Drive at the same speed most of the other drivers are driving. Too-fast or too-slow driving breaks a smooth traffic flow. Treat the left lane on a freeway as a passing lane.

At the entrance, there is usually a ramp that leads to the freeway. If you have a clear view of the freeway as you drive along the entrance ramp, you should begin to check traffic. Try to determine where you expect to blend with the flow. Try to merge into the gap at close to the prevailing speed. Switch on your turn signal, check your mirrors, and glance over your shoulder as often as necessary. Try to blend smoothly with the traffic flow.

Once you are on the freeway, adjust your speed to the posted limit or to the prevailing rate if it is slower. Stay in the right lane unless you want to pass.

Before changing lanes, check your mirrors. Then use your turn signal.

Just before you leave the lane, glance quickly over your shoulder to make sure there is not another vehicle in your blind spot.

Once you are moving on the freeway, make certain you allow a reasonable following distance. Expect to move slightly slower at night.

When you want to leave the freeway, move to the proper lane well in advance. If you miss your exit, do not, under any circumstances, stop and back up. Drive on to the next exit.

The exit ramp can be curved, sometimes quite sharply. The exit speed is usually posted.

Reduce your speed according to your speedometer, not to your sense of motion. After driving for any distance at higher speeds, you may tend to think you are going slower than you actually are.

Before Leaving on a Long Trip

Make sure you are ready. Try to be well rested. If you must start when you are not fresh — such as after a day's work — do not plan to make too many miles that first part of the journey. Wear comfortable clothing and shoes you can easily drive in.

Is your vehicle ready for a long trip? If you keep it serviced and maintained, it is ready to go. If it needs service, have it done before starting out. Of course, you will find experienced and able service experts in GM dealerships all across North America. They will be ready and willing to help if you need it.

Here are some things you can check before a trip:

- *Windshield Washer Fluid:* Is the reservoir full? Are all windows clean inside and outside?
- *Wiper Blades:* Are they in good shape?
- *Fuel, Engine Oil, Other Fluids:* Have you checked all levels?
- *Lamps:* Are they all working? Are the lenses clean?
- *Tires:* They are vitally important to a safe, trouble-free trip. Is the tread good enough for long-distance driving? Are the tires all inflated to the recommended pressure?
- *Weather Forecasts:* What is the weather outlook along your route? Should you delay your trip a short time to avoid a major storm system?
- *Maps:* Do you have up-to-date maps?

Highway Hypnosis

Is there actually such a condition as highway hypnosis? Or is it just plain falling asleep at the wheel? Call it highway hypnosis, lack of awareness, or whatever.

There is something about an easy stretch of road with the same scenery, along with the hum of the tires on the road, the drone of the engine, and the rush of the wind against the vehicle that can make you sleepy. Do not let it happen to you! If it does, your vehicle can leave the road in less than a second, and you could crash and be injured.

What can you do about highway hypnosis? First, be aware that it can happen.

Then here are some tips:

- Make sure your vehicle is well ventilated, with a comfortably cool interior.
- Keep your eyes moving. Scan the road ahead and to the sides. Check your mirrors and your instruments frequently.
- If you get sleepy, pull off the road into a rest, service, or parking area and take a nap, get some exercise, or both. For safety, treat drowsiness on the highway as an emergency.

Hill and Mountain Roads

Driving on steep hills or mountains is different from driving in flat or rolling terrain.

If you drive regularly in steep country, or if you are planning to visit there, here are some tips that can make your trips safer and more enjoyable. See *Operating Your All-Wheel-Drive Vehicle Off Paved Roads on page 4-18* for information about driving off-road.

- Keep your vehicle in good shape. Check all fluid levels and also the brakes, tires, cooling system, and transmission. These parts can work hard on mountain roads.
- Know how to go down hills. The most important thing to know is this: let your engine do some of the slowing down. Shift to a lower gear when you go down a steep or long hill.

⚠ CAUTION:

If you do not shift down, your brakes could get so hot that they would not work well. You would then have poor braking or even none going down a hill. You could crash. Shift down to let your engine assist your brakes on a steep downhill slope.

⚠ CAUTION:

Coasting downhill in NEUTRAL (N) or with the ignition off is dangerous. Your brakes will have to do all the work of slowing down. They could get so hot that they would not work well. You would then have poor braking or even none going down a hill. You could crash. Always have your engine running and your vehicle in gear when you go downhill.

- Know how to go uphill. You may want to shift down to a lower gear. The lower gears help cool your engine and transmission, and you can climb the hill better.
- Stay in your own lane when driving on two-lane roads in hills or mountains. Do not swing wide or cut across the center of the road. Drive at speeds that let you stay in your own lane.
- As you go over the top of a hill, be alert. There could be something in your lane, like a stalled car or an accident.
- You may see highway signs on mountains that warn of special problems. Examples are long grades, passing or no-passing zones, a falling rocks area, or winding roads. Be alert to these and take appropriate action.

Winter Driving

Here are some tips for winter driving:

- Have your vehicle in good shape for winter.
- You may want to put winter emergency supplies in your vehicle.

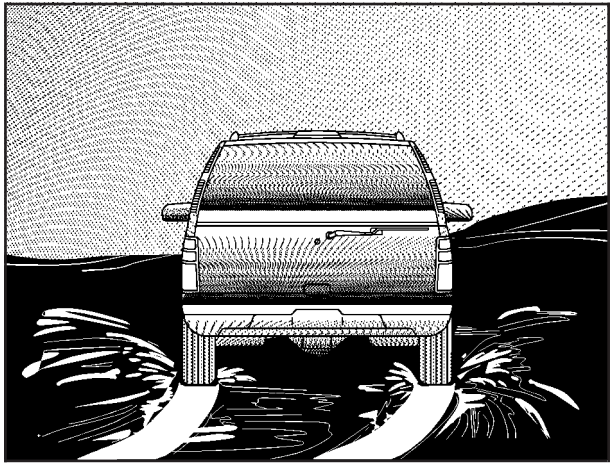
Also see *Tires on page 5-60*.

Include an ice scraper, a small brush or broom, a supply of windshield washer fluid, a rag, some winter outer clothing, a small shovel, a flashlight, a red cloth, and a couple of reflective warning triangles. And, if you will be driving under severe conditions, include a small bag of sand, a piece of old carpet, or a couple of burlap bags to help provide traction. Be sure you properly secure these items in your vehicle.

Driving on Snow or Ice

Most of the time, those places where your tires meet the road probably have good traction.

However, if there is snow or ice between your tires and the road, you can have a very slippery situation. You will have a lot less traction, or grip, and will need to very careful.



What is the worst time for this? Wet ice. Very cold snow or ice can be slick and hard to drive on. But wet ice can be even more trouble because it may offer the least traction of all. You can get wet ice when it is about freezing (32°F; 0°C) and freezing rain begins to fall. Try to avoid driving on wet ice until salt and sand crews can get there.

Whatever the condition — smooth ice, packed, blowing, or loose snow — drive with caution.

Accelerate gently. Try not to break the fragile traction. If you accelerate too fast, the drive wheels will spin and polish the surface under the tires even more. See *StabiliTrak® System on page 4-9*, *If You Are Stuck: In Sand, Mud, Ice or Snow on page 4-45*, and *Rocking Your Vehicle to Get It Out on page 4-46*.

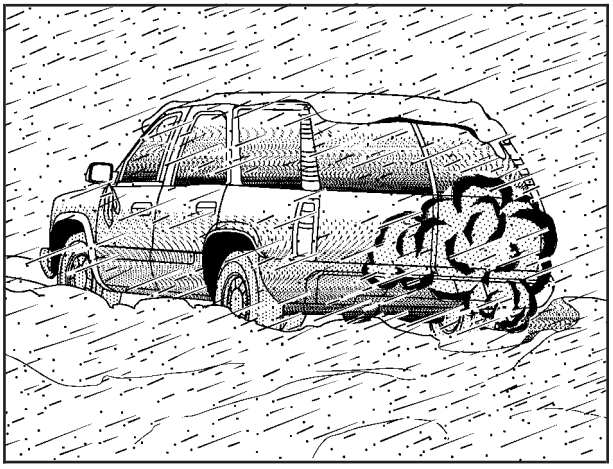
Your anti-lock brakes improve your vehicle's stability when you make a hard stop on a slippery road. Even though you have an anti-lock braking system, you will want to begin stopping sooner than you would on dry pavement. See *Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) on page 4-7*.

- Allow greater following distance on any slippery road.
- Watch for slippery spots. The road might be fine until you hit a spot that is covered with ice. On an otherwise clear road, ice patches may appear in shaded areas where the sun cannot reach, such as around clumps of trees, behind buildings, or under bridges. Sometimes the surface of a curve or an overpass may remain icy when the surrounding roads are clear. If you see a patch of ice ahead of you, brake before you are on it. Try not to brake while you are actually on the ice, and avoid sudden steering maneuvers.

If You Are Caught in a Blizzard

If you are stopped by heavy snow, you could be in a serious situation. You should probably stay with your vehicle unless you know for sure that you are near help and you can hike through the snow. Here are some things to do to summon help and keep yourself and your passengers safe:

- Turn on your hazard flashers.
- Tie a red cloth to your vehicle to alert police that you have been stopped by the snow.
- Put on extra clothing or wrap a blanket around you. If you do not have blankets or extra clothing, make body insulators from newspapers, burlap bags, rags, floor mats — anything you can wrap around yourself or tuck under your clothing to keep warm.



You can run the engine to keep warm, but be careful.

⚠ CAUTION:

Snow can trap exhaust gases under your vehicle. This can cause deadly CO (carbon monoxide) gas to get inside. CO could overcome you and kill you. You cannot see it or smell it, so you might not know it is in your vehicle. Clear away snow from around the base of your vehicle, especially any that is blocking your exhaust pipe. And check around again from time to time to be sure snow does not collect there.

Open a window just a little on the side of the vehicle that is away from the wind. This will help keep CO out.

Run your engine only as long as you must. This saves fuel. When you run the engine, make it go a little faster than just idle. That is, push the accelerator slightly. This uses less fuel for the heat that you get and it keeps the battery charged. You will need a well-charged battery to restart the vehicle, and possibly for signaling later on with your headlamps. Let the heater run for a while.

Then, shut the engine off and close the window almost all the way to preserve the heat. Start the engine again and repeat this only when you feel really uncomfortable from the cold. But do it as little as possible. Preserve the fuel as long as you can. To help keep warm, you can get out of the vehicle and do some fairly vigorous exercises every half hour or so until help comes.

If You Are Stuck: In Sand, Mud, Ice or Snow

In order to free your vehicle when it is stuck, you will need to spin the wheels, but you do not want to spin your wheels too fast. The method known as rocking can help you get out when you are stuck, but you must use caution.

⚠ CAUTION:

If you let your tires spin at high speed, they can explode, and you or others could be injured. And, the transmission or other parts of the vehicle can overheat. That could cause an engine compartment fire or other damage. When you are stuck, spin the wheels as little as possible. Do not spin the wheels above 35 mph (55 km/h) as shown on the speedometer.

Notice: **Spinning your wheels can destroy parts of your vehicle as well as the tires. If you spin the wheels too fast while shifting your transmission back and forth, you can destroy your transmission.**

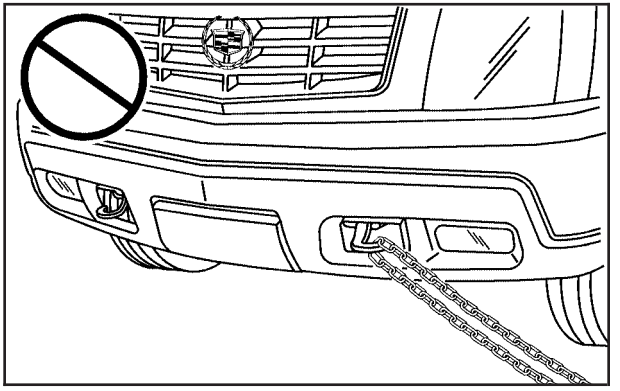
For more information about using tire chains on your vehicle, see *Tire Chains on page 5-78*.

Rocking Your Vehicle to Get It Out

First, turn your steering wheel left and right. That will clear the area around your front wheels. If your vehicle has the StabiliTrak® System, turn the system off by pressing the StabiliTrak® button so that the STABILITY SYS DISABLED message and the traction off light are illuminated on the instrument panel cluster. Then shift back and forth between REVERSE (R) and a forward gear, spinning the wheels as little as possible. Release the accelerator pedal while you shift, and press lightly on the accelerator pedal when the transmission is in gear. By slowly spinning your wheels in the forward and reverse directions, you will cause a rocking motion that may free your vehicle. If that does not get you out after a few tries, you may need to be towed out. Or, you can use your recovery hooks if your vehicle has them. If you do need to be towed out, see *Towing Your Vehicle on page 4-53*.

Recovery Hooks

Your vehicle may be equipped with recovery hooks. The recovery hooks are provided at the front of your vehicle. You may need to use them if you are stuck off-road and need to be pulled to some place where you can continue driving.



⚠ CAUTION:

These hooks, when used, are under a lot of force. Always pull the vehicle straight out. Never pull on the hooks at a sideways angle. The hooks could break off and you or others could be injured from the chain or cable snapping back.

Notice: **Never use recovery hooks to tow the vehicle. Your vehicle could be damaged and it would not be covered by warranty.**

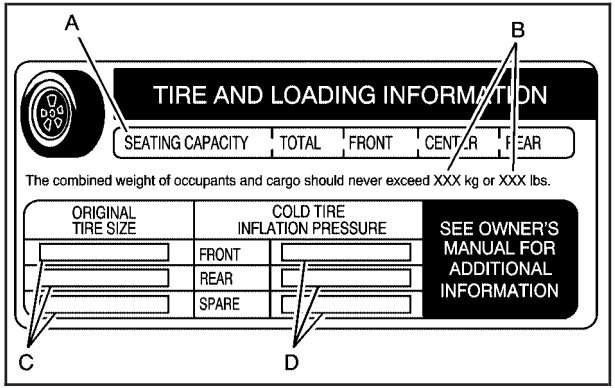
Loading Your Vehicle

It is very important to know how much weight your vehicle can carry. This weight is called the vehicle capacity weight and includes the weight of all occupants, cargo and all nonfactory-installed options. Two labels on your vehicle show how much weight it was designed to carry, the Tire and Loading Information label and the Certification/Tire label.

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not load your vehicle any heavier than the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), or either the maximum front or rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). If you do, parts on your vehicle can break, and it can change the way your vehicle handles. These could cause you to lose control and crash. Also, overloading can shorten the life of your vehicle.

Tire and Loading Information Label



Label Example

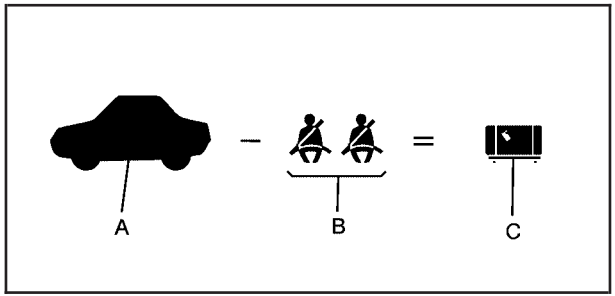
A vehicle specific Tire and Loading Information label is attached to the center pillar (B-pillar). With the driver's door open, you will find the label attached below the door lock post (striker). The tire and loading information label shows the number of occupant seating positions (A), and the maximum vehicle capacity weight (B) in kilograms and pounds.

The Tire and Loading Information label also shows the size of the original equipment tires (C) and the recommended cold tire inflation pressures (D). For more information on tires and inflation see *Tires on page 5-60* and *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-67*.

There is also important loading information on the vehicle Certification/Tire label. It tells you the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for the front and rear axles. See “Certification/Tire Label” later in this section.

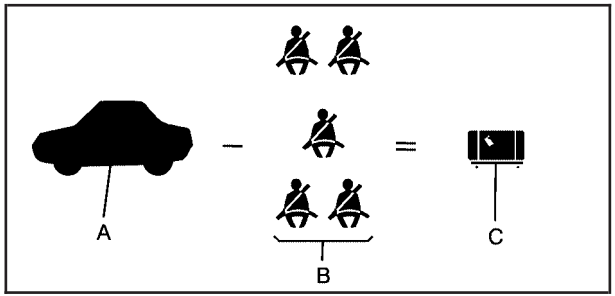
Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement “The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX pounds” on your vehicle’s placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kilograms or XXX pounds.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the “XXX” amount equals 1400 lbs and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs (1400 – 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs).
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, the load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle. See *Towing a Trailer on page 4-54* for important information on towing a trailer, towing safety rules and trailering tips.



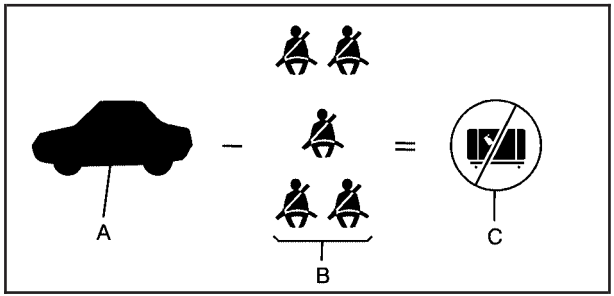
Example 1

Item	Description	Total
A	Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 1 =	1,000 lbs (453 kg)
B	Subtract Occupant Weight 150 lbs (68 kg) × 2 =	300 lbs (136 kg)
C	Available Occupant and Cargo Weight =	700 lbs (317 kg)



Example 2

Item	Description	Total
A	Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 2 =	1,000 lbs (453 kg)
B	Subtract Occupant Weight 150 lbs (68 kg) × 5 =	750 lbs (136 kg)
C	Available Cargo Weight =	250 lbs (113 kg)

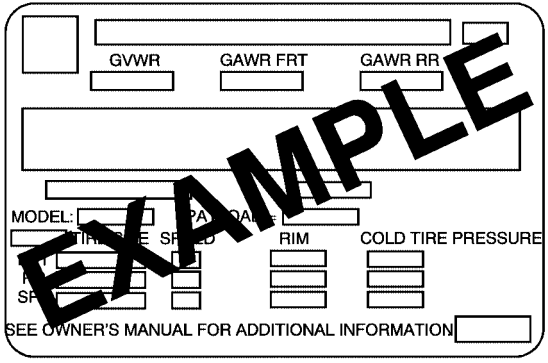


Example 3

Item	Description	Total
A	Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 3 =	1,000 lbs (453 kg)
B	Subtract Occupant Weight 200 lbs (91 kg) × 5 =	1,000 lbs (453 kg)
C	Available Cargo Weight =	0 lbs (0 kg)

Refer to your vehicle's tire and loading information label for specific information about your vehicle's capacity weight and seating positions. The combined weight of the driver, passengers and cargo should never exceed your vehicle's capacity weight.

Certification/Tire Label



A vehicle specific Certification/Tire label is attached to the rear edge of the driver's door. The label shows the size of your vehicle's original tires and the inflation pressures needed to obtain the gross weight capacity of your vehicle. This is called Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR). The GVWR includes the weight of the vehicle, all occupants, fuel and cargo.

The Certification/Tire label also tells you the maximum weights for the front and rear axles, called Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). To find out the actual loads on your front and rear axles, you need to go to a weigh station and weigh your vehicle. Your dealer can help you with this. Be sure to spread out your load equally on both sides of the centerline.

Never exceed the GVWR for your vehicle, or the GAWR for either the front or rear axle.

And, if you do have a heavy load, you should spread it out.

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not load your vehicle any heavier than the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), or either the maximum front or rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). If you do, parts on your vehicle can break, and it can change the way your vehicle handles. These could cause you to lose control and crash. Also, overloading can shorten the life of your vehicle.

Your warranty does not cover parts or components that fail because of overloading.

The label will help you decide how much cargo and installed equipment your truck can carry.

Using heavier suspension components to get added durability might not change your weight ratings. Ask your dealer to help you load your vehicle the right way.

If you put things inside your vehicle—like suitcases, tools, packages, or anything else—they go as fast as the vehicle goes. If you have to stop or turn quickly, or if there is a crash, they'll keep going.

⚠ CAUTION:

Things you put inside your vehicle can strike and injure people in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash.

- **Put things in the cargo area of your vehicle. Try to spread the weight evenly.**
- **Never stack heavier things, like suitcases, inside the vehicle so that some of them are above the tops of the seats.**
- **Do not leave an unsecured child restraint in your vehicle.**
- **When you carry something inside the vehicle, secure it whenever you can.**
- **Do not leave a seat folded down unless you need to.**

There's also important loading information for off-road driving in this manual. See "Loading Your Vehicle for Off-Road Driving" under *Operating Your All-Wheel-Drive Vehicle Off Paved Roads on page 4-18*.

Add-On Equipment

When you carry removable items, you may need to put a limit on how many people you can carry inside your vehicle. Be sure to weigh your vehicle before you buy and install the new equipment.

Notice: **Overloading your vehicle may cause damage. Repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Do not overload your vehicle.**

Remember not to exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) of the front or rear axle. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-47*.

Automatic Level Control

The automatic level control rear suspension comes as a part of the Road Sensing Suspension. See *Road Sensing Suspension on page 4-9*.

This type of level control is fully automatic and will provide a better leveled riding position as well as better handling under a variety of passenger and loading conditions. An air compressor connected to the rear shocks will raise or lower the rear of the vehicle to maintain proper vehicle height. The system is activated when the ignition key is turned to RUN and will automatically adjust vehicle height thereafter. The system may exhaust (lower vehicle height) for up to 10 minutes after the ignition key has been turned to LOCK. You may hear the air compressor operating when the height is being adjusted.

If a weight-distributing hitch is being used, it is recommended to allow the shocks to inflate, thereby leveling the vehicle prior to adjusting the height.

Towing

Towing Your Vehicle

Consult your dealer or a professional towing service if you need to have your disabled vehicle towed. See *Roadside Service on page 7-6*.

If you want to tow your vehicle behind another vehicle for recreational purposes (such as behind a motorhome), see Recreational Vehicle Towing following.

Recreational Vehicle Towing

Recreational vehicle towing means towing your vehicle behind another vehicle — such as behind a motorhome. The two most common types of recreational vehicle towing are known as “dinghy towing” (towing your vehicle with all four wheels on the ground) and “dolly towing” (towing your vehicle with two wheels on the ground and two wheels up on a device known as a “dolly”).

Dinghy Towing and Dolly Towing

All-Wheel Drive Vehicles

Your vehicle is not designed to be towed with any of the wheels on the ground. If your vehicle must be towed, see *Towing Your Vehicle on page 4-53*.

Notice: **Towing an all-wheel-drive vehicle with all four wheels on the ground, or even with only two of its wheels on the ground, will damage drivetrain components. Do not tow an all-wheel-drive vehicle if any of its wheels will be on the ground.**

Trailer Recommendations

You must subtract your hitch loads from the Cargo Weight Rating (CWR). CWR is the maximum weight of the load your vehicle can carry. It doesn't include the weight of the people inside. But you can figure about 150 lbs. (68 kg) for each seat. The total cargo load must not be more than your vehicle's CWR.

Weigh your vehicle with the trailer attached, so that you won't go over the GVWR or GAWR. If you are using a weight-distributing hitch, weigh the vehicle without the spring bars in place.

You'll get the best performance if you spread out the weight of your load the right way, and if you choose the correct hitch and trailer brakes.

For more information, see *Towing a Trailer on page 4-54*.

Towing a Trailer

Do not tow a trailer during break-in. See *New Vehicle Break-In on page 2-18* for more information.

⚠ CAUTION:

If you do not use the correct equipment and drive properly, you can lose control when you pull a trailer. For example, if the trailer is too heavy, the brakes may not work well — or even at all. You and your passengers could be seriously injured. You may also damage your vehicle; the resulting repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Pull a trailer only if you have followed all the steps in this section. Ask your dealer for advice and information about towing a trailer with your vehicle.

Notice: **Pulling a trailer improperly can damage your vehicle and result in costly repairs not covered by your warranty. To pull a trailer correctly, follow the advice in this part, and see your dealer for important information about towing a trailer with your vehicle.**

To identify the trailering capacity of your vehicle, you should read the information in “Weight of the Trailer” that appears later in this section.

If yours was built with trailering options, as many are, it’s ready for heavier trailers. But trailering is different than just driving your vehicle by itself. Trailering means changes in handling, acceleration, braking, durability and fuel economy. Successful, safe trailering takes correct equipment, and it has to be used properly.

That’s the reason for this part. In it are many time-tested, important trailering tips and safety rules. Many of these are important for your safety and that of your passengers. So please read this section carefully before you pull a trailer.

If You Do Decide To Pull A Trailer

If you do, here are some important points:

- There are many different laws, including speed limit restrictions, having to do with trailering. Make sure your rig will be legal, not only where you live but also where you’ll be driving. A good source for this information can be state or provincial police.
- Consider using a sway control. See “Hitches” later in this section.
- Don’t tow a trailer at all during the first 500 miles (800 km) your new vehicle is driven. Your engine, axle or other parts could be damaged.
- Then, during the first 500 miles (800 km) that you tow a trailer, don’t drive over 50 mph (80 km/h) and don’t make starts at full throttle. This helps your engine and other parts of your vehicle wear in at the heavier loads.
- You can tow in DRIVE (D). You may want to shift the transmission to THIRD (3) or, if necessary, a lower gear selection if the transmission shifts too often (e.g., under heavy loads and/or hilly conditions). See “Tow/Haul Mode” next.

Three important considerations have to do with weight:

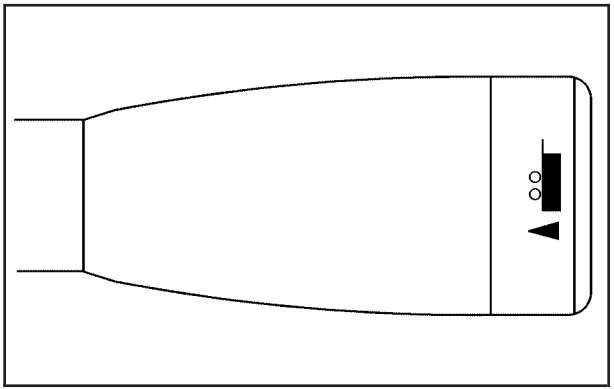
- the weight of the trailer
- the weight of the trailer tongue
- and the weight on your vehicle’s tires

Tow/Haul Mode

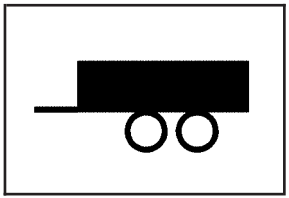
Tow/haul is designed to assist while your vehicle is pulling a large or heavy load or trailer. Tow/haul is most useful while pulling such a load in rolling terrain, in stop-and-go traffic, or when you need improved low-speed control, such as when parking. The purpose of the tow/haul mode is to do the following:

- Reduce the frequency and improve the predictability of transmission shifts when pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load.
- Provide the same solid shift feel when pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load as when the vehicle is unloaded.
- Improve control of vehicle speed while requiring less throttle pedal activity when pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load.

Tow/haul is designed to be most effective when the vehicle and trailer combined weight is at least 75% of the vehicle's Gross Combination Weight Rating (GCWR). See "Weight of the Trailer" later in this section.



Press the button at the end of the shift lever to enable/disable the tow/haul mode.



A light on the instrument panel will illuminate to indicate that tow/haul mode has been selected.

The vehicle will automatically turn off tow/haul every time it is started.

Driving with tow/haul activated without a heavy load or with no trailer will cause reduced fuel economy and unpleasant engine and transmission driving characteristics, but will not cause damage.

Operating the vehicle in tow/haul when lightly loaded or with no trailer at all will not cause damage. However, there is no benefit to the selection of tow/haul when the vehicle is unloaded. Such a selection when unloaded may result in unpleasant engine and transmission driving characteristics and reduced fuel economy. Tow/haul is recommended only when pulling a heavy trailer or a large or heavy load.

Weight of the Trailer

How heavy can a trailer safely be?

It depends on how you plan to use your rig. For example, speed, altitude, road grades, outside temperature and how much your vehicle is used to pull a trailer are all important. And, it can also depend on any special equipment that you have on your vehicle.

Use one of the following charts to determine how much your vehicle can weigh, based upon your vehicle model and options.

Maximum trailer weight is calculated assuming only the driver is in the tow vehicle and it has all the required trailering equipment. The weight of additional optional equipment, passengers and cargo in the tow vehicle must be subtracted from the maximum trailer weight.

Vehicle	Axle Ratio	Max. Trailer Wt.	**GCWR
Escalade 2WD 5.3L	3.73	7,400 lbs (3 357 kg)	13,000 lbs (5 897 kg)
Escalade AWD 6.0L	3.73	8,100 lbs (3 674 kg)	14,000 lbs (6 350 kg)
Escalade ESV AWD 6.0L	3.73	7,800 lbs (3 538 kg)	14,000 lbs (6 350 kg)
Escalade ESV Platinum AWD 6.0L	3.73	7,400 lbs (3 357 kg)	14,000 lbs (6 350 kg)
**The Gross Combination Weight Rating (GCWR) is the total allowable weight of the completely loaded vehicle and trailer including any passengers, cargo, equipment and conversions. The GCWR for your vehicle should not be exceeded.			

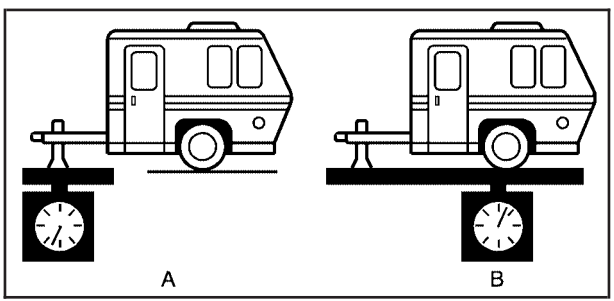
You can ask your dealer for our trailering information or advice, or you can write us at the address listed in your Warranty and Owner Assistance Information Booklet.

In Canada, write to:

General Motors of Canada Limited
Customer Communication Centre, 163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa,
Ontario L1H 8P7

Weight of the Trailer Tongue

The tongue load (A) of any trailer is an important weight to measure because it affects the total or gross weight of your vehicle. The Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) includes the curb weight of the vehicle, any cargo you may carry in it, and the people who will be riding in the vehicle. If you have a lot of options, equipment, passengers or cargo in your vehicle, it will reduce the tongue weight your vehicle can carry, which will also reduce the trailer weight your vehicle can tow. And if you will tow a trailer, you must add the tongue load to the GVW because your vehicle will be carrying that weight, too. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-47* for more information about your vehicle's maximum load capacity.



The trailer tongue weight (A) should be 10 percent to 15 percent of the total loaded trailer weight (B), up to a maximum of 600 lbs (272 kg) with a weight carrying hitch. The trailer tongue weight (A) should be 10 percent to 15 percent of the total loaded trailer weight (B), up to the maximum of 1,000 lbs (454 kg) with a weight distributing hitch.

Do not exceed the maximum allowable tongue weight for your vehicle. Choose the shortest hitch extension that will position the hitch ball closest to the vehicle. This will help reduce the effect of trailer tongue weight on the rear axle.

After you've loaded your trailer, weigh the trailer and then the tongue, separately, to see if the weights are proper. If they aren't, you may be able to get them right simply by moving some items around in the trailer.

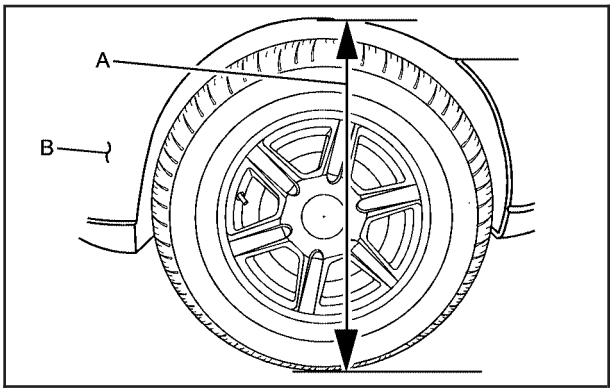
Total Weight on Your Vehicle's Tires

Be sure your vehicle's tires are inflated to the upper limit for cold tires. You'll find these numbers on the Certification label at the rear edge of the driver's door or see *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-47*. Then be sure you don't go over the GVW limit for your vehicle, or the GAWR, including the weight of the trailer tongue. If you use a weight distributing hitch, make sure you don't go over the rear axle limit before you apply the weight distribution spring bars.

Hitches

It's important to have the correct hitch equipment. Crosswinds, large trucks going by and rough roads are a few reasons why you'll need the right hitch.

Weight-Distributing Hitches and Weight Carrying Hitches



(A) Body-to-Ground Distance (B) Front of Vehicle

When using a weight-distributing hitch, the hitch must be adjusted so that the distance (A) remains the same both before and after coupling the trailer to the tow vehicle.

If you'll be pulling a trailer that, when loaded, will weigh more than 5,000 lbs (2 270 kg) be sure to use a properly mounted weight-distributing hitch and sway control of the proper size. This equipment is very important for proper vehicle loading and good handling when driving. You should always use a sway control if your trailer will weigh more than these limits. You can ask a hitch dealer about sway controls.

Safety Chains

You should always attach chains between your vehicle and your trailer. Cross the safety chains under the tongue of the trailer to help prevent the tongue from contacting the road if it becomes separated from the hitch. Always leave just enough slack so you can turn with your rig. Never allow safety chains to drag on the ground.

Trailer Brakes

If your trailer weighs more than 2,000 lbs (900 kg) loaded, then it needs its own brakes — and they must be adequate. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for the trailer brakes so you'll be able to install, adjust and maintain them properly.

Since your vehicle is equipped with StabiliTrak®, your trailer brake system cannot tap into the vehicle's hydraulic brake system.

Driving with a Trailer

⚠ CAUTION:

If you have a rear-most window open and you pull a trailer with your vehicle, carbon monoxide (CO) could come into your vehicle. You can not see or smell CO. It can cause unconsciousness or death. See *Engine Exhaust on page 2-28*. To maximize your safety when towing a trailer:

- **Have your exhaust system inspected for leaks, and make necessary repairs before starting on your trip.**
- **Keep the rear-most windows closed.**
- **If exhaust does come into your vehicle through a window in the rear or another opening, drive with your front, main heating or cooling system on and with the fan on any speed. This will bring fresh, outside air into your vehicle. Do not use the climate control setting for maximum air because it only recirculates the air inside your vehicle. See *Dual Automatic Climate Control System on page 3-22*.**

Towing a trailer requires a certain amount of experience. Before setting out for the open road, you'll want to get to know your rig. Acquaint yourself with the feel of handling and braking with the added weight of the trailer. And always keep in mind that the vehicle you are driving is now a good deal longer and not nearly as responsive as your vehicle is by itself.

Before you start, check all trailer hitch parts and attachments, safety chains, electrical connector, lamps, tires and mirror adjustment. If the trailer has electric brakes, start your vehicle and trailer moving and then apply the trailer brake controller by hand to be sure the brakes are working. This lets you check your electrical connection at the same time.

During your trip, check occasionally to be sure that the load is secure, and that the lamps and any trailer brakes are still working.

Following Distance

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving your vehicle without a trailer. This can help you avoid situations that require heavy braking and sudden turns.

Passing

You'll need more passing distance up ahead when you're towing a trailer. And, because you're a good deal longer, you'll need to go much farther beyond the passed vehicle before you can return to your lane.

Backing Up

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. Then, to move the trailer to the left, just move that hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move your hand to the right. Always back up slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

Making Turns

Notice: **Making very sharp turns while trailering could cause the trailer to come in contact with the vehicle. Your vehicle could be damaged. Avoid making very sharp turns while trailering.**

When you're turning with a trailer, make wider turns than normal. Do this so your trailer won't strike soft shoulders, curbs, road signs, trees or other objects. Avoid jerky or sudden maneuvers. Signal well in advance.

Turn Signals When Towing a Trailer

The arrows on your instrument panel will flash whenever you signal a turn or lane change. Properly hooked up, the trailer lamps will also flash, telling other drivers you're about to turn, change lanes or stop.

When towing a trailer, the arrows on your instrument panel will flash for turns even if the bulbs on the trailer are burned out. Thus, you may think drivers behind you are seeing your signal when they are not. It's important to check occasionally to be sure the trailer bulbs are still working.

Driving On Grades

Reduce speed and shift to a lower gear *before* you start down a long or steep downgrade. If you don't shift down, you might have to use your brakes so much that they would get hot and no longer work well.

You can tow in DRIVE (D). You may want to shift the transmission to THIRD (3) or, if necessary, a lower gear selection if the transmission shifts too often (e.g. under heavy loads and/or hilly conditions).

You may also want to activate the tow/haul mode if the transmission shifts too often.
See "Tow/Haul Mode" earlier.

When towing at high altitude on steep uphill grades, consider the following: Engine coolant will boil at a lower temperature than at normal altitudes. If you turn your engine off immediately after towing at high altitude on steep uphill grades, your vehicle may show signs similar to engine overheating. To avoid this, let the engine run while parked (preferably on level ground) with the automatic transmission in PARK (P) for a few minutes before turning the engine off. If you do get the overheat warning, see *Engine Overheating on page 5-26*.

Parking on Hills

⚠ CAUTION:

You really should not park your vehicle, with a trailer attached, on a hill. If something goes wrong, your rig could start to move. People can be injured, and both your vehicle and the trailer can be damaged.

But if you ever have to park your rig on a hill, here's how to do it:

1. Apply your regular brakes, but don't shift into PARK (P) yet.
2. Have someone place chocks under the trailer wheels.
3. When the wheel chocks are in place, release the regular brakes until the chocks absorb the load.
4. Reapply the regular brakes. Then apply your parking brake and shift into PARK (P).
5. Release the regular brakes.

When You Are Ready to Leave After Parking on a Hill

1. Apply your regular brakes and hold the pedal down while you:
   - start your engine,
   - shift into a gear, and
   - release the parking brake.
2. Let up on the brake pedal.
3. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
4. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

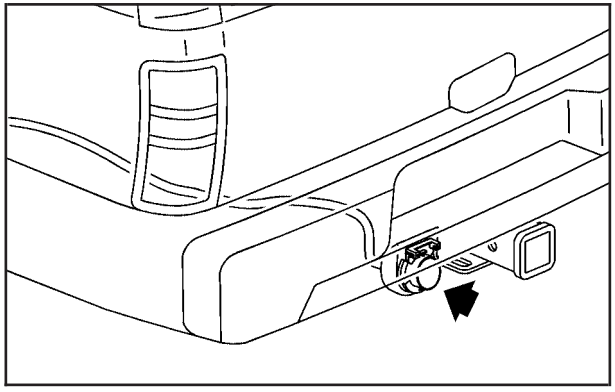
Maintenance When Trailer Towing

Your vehicle will need service more often when you're pulling a trailer. See the Maintenance Schedule for more on this. Things that are especially important in trailer operation are automatic transmission fluid (don't overfill), engine oil, axle lubricant, belts, cooling system and brake system. Each of these is covered in this manual, and the Index will help you find them quickly. If you're trailering, it's a good idea to review these sections before you start your trip.

Check periodically to see that all hitch nuts and bolts are tight.

Trailer Wiring Harness

Heavy-Duty Trailer Wiring Package



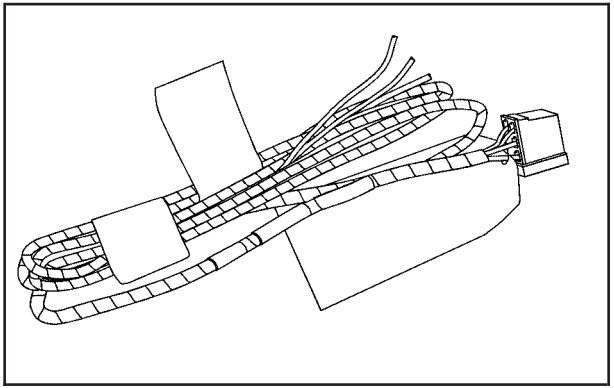
Your vehicle is equipped with the seven-wire trailer towing harness. This harness with a seven-pin universal heavy-duty trailer connector is attached to a bracket on the hitch platform.

The Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL) wire is tied next to the trailer wiring harness for use with a trailer.

The seven-wire harness contains the following trailer circuits:

- Yellow: Left Stop/Turn Signal
- Dark Green: Right Stop/Turn Signal
- Brown: Taillamps
- White: Ground
- Light Green: Back-up Lamps
- Red: Battery Feed
- Dark Blue: Trailer Brake

Electric Brake Control Jumper



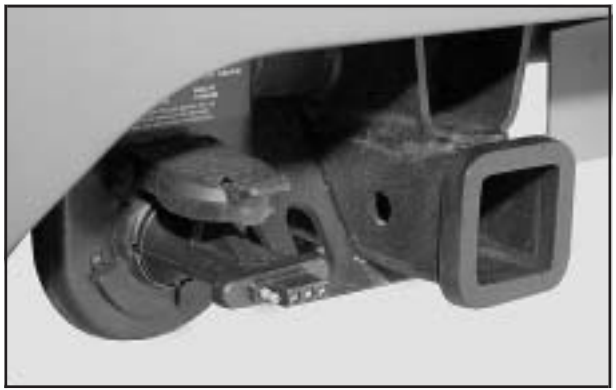
This harness may be included with your vehicle as part of the heavy-duty trailer wiring package.

This harness is for an electric brake controller and includes a trailer battery feed fuse. It should be installed by your dealer or a qualified service center.

Four-Wire Harness Adapter

This adapter may be included with your vehicle as part of the heavy-duty trailer wiring package.

Use this adapter to connect a standard four-way round pin connector to the seven-wire harness on your vehicle.



Connect the adapter with the tab pointing up. The flip cap on the vehicle's seven-wire harness will lock onto the tab and help hold the adapter in place. Plug the four-way round pin connector onto the adapter.

NOTES

Section 5 Service and Appearance Care

Service 5-3
Doing Your Own Service Work 5-4
Adding Equipment to the Outside of Your Vehicle 5-4

Fuel 5-5
Gasoline Octane 5-5
Gasoline Specifications 5-5
California Fuel 5-6
Additives 5-6
Fuels in Foreign Countries 5-7
Filling Your Tank 5-8
Filling a Portable Fuel Container 5-10

Checking Things Under the Hood 5-10
Hood Release 5-11
Engine Compartment Overview 5-12
Engine Oil 5-13
Engine Oil Life System 5-16
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter 5-18
Automatic Transmission Fluid 5-20
Engine Coolant 5-23
Coolant Surge Tank Pressure Cap 5-26
Engine Overheating 5-26
Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode 5-28
Cooling System 5-29
Engine Fan Noise 5-34
Power Steering Fluid 5-34
Windshield Washer Fluid 5-35
Brakes 5-36
Battery 5-40
Jump Starting 5-41

All-Wheel Drive 5-45

Rear Axle 5-46

Front Axle 5-47

Headlamp Aiming 5-48
Headlamp Horizontal Aiming 5-49
Headlamp Vertical Aiming 5-50

Bulb Replacement 5-51
High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting 5-51
Halogen Bulbs 5-52
Headlamps 5-52
Front Turn Signal, Sidemarker and Daytime Running Lamps 5-56
Taillamps 5-57
Replacement Bulbs 5-58

Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement 5-59

Tires 5-60
Tire Sidewall Labelling 5-61
Tire Terminology and Definitions 5-64

Section 5 Service and Appearance Care

Inflation - Tire Pressure 5-67
Tire Pressure Monitor System 5-68
Tire Inspection and Rotation 5-71
When It Is Time for New Tires 5-73
Buying New Tires 5-74
Uniform Tire Quality Grading 5-75
Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance 5-76
Wheel Replacement 5-76
Tire Chains 5-78
If a Tire Goes Flat 5-78
Changing a Flat Tire 5-79
Removing the Spare Tire and Tools 5-80
Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire 5-84
Secondary Latch System 5-90
Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools 5-94
Spare Tire 5-98

Appearance Care 5-99
Fabric/Carpet 5-99
Vinyl 5-101
Leather 5-101
Instrument Panel 5-101
Interior Plastic Components 5-101
Wood Panels 5-101
Speaker Covers 5-102
Glass Surfaces 5-102
Care of Safety Belts 5-102
Weatherstrips 5-102
Washing Your Vehicle 5-103
Cleaning Exterior Lamps/Lenses 5-103
Finish Care 5-103
Windshield, Backglass, and Wiper Blades 5-104
Aluminum or Chrome-Plated Wheels 5-104
Tires 5-105
Sheet Metal Damage 5-105
Finish Damage 5-105
Underbody Maintenance 5-106
Chemical Paint Spotting 5-106
Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials 5-106

Vehicle Identification 5-107
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 5-107
Service Parts Identification Label 5-108

Electrical System 5-108
Add-On Electrical Equipment 5-108
Windshield Wiper Fuses 5-108
Power Windows and Other Power Options 5-108
Fuses and Circuit Breakers 5-109
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 5-109
Center Instrument Panel Fuse Block 5-112
Underhood Fuse Block 5-113

Capacities and Specifications 5-119

Service

Your dealer knows your vehicle best and wants you to be happy with it. We hope you will go to your dealer for all your service needs. You will get genuine GM parts and GM-trained and supported service people.

We hope you will want to keep your GM vehicle all GM. Genuine GM parts have one of these marks:

California Proposition 65 Warning

Most motor vehicles, including this one, contain and/or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. Engine exhaust, many parts and systems (including some inside the vehicle), many fluids, and some component wear by-products contain and/or emit these chemicals.

Doing Your Own Service Work

If you want to do some of your own service work, you will want to use the proper service manual. It tells you much more about how to service your vehicle than this manual can. To order the proper service manual, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 7-13*.

Your vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to do your own service work, see *Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 1-85*.

You should keep a record with all parts receipts and list the mileage and the date of any service work you perform. See *Maintenance Record on page 6-16*.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be injured and your vehicle could be damaged if you try to do service work on a vehicle without knowing enough about it.

- **Be sure you have sufficient knowledge, experience, the proper replacement parts and tools before you attempt any vehicle maintenance task.**
- **Be sure to use the proper nuts, bolts and other fasteners. English and metric fasteners can be easily confused. If you use the wrong fasteners, parts can later break or fall off. You could be hurt.**

Adding Equipment to the Outside of Your Vehicle

Things you might add to the outside of your vehicle can affect the airflow around it. This may cause wind noise and affect windshield washer performance. Check with your dealer before adding equipment to the outside of your vehicle.

Fuel

The 8th digit of your vehicle identification number (VIN) shows the code letter or number that identifies your engine. You will find the VIN at the top left of the instrument panel. See *Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) on page 5-107*.

Gasoline Octane

If your vehicle has the 5.3L engine (VIN Code T), use regular unleaded gasoline with a posted octane of 87 or higher. If the octane is less than 87, you may get a heavy knocking noise when you drive. If this occurs, use a gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher as soon as possible. Otherwise, you might damage your engine. A little pinging noise when you accelerate or drive uphill is considered normal. This does not indicate a problem exists or that a higher-octane fuel is necessary. If you are using 87 octane or higher-octane fuel and you hear heavy knocking, your engine needs service.

If your vehicle has the 6.0L HO engine (VIN Code N), use premium unleaded gasoline with a posted octane of 91 or higher for best performance. You may also use middle grade or regular unleaded gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher, but your vehicle's acceleration may be slightly reduced. If the octane is less than 87, you may get a heavy knocking noise when you drive. If this occurs, use a gasoline rated at 87 octane or higher as soon as possible. Otherwise, you might damage your engine.

Gasoline Specifications

It is recommended that gasoline meet specifications which were developed by automobile manufacturers around the world and contained in the World-Wide Fuel Charter which is available from the Alliance of Automobile Manufacturers at www.autoalliance.org/fuel_charter.htm. Gasoline meeting these specifications could provide improved driveability and emission control system performance compared to other gasoline.

California Fuel

If your vehicle is certified to meet California Emission Standards (see the underhood emission control label), it is designed to operate on fuels that meet California specifications. If this fuel is not available in states adopting California emissions standards, your vehicle will operate satisfactorily on fuels meeting federal specifications, but emission control system performance may be affected. The malfunction indicator lamp may turn on and your vehicle may fail a smog-check test. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 3-42*. If this occurs, return to your authorized GM dealer for diagnosis. If it is determined that the condition is caused by the type of fuel used, repairs may not be covered by your warranty.

Additives

To provide cleaner air, all gasolines in the United States are now required to contain additives that will help prevent engine and fuel system deposits from forming, allowing your emission control system to work properly. In most cases, you should not have to add anything to your fuel. However, some gasolines contain only the minimum amount of additive required to meet U.S. Environmental Protection Agency regulations. General Motors recommends that you buy gasolines that are advertised to help keep fuel injectors and intake valves clean. If your vehicle experiences problems due to dirty injectors or valves, try a different brand of gasoline. Also, your GM dealer has additives that will help correct and prevent most deposit-related problems.

Gasolines containing oxygenates, such as ethers and ethanol, and reformulated gasolines may be available in your area to contribute to clean air. General Motors recommends that you use these gasolines, particularly if they comply with the specifications described earlier.

Notice: **Your vehicle was not designed for fuel that contains methanol. Do not use fuel containing methanol. It can corrode metal parts in your fuel system and also damage the plastic and rubber parts. That damage would not be covered under your warranty.**

Some gasolines that are not reformulated for low emissions may contain an octane-enhancing additive called methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT); ask the attendant where you buy gasoline whether the fuel contains MMT. General Motors does not recommend the use of such gasolines. Fuels containing MMT can reduce the life of spark plugs and the performance of the emission control system may be affected. The malfunction indicator lamp may turn on. If this occurs, return to your authorized GM dealer for service.

Fuels in Foreign Countries

If you plan on driving in another country outside the United States or Canada, the proper fuel may be hard to find. Never use leaded gasoline or any other fuel not recommended in the previous text on fuel. Costly repairs caused by use of improper fuel would not be covered by your warranty.

To check the fuel availability, ask an auto club, or contact a major oil company that does business in the country where you will be driving.

Filling Your Tank

⚠ CAUTION:

Fuel vapor burns violently and a fuel fire can cause bad injuries. To help avoid injuries to you and others, read and follow all the instructions on the pump island. Turn off your engine when you are refueling. Do not smoke if you are near fuel or refueling your vehicle. Keep sparks, flames and smoking materials away from fuel. Do not leave the fuel pump unattended when refueling your vehicle — this is against the law in some places. Keep children away from the fuel pump; never let children pump fuel.

The tethered fuel cap is located behind a hinged fuel door on the driver's side of the vehicle.

To remove the fuel cap, turn it slowly to the left (counterclockwise). It will require more effort to turn the fuel cap on the last turn as you loosen it.

⚠ CAUTION:

If you spill fuel and then something ignites it, you could be badly burned. Fuel can spray out on you if you open the fuel cap too quickly. This spray can happen if your tank is nearly full, and is more likely in hot weather. Open the fuel cap slowly and wait for any hiss noise to stop. Then unscrew the cap all the way.

If your vehicle is a dual fuel tank chassis cab model, and it runs out of fuel, refuel the front fuel tank first to ensure a quick restart.

Be careful not to spill fuel. Do not top off or overfill the tank and wait a few seconds after you have finished pumping before removing the nozzle. Clean fuel from painted surfaces as soon as possible. See *Washing Your Vehicle on page 5-103*.

When replacing the fuel cap, turn it to the right (clockwise) until it clicks. It will require more effort to turn the fuel cap on the last turn as you tighten it. Make sure the cap is fully installed. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. This would allow fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 3-42*.

⚠ CAUTION:

If a fire starts while you are refueling, do not remove the nozzle. Shut off the flow of fuel by shutting off the pump or by notifying the station attendant. Leave the area immediately.

Notice: **If you need a new fuel cap, be sure to get the right type. Your dealer can get one for you. If you get the wrong type, it may not fit properly. This may cause your malfunction indicator lamp to light and may damage your fuel tank and emissions system. See *Malfunction Indicator Lamp on page 3-42*.**

Filling a Portable Fuel Container

⚠ CAUTION:

Never fill a portable fuel container while it is in your vehicle. Static electricity discharge from the container can ignite the gasoline vapor. You can be badly burned and your vehicle damaged if this occurs. To help avoid injury to you and others:

- **Dispense gasoline only into approved containers.**
- **Do not fill a container while it is inside a vehicle, in a vehicle's trunk, pickup bed or on any surface other than the ground.**
- **Bring the fill nozzle in contact with the inside of the fill opening before operating the nozzle. Contact should be maintained until the filling is complete.**
- **Do not smoke while pumping gasoline.**

Checking Things Under the Hood

⚠ CAUTION:

An electric fan under the hood can start up and injure you even when the engine is not running. Keep hands, clothing and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

⚠ CAUTION:

Things that burn can get on hot engine parts and start a fire. These include liquids like fuel, oil, coolant, brake fluid, windshield washer and other fluids, and plastic or rubber. You or others could be burned. Be careful not to drop or spill things that will burn onto a hot engine.

Hood Release

To open the hood do the following:

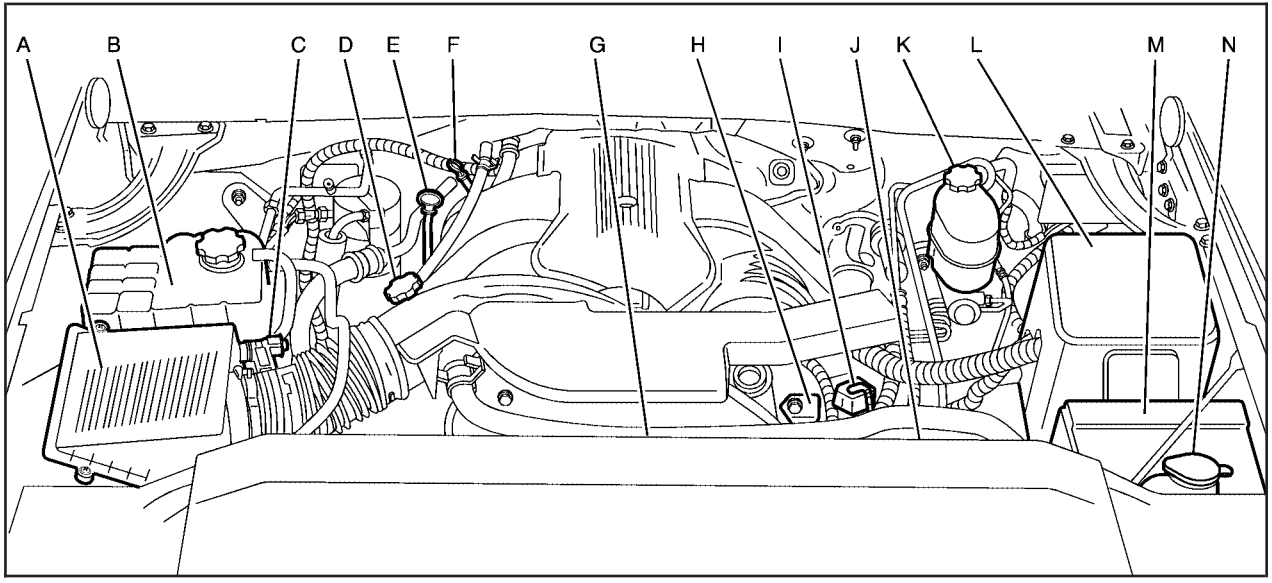
1. Pull the handle located inside the vehicle to the lower left of the steering wheel.

2. Then go to the front of the vehicle and pull up on the secondary hood release located near the center of the grille.
3. Lift the hood.

   Before closing the hood, be sure all the filler caps are on properly. Then pull down the hood and close it firmly.

Engine Compartment Overview

When you open the hood on the VORTEC™ 6000 High-Output V8 engine, here is what you will see:



A. Engine Air Cleaner/Filter. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 5-18*.

B. Coolant Surge Tank and Pressure Cap. See *Cooling System on page 5-29* and *Coolant Surge Tank Pressure Cap on page 5-26*.

C. Air Filter Restriction Indicator (If Equipped). See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 5-18*.

D. Engine Oil Fill Cap. See “When to Add Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 5-13*.

E. Engine Oil Dipstick. See “Checking Engine Oil” under *Engine Oil on page 5-13*.

F. Automatic Transmission Fluid Dipstick. See “Checking the Fluid Level” under *Automatic Transmission Fluid on page 5-20*.

G. Electric Engine Cooling Fan (If Equipped). See *Cooling System on page 5-29*.

H. Remote Negative (–) Terminal (GND). See *Jump Starting on page 5-41*.

I. Remote Positive (+) Terminal. See *Jump Starting on page 5-41*.

J. Power Steering Fluid Reservoir (Out of View). See *Power Steering Fluid on page 5-34*.

K. Brake Fluid Reservoir. See “Brake Fluid” under *Brakes on page 5-36*.

L. Underhood Fuse Block. See *Underhood Fuse Block on page 5-113*.

M. Battery. See *Battery on page 5-40*.

N. Windshield Washer Fluid Reservoir. See “Adding Washer Fluid” under *Windshield Washer Fluid on page 5-35*.

Engine Oil

If the CHECK OIL LEVEL message appears on the Driver Information Center (DIC), it means you need to check your engine oil level right away. For more information, see CHECK OIL LEVEL under *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-53*.

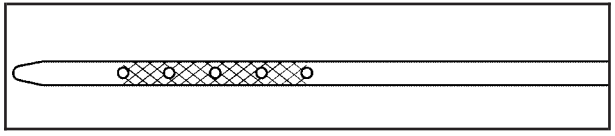
You should check your engine oil level regularly; this is an added reminder.

Checking Engine Oil

It is a good idea to check your engine oil every time you get fuel. In order to get an accurate reading, the oil must be warm and the vehicle must be on level ground.

The engine oil dipstick handle is a yellow loop. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for the location of the engine oil dipstick.

1. Turn off the engine and give the oil several minutes to drain back into the oil pan. If you do not do this, the oil dipstick might not show the actual level.
2. Pull out the dipstick and clean it with a paper towel or cloth, then push it back in all the way. Remove it again, keeping the tip down, and check the level.



When to Add Engine Oil

If the oil is at or below the cross-hatched area at the tip of the dipstick, then you will need to add at least one quart of oil. But you must use the right kind. This section explains what kind of oil to use. For engine oil crankcase capacity, see *Capacities and Specifications on page 5-119*.

Notice: **Do not add too much oil. If your engine has so much oil that the oil level gets above the cross-hatched area that shows the proper operating range, your engine could be damaged.**

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for the location of the engine oil fill cap.

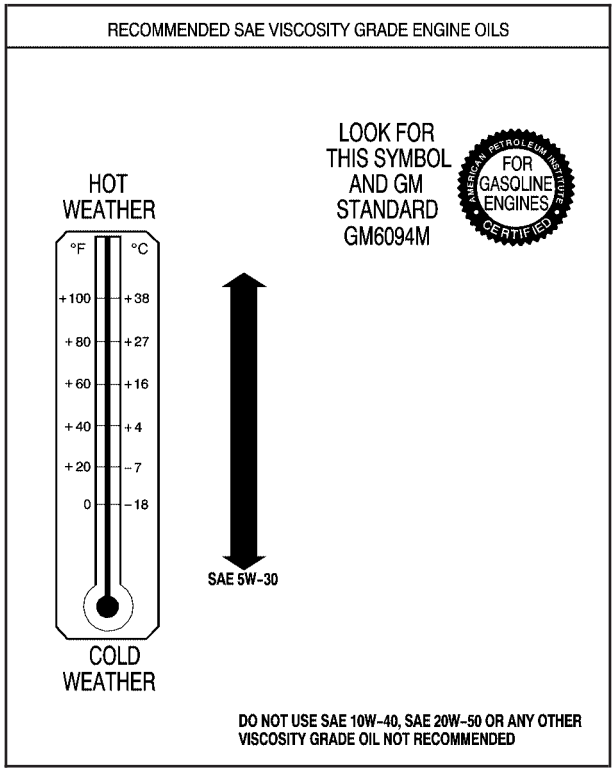
Be sure to add enough oil to put the level somewhere in the proper operating range. Push the dipstick all the way back in when you are through.

What Kind of Engine Oil to Use

Look for two things:

- GM6094M

  Your vehicle's engine requires oil meeting GM Standard GM6094M. You should look for and use only an oil that meets GM Standard GM6094M.



- SAE 5W-30

  As shown in the viscosity chart, SAE 5W-30 is best for your vehicle.

  These numbers on an oil container show its viscosity, or thickness. Do not use other viscosity oils such as SAE 20W-50.

Oils meeting these requirements should also have the starburst symbol on the container. This symbol indicates that the oil has been certified by the American Petroleum Institute (API).

You should look for this information on the oil container, and use *only* those oils that are identified as meeting GM Standard GM6094M and have the starburst symbol on the front of the oil container.

Notice: **Use only engine oil identified as meeting GM Standard GM6094M and showing the American Petroleum Institute Certified For Gasoline Engines starburst symbol. Failure to use the recommended oil can result in engine damage not covered by your warranty.**

GM Goodwrench® oil meets all the requirements for your vehicle.

If you are in an area of extreme cold, where the temperature falls below –20°F (–29°C), it is recommended that you use either an SAE 5W-30 synthetic oil or an SAE 0W-30 oil. Both will provide easier cold starting and better protection for your engine at extremely low temperatures.

Engine Oil Additives

Do not add anything to your oil. The recommended oils with the starburst symbol that meet GM Standard GM6094M are all you will need for good performance and engine protection.

Engine Oil Life System

When to Change Engine Oil

Your vehicle has a computer system that lets you know when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on engine revolutions and engine temperature, and not on mileage. Based on driving conditions, the mileage at which an oil change will be indicated can vary considerably. For the oil life system to work properly, you must reset the system every time the oil is changed.

When the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, it will indicate that an oil change is necessary. A CHANGE ENGINE OIL message will come on. Change your oil as soon as possible within the next 600 miles (1 000 km). It is possible that, if you are driving under the best conditions, the oil life system may not indicate that an oil change is necessary for over a year. However, your engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and at this time the system must be reset. Your dealer has GM-trained service people who will perform this work using genuine GM parts and reset the system. It is also important to check your oil regularly and keep it at the proper level.

If the system is ever reset accidentally, you must change your oil at 3,000 miles (5 000 km) since your last oil change. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed.

How to Reset the Engine Oil Life System

The Engine Oil Life System calculates when to change your engine oil and filter based on vehicle use. Anytime your oil is changed, reset the system so it can calculate when the next oil change is required. If a situation occurs where you change your oil prior to a CHANGE ENGINE OIL message being turned on, reset the system.

To reset the CHANGE ENGINE OIL message, see “Engine Oil Life System” under *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-50* for vehicles equipped with the DIC, or do the following:

1. Turn the ignition key to RUN with the engine off.
2. Fully press and release the accelerator pedal slowly three times within five seconds.

   If the OIL LIFE RESET message flashes for 10 seconds, the system is resetting.
3. Turn the key to LOCK.

If the CHANGE ENGINE OIL message comes back on when you start your vehicle, the engine oil life system has not reset. Repeat the procedure. If it still does not reset, see your dealer for service.

What to Do with Used Oil

Used engine oil contains certain elements that may be unhealthy for your skin and could even cause cancer. Do not let used oil stay on your skin for very long. Clean your skin and nails with soap and water, or a good hand cleaner. Wash or properly dispose of clothing or rags containing used engine oil. See the manufacturer’s warnings about the use and disposal of oil products.

Used oil can be a threat to the environment. If you change your own oil, be sure to drain all the oil from the filter before disposal. Never dispose of oil by putting it in the trash, pouring it on the ground, into sewers, or into streams or bodies of water. Instead, recycle it by taking it to a place that collects used oil. If you have a problem properly disposing of your used oil, ask your dealer, a service station or a local recycling center for help.

Engine Air Cleaner/Filter

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for the location of the engine air cleaner/filter and the air filter restriction indicator, if equipped.

When to Inspect

If your vehicle is equipped with an air filter restriction indicator, it lets you know when the engine air cleaner/filter needs to be replaced. On vehicles with a restriction indicator, you should inspect the air filter restriction indicator at every oil change and replace the engine air cleaner/filter when the indicator tells you to.

On vehicles without an air filter restriction indicator, inspect the air cleaner/filter at the Maintenance II intervals and replace it at the first oil change after 50,000 miles (83 000 km). See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4* for more information. If you are driving in dusty/dirty conditions, inspect the filter at each engine oil change.

How to Inspect

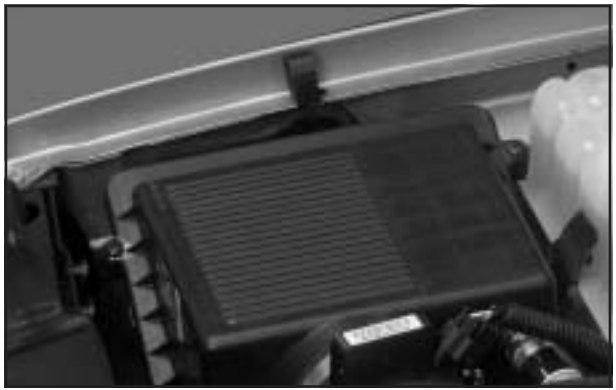
Vehicles with an Air Filter Restriction Indicator

Locate the air filter restriction indicator on the engine air cleaner/filter cover. When the indicator turns black or is in the red/orange “change” zone, replace the filter and reset the indicator. See the steps following to replace the engine air cleaner/filter and to reset the air filter restriction indicator.

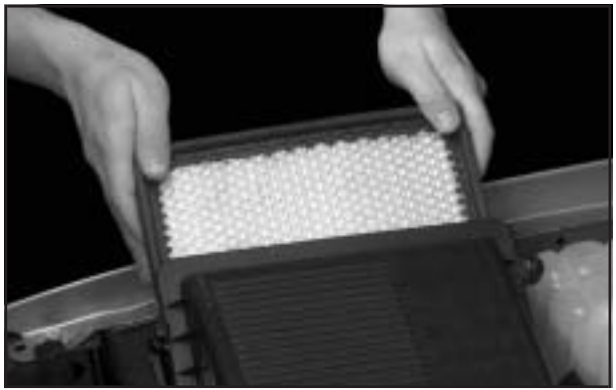
Vehicles without an Air Filter Restriction Indicator

To inspect the air cleaner/filter, remove the engine air cleaner/filter from the vehicle using the steps following. When you have the engine air cleaner/filter removed, lightly shake it to release loose dust and dirt. If the engine air cleaner/filter remains caked with dirt, a new filter is required.

Replacing the Engine Air Cleaner/Filter and Resetting the Air Filter Restriction Indicator



1. Locate the air cleaner/filter assembly on the front corner of the engine compartment on the passenger's side of the vehicle.
2. Loosen the screws on the cover of the housing and lift up the cover.



3. Remove the engine air cleaner/filter from the housing. Care should be taken to dislodge as little dirt as possible.
4. Clean the engine air cleaner/filter sealing surfaces and the housing.
5. Inspect or replace the engine air cleaner/filter.

6. Reinstall the cover and tighten the screws.
7. Reset the air filter restriction indicator, if equipped, by pressing the top button on the indicator.

⚠ CAUTION:

Operating the engine with the air cleaner/filter off can cause you or others to be burned. The air cleaner not only cleans the air; it helps to stop flame if the engine backfires. If it is not there and the engine backfires, you could be burned. Do not drive with it off, and be careful working on the engine with the air cleaner/filter off.

Automatic Transmission Fluid

When to Check and Change

A good time to check your automatic transmission fluid level is when the engine oil is changed.

Change both the fluid and filter every 50,000 miles (83 000 km) if the vehicle is mainly driven under one or more of these conditions:

- In heavy city traffic where the outside temperature regularly reaches 90°F (32°C) or higher.
- In hilly or mountainous terrain.
- When doing frequent trailer towing.
- Uses such as found in taxi, police or delivery service.

If you do not use your vehicle under any of these conditions, change the fluid and filter every 100,000 miles (166 000 km).

See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4*.

How to Check

Because this operation can be a little difficult, you may choose to have this done at the dealership service department.

If you do it yourself, be sure to follow all the instructions here, or you could get a false reading on the dipstick.

Notice: **Too much or too little fluid can damage your transmission. Too much can mean that some of the fluid could come out and fall on hot engine part or exhaust system parts, starting a fire. Too little fluid could cause the transmission to overheat. Be sure to get an accurate reading if you check your transmission fluid.**

Wait at least 30 minutes before checking the transmission fluid level if you have been driving:

- When outside temperatures are above 90°F (32°C).
- At high speed for quite a while.
- In heavy traffic — especially in hot weather.
- While pulling a trailer.

To get the right reading, the fluid should be at normal operating temperature, which is 180°F to 200°F (82°C to 93°C).

Get the vehicle warmed up by driving about 15 miles (24 km) when outside temperatures are above 50°F (10°C). If it is colder than 50°F (10°C), drive the vehicle in THIRD (3) until the engine temperature gage moves and then remains steady for 10 minutes.

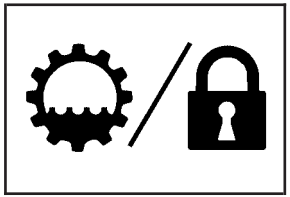
A cold fluid check can be made after the vehicle has been sitting for eight hours or more with the engine off, but this is used only as a reference. Let the engine run at idle for five minutes if outside temperatures are 50°F (10°C) or more. If it is colder than 50°F (10°C), you may have to idle the engine longer. Should the fluid level be low during this cold check, you *must* check the fluid hot before adding fluid. Checking the fluid hot will give you a more accurate reading of the fluid level.

Checking the Fluid Level

Prepare your vehicle as follows:

- Park your vehicle on a level place. Keep the engine running.
- With the parking brake applied, place the shift lever in PARK (P).
- With your foot on the brake pedal, move the shift lever through each gear range, pausing for about three seconds in each range. Then, position the shift lever in PARK (P).
- Let the engine run at idle for three minutes or more.

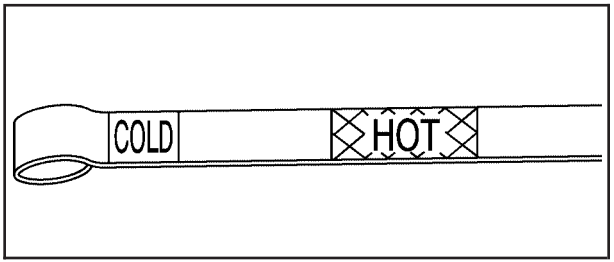
Then, without shutting off the engine, follow these steps:



The transmission dipstick handle with this graphic is located at the rear of the engine compartment, on the passenger's side of the vehicle.

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for more information on location.

1. Flip the handle up and then pull out the dipstick and wipe it with a clean rag or paper towel.
2. Push it back in all the way, wait three seconds and then pull it back out again.



3. Check both sides of the dipstick, and read the lower level. The fluid level must be in the COLD area, below the cross-hatched area, for a cold check or in the HOT or cross-hatched area for a hot check. Be sure to keep the dipstick pointed down to get an accurate reading.
4. If the fluid level is in the acceptable range, push the dipstick back in all the way; then flip the handle down to lock the dipstick in place.

Consistency of Readings

Always check the fluid level at least twice using the procedure described previously. Consistency (repeatable readings) is important to maintaining proper fluid level. If inconsistent readings persist, check the transmission breather hose to be sure it is clean and unclogged. If readings are still inconsistent, contact your dealer.

How to Add Fluid

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine what kind of transmission fluid to use. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-13*.

Add fluid only after checking the transmission fluid while it is hot. A cold check is used only as a reference. If the fluid level is low, add only enough of the proper fluid to bring the level up to the HOT area for a hot check. It does not take much fluid, generally less than one pint (0.5 L). *Do not overfill.*

Notice: **Use of automatic transmission fluid labeled other than DEXRON®-III, Approved for the H-Specification, may damage your vehicle, and the damages may not be covered by your warranty. Always use automatic transmission fluid labeled DEXRON®-III, Approved for the H-Specification.**

- After adding fluid, recheck the fluid level as described under “How to Check,” earlier in this section.
- When the correct fluid level is obtained, push the dipstick back in all the way; then flip the handle down to lock the dipstick in place.

Engine Coolant

The cooling system in your vehicle is filled with DEX-COOL® engine coolant. This coolant is designed to remain in your vehicle for five years or 150,000 miles (240 000 km), whichever occurs first, if you add only DEX-COOL® extended life coolant.

The following explains your cooling system and how to add coolant when it is low. If you have a problem with engine overheating, see *Engine Overheating on page 5-26*.

A 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL® coolant will:

- Give freezing protection down to –34°F (–37°C).
- Give boiling protection up to 265°F (129°C).
- Protect against rust and corrosion.
- Help keep the proper engine temperature.
- Let the warning lights and gages work as they should.

Notice: **Using coolant other than DEX-COOL® may cause premature engine, heater core or radiator corrosion. In addition, the engine coolant may require changing sooner, at 30,000 miles (50 000 km) or 24 months, whichever occurs first. Any repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Always use DEX-COOL® (silicate-free) coolant in your vehicle.**

What to Use

Use a mixture of one-half *clean, drinkable water* and one-half DEX-COOL® coolant which will not damage aluminum parts. If you use this coolant mixture, you do not need to add anything else.

⚠ CAUTION:

Adding only plain water to your cooling system can be dangerous. Plain water, or some other liquid such as alcohol, can boil before the proper coolant mixture will. Your vehicle's coolant warning system is set for the proper coolant mixture. With plain water or the wrong mixture, your engine could get too hot but you would not get the overheat warning. Your engine could catch fire and you or others could be burned. Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL® coolant.

Notice: **If you use an improper coolant mixture, your engine could overheat and be badly damaged. The repair cost would not be covered by your warranty. Too much water in the mixture can freeze and crack the engine, radiator, heater core and other parts.**

If you have to add coolant more than four times a year, have your dealer check your cooling system.

Notice: **If you use the proper coolant, you do not have to add extra inhibitors or additives which claim to improve the system. These can be harmful.**

Checking Coolant

The coolant surge tank is located in the engine compartment on the passenger's side of the vehicle. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for more information on location.

⚠ CAUTION:

Turning the surge tank pressure cap when the engine and radiator are hot can allow steam and scalding liquids to blow out and burn you badly. Never turn the surge tank pressure cap — even a little — when the engine and radiator are hot.

The vehicle must be on a level surface. When your engine is cold, the coolant level should be at the FULL COLD mark.

If your vehicle is equipped with the LOW COOLANT LEVEL message and it comes on and stays on, it means you are low on engine coolant. See "LOW COOLANT LEVEL" under *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-53*.

Adding Coolant

If you need more coolant, add the proper DEX-COOL® coolant mixture *at the surge tank*, but only when the engine is cool.

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts. Coolant contains ethylene glycol, and it will burn if the engine parts are hot enough. Do not spill coolant on a hot engine.

When replacing the pressure cap, make sure it is hand-tight.

Coolant Surge Tank Pressure Cap

The coolant surge tank pressure cap must be fully installed on the coolant surge tank.

Notice: **If the pressure cap is not tightly installed, coolant loss and possible engine damage may occur. Be sure the cap is properly and tightly secured.**

Engine Overheating

You will find a coolant temperature gage on your vehicle's instrument panel cluster. See *Engine Coolant Temperature Gage on page 3-40*.

In addition, you will find an ENGINE COOLANT HOT, ENGINE OVERHEATED and a REDUCED ENGINE POWER message in the Driver Information Center (DIC) on the instrument panel. See *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-53*.

If Steam Is Coming From Your Engine

⚠ CAUTION:

Steam from an overheated engine can burn you badly, even if you just open the hood. Stay away from the engine if you see or hear steam coming from it. Just turn it off and get everyone away from the vehicle until it cools down. Wait until there is no sign of steam or coolant before you open the hood.

If you keep driving when your engine is overheated, the liquids in it can catch fire. You or others could be badly burned. Stop your engine if it overheats, and get out of the vehicle until the engine is cool.

See *Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode on page 5-28* for information on driving to a safe place in an emergency.

Notice: **If your engine catches fire because you keep driving with no coolant, your vehicle can be badly damaged. The costly repairs would not be covered by your warranty. See *Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode on page 5-28* for information on driving to a safe place in an emergency.**

If No Steam Is Coming From Your Engine

An overheat warning, along with a low coolant condition, can indicate a serious problem.

If you get an engine overheat warning, but see or hear no steam, the problem may not be too serious. Sometimes the engine can get a little too hot when you:

- Climb a long hill on a hot day.
- Stop after high-speed driving.
- Idle for long periods in traffic.
- Tow a trailer. See *Towing a Trailer on page 4-54*.

If you get the overheat warning with no sign of steam, try this for a minute or so:

1. If your air conditioner is on, turn it off.
2. Turn on your heater to full hot at the highest fan speed and open the windows as necessary.
3. If you are in a traffic jam, shift to NEUTRAL (N); otherwise, shift to the highest gear while driving — DRIVE (D).

If you no longer have the overheat warning, you can drive. Just to be safe, drive slower for about 10 minutes. If the warning does not come back on, you can drive normally.

If the warning continues, pull over, stop, and park your vehicle right away.

If there is still no sign of steam and your vehicle is equipped with an engine-driven cooling fan, push down the accelerator until the engine speed is about twice as fast as normal idle speed for at least three minutes while you are parked.

If there is still no sign of steam and your vehicle is equipped with an electric engine cooling fan, idle the engine for three minutes while you are parked.

If you still have the warning, *turn off the engine and get everyone out of the vehicle* until it cools down. Also, see “Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode” later in this section.

You may decide not to lift the hood but to get service help right away.

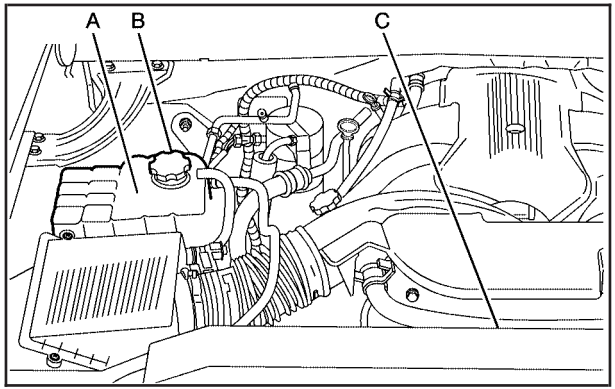
Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode

If an overheated engine condition exists and the REDUCED ENGINE POWER message is displayed, an overheat protection mode which alternates firing groups of cylinders helps prevent engine damage. In this mode, you will notice a loss in power and engine performance. This operating mode allows your vehicle to be driven to a safe place in an emergency. Driving extended miles (km) and/or towing a trailer in the overheat protection mode should be avoided.

Notice: **After driving in the overheated engine protection operating mode, to avoid engine damage, allow the engine to cool before attempting any repair. The engine oil will be severely degraded. Repair the cause of coolant loss, change the oil and reset the oil life system. See *Engine Oil on page 5-13*.**

Cooling System

When you decide it is safe to lift the hood, here is what you will see:



A. Coolant Surge Tank

B. Coolant Surge Tank Pressure Cap

C. Electric Engine Cooling Fan (If Equipped)

⚠ CAUTION:

An electric engine cooling fan under the hood can start up even when the engine is not running and can injure you. Keep hands, clothing and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

If the coolant inside the coolant surge tank is boiling, do not do anything else until it cools down. The vehicle should be parked on a level surface.

The coolant level should be at or above the FULL COLD mark. If it is not, you may have a leak at the pressure cap or in the radiator hoses, heater hoses, radiator, water pump or somewhere else in the cooling system.

⚠ CAUTION:

Heater and radiator hoses, and other engine parts, can be very hot. Do not touch them. If you do, you can be burned.

Do not run the engine if there is a leak. If you run the engine, it could lose all coolant. That could cause an engine fire, and you could be burned. Get any leak fixed before you drive the vehicle.

If there seems to be no leak and your vehicle is equipped with an electric engine cooling fan, with the engine on check to see if the cooling fan is running. If it is not, your vehicle needs service. Turn off the engine.

If there seems to be no leak and your vehicle is equipped with an engine-driven cooling fan, start the engine again and see if the fan speed increases when idle speed is doubled by pushing the accelerator pedal down. If it does not, your vehicle needs service. Turn off the engine.

Notice: **Engine damage from running your engine without coolant is not covered by your warranty. See *Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode on page 5-28* for information on driving to a safe place in an emergency.**

Notice: **Using coolant other than DEX-COOL® may cause premature engine, heater core or radiator corrosion. In addition, the engine coolant may require changing sooner, at 30,000 miles (50 000 km) or 24 months, whichever occurs first. Any repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Always use DEX-COOL® (silicate-free) coolant in your vehicle.**

How to Add Coolant to the Coolant Surge Tank

If you have not found a problem yet, check to see if coolant is visible in the surge tank. If coolant is visible but the coolant level is not at or above the FULL COLD mark, add a 50/50 mixture of *clean, drinkable water* and DEX-COOL® coolant at the coolant surge tank, but be sure the cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap, is cool before you do it. See *Engine Coolant on page 5-23* for more information.

If no coolant is visible in the surge tank, add coolant as follows:

⚠ CAUTION:

Steam and scalding liquids from a hot cooling system can blow out and burn you badly. They are under pressure, and if you turn the radiator pressure cap — even a little — they can come out at high speed. Never turn the cap when the cooling system, including the radiator pressure cap, is hot. Wait for the cooling system and radiator pressure cap to cool if you ever have to turn the pressure cap.

⚠ CAUTION:

Adding only plain water to your cooling system can be dangerous. Plain water, or some other liquid such as alcohol, can boil before the proper coolant mixture will. Your vehicle's coolant warning system is set for the proper coolant mixture. With plain water or the wrong mixture, your engine could get too hot but you would not get the overheat warning. Your engine could catch fire and you or others could be burned. Use a 50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and DEX-COOL® coolant.

Notice: **In cold weather, water can freeze and crack the engine, radiator, heater core and other parts. Use the recommended coolant and the proper coolant mixture.**

⚠ CAUTION:

You can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts. Coolant contains ethylene glycol and it will burn if the engine parts are hot enough. Do not spill coolant on a hot engine.

1. You can remove the coolant surge tank pressure cap when the cooling system, including the coolant surge tank pressure cap and upper radiator hose, is no longer hot. Turn the pressure cap slowly counterclockwise (left) about one full turn. If you hear a hiss, wait for that to stop. A hiss means there is still some pressure left.

2. Then keep turning the pressure cap slowly, and remove it.

3. Fill the coolant surge tank with the proper mixture, to the FULL COLD mark.

4. With the coolant surge tank pressure cap off, start the engine and let it run until you can feel the upper radiator hose getting hot. Watch out for the engine cooling fan.

   By this time, the coolant level inside the coolant surge tank may be lower. If the level is lower, add more of the proper mixture to the coolant surge tank until the level reaches the FULL COLD mark.

5. Then replace the pressure cap. Be sure the pressure cap is hand-tight and fully seated.

Engine Fan Noise

If your vehicle is equipped with a clutched engine cooling fan, when the clutch is engaged, the fan spins faster to provide more air to cool the engine. In most everyday driving conditions, the fan is spinning slower and the clutch is not fully engaged. This improves fuel economy and reduces fan noise. Under heavy vehicle loading, trailer towing, and/or high outside temperatures, the fan speed increases as the clutch more fully engages, so you may hear an increase in fan noise. This is normal and should not be mistaken as the transmission slipping or making extra shifts. It is merely the cooling system functioning properly. The fan will slow down when additional cooling is not required and the clutch disengages.

You may also hear this fan noise when you start the engine. It will go away as the fan clutch partially disengages.

If your vehicle is equipped with electric cooling fans, you may hear the fans spinning at low speed during most everyday driving. The fans may turn off if no cooling is required. Under heavy vehicle loading, trailer towing, and/or high outside temperatures, or if you are operating your air conditioning system, the fans change to high speed and you may hear an increase in fan noise. This is normal and indicates that the cooling system is functioning properly. The fans will change to low speed when additional cooling is no longer required.

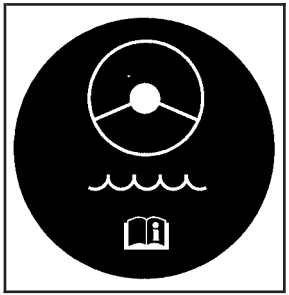
Power Steering Fluid

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for power steering fluid reservoir location.

When to Check Power Steering Fluid

It is not necessary to regularly check power steering fluid unless you suspect there is a leak in the system or you hear an unusual noise. A fluid loss in this system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected and repaired.

How to Check Power Steering Fluid



Locate the cap with this symbol. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for more information on location.

To check the power steering fluid, do the following:

1. Turn the key off and let the engine compartment cool down.
2. Wipe the cap and the top of the reservoir clean.
3. Unscrew the cap and wipe the dipstick with a clean rag.
4. Replace the cap and completely tighten it.
5. Remove the cap again and look at the fluid level on the dipstick.

The level should be at the FULL COLD mark. If necessary, add only enough fluid to bring the level up to the mark.

What to Use

To determine what kind of fluid to use, see *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-13*. Always use the proper fluid. Failure to use the proper fluid can cause leaks and damage hoses and seals.

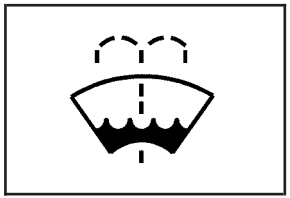
Windshield Washer Fluid

What to Use

When you need windshield washer fluid, be sure to read the manufacturer's instructions before use. If you will be operating your vehicle in an area where the temperature may fall below freezing, use a fluid that has sufficient protection against freezing.

Adding Washer Fluid

Your vehicle has a low washer fluid message that comes on when the washer fluid is low. The message is displayed for 15 seconds at the start of each ignition cycle. When the LOW WASHER FLUID message is displayed, you will need to add washer fluid to the windshield washer fluid reservoir.



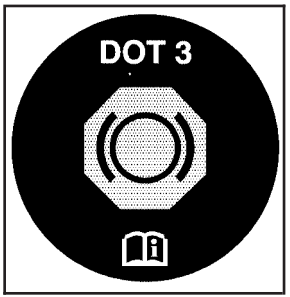
Open the cap with the washer symbol on it. Add washer fluid until the tank is full. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for reservoir location.

Notice:

- **When using concentrated washer fluid, follow the manufacturer's instructions for adding water.**
- **Do not mix water with ready-to-use washer fluid. Water can cause the solution to freeze and damage your washer fluid tank and other parts of the washer system. Also, water does not clean as well as washer fluid.**
- **Fill your washer fluid tank only three-quarters full when it is very cold. This allows for expansion if freezing occurs, which could damage the tank if it is completely full.**
- **Do not use engine coolant (antifreeze) in your windshield washer. It can damage your washer system and paint.**

Brakes

Brake Fluid



Your brake master cylinder reservoir is filled with DOT-3 brake fluid. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for the location of the reservoir.

There are only two reasons why the brake fluid level in the reservoir might go down. The first is that the brake fluid goes down to an acceptable level during normal brake lining wear. When new linings are put in, the fluid level goes back up. The other reason is that fluid is leaking out of the brake system. If it is, you should have your brake system fixed, since a leak means that sooner or later your brakes will not work well, or will not work at all.

So, it is not a good idea to top off your brake fluid. Adding brake fluid will not correct a leak. If you add fluid when your linings are worn, then you will have too much fluid when you get new brake linings. You should add or remove brake fluid, as necessary, only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system.

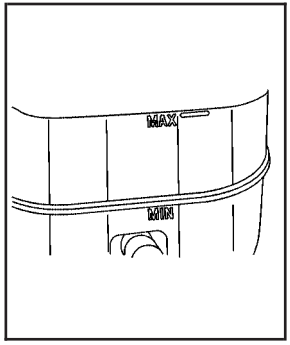
⚠ CAUTION:

If you have too much brake fluid, it can spill on the engine. The fluid will burn if the engine is hot enough. You or others could be burned, and your vehicle could be damaged. Add brake fluid only when work is done on the brake hydraulic system. See "Checking Brake Fluid" in this section.

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine when to check your brake fluid. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4*.

Checking Brake Fluid

You can check the brake fluid without taking off the cap.



Look at the brake fluid reservoir. The fluid level should be above MIN. If it is not, have your brake system checked to see if there is a leak.

After work is done on the brake hydraulic system, make sure the level is above the MIN but not over the MAX mark.

What to Add

When you do need brake fluid, use only DOT-3 brake fluid. Use new brake fluid from a sealed container only. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-13*.

Always clean the brake fluid reservoir cap and the area around the cap before removing it. This will help keep dirt from entering the reservoir.

⚠ CAUTION:

With the wrong kind of fluid in your brake system, your brakes may not work well, or they may not even work at all. This could cause a crash. Always use the proper brake fluid.

Notice:

- **Using the wrong fluid can badly damage brake system parts. For example, just a few drops of mineral-based oil, such as engine oil, in your brake system can damage brake system parts so badly that they will have to be replaced. Do not let someone put in the wrong kind of fluid.**
- **If you spill brake fluid on your vehicle's painted surfaces, the paint finish can be damaged. Be careful not to spill brake fluid on your vehicle. If you do, wash it off immediately. See *Appearance Care on page 5-99*.**

Brake Wear

Your vehicle has four-wheel disc brakes.

Disc brake pads have built-in wear indicators that make a high-pitched warning sound when the brake pads are worn and new pads are needed. The sound may come and go or be heard all the time your vehicle is moving, except when you are pushing on the brake pedal firmly.

⚠ CAUTION:

The brake wear warning sound means that soon your brakes will not work well. That could lead to an accident. When you hear the brake wear warning sound, have your vehicle serviced.

Notice: **Continuing to drive with worn-out brake pads could result in costly brake repair.**

Some driving conditions or climates may cause a brake squeal when the brakes are first applied or lightly applied. This does not mean something is wrong with your brakes.

Properly torqued wheel nuts are necessary to help prevent brake pulsation. When tires are rotated, inspect brake pads for wear and evenly tighten wheel nuts in the proper sequence to GM torque specifications.

Brake linings should always be replaced as complete axle sets.

Brake Pedal Travel

See your dealer if the brake pedal does not return to normal height, or if there is a rapid increase in pedal travel. This could be a sign of brake trouble.

Brake Adjustment

Every time you make a brake stop, your disc brakes adjust for wear.

Replacing Brake System Parts

The braking system on a vehicle is complex. Its many parts have to be of top quality and work well together if the vehicle is to have really good braking. Your vehicle was designed and tested with top-quality GM brake parts. When you replace parts of your braking system — for example, when your brake linings wear down and you need new ones put in — be sure you get new approved GM replacement parts. If you do not, your brakes may no longer work properly. For example, if someone puts in brake linings that are wrong for your vehicle, the balance between your front and rear brakes can change — for the worse. The braking performance you have come to expect can change in many other ways if someone puts in the wrong replacement brake parts.

Battery

Your vehicle has a maintenance free battery. When it is time for a new battery, get one that has the replacement number shown on the original battery's label. We recommend an ACDelco® replacement battery. See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for battery location.

Warning: Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

Vehicle Storage

If you are not going to drive your vehicle for 25 days or more, remove the black, negative (–) cable from the battery. This will help keep your battery from running down.

⚠ CAUTION:

Batteries have acid that can burn you and gas that can explode. You can be badly hurt if you are not careful. See *Jump Starting on page 5-41* for tips on working around a battery without getting hurt.

Also, for your audio system, see *Theft-Deterrent Feature on page 3-102*.

Jump Starting

If your battery has run down, you may want to use another vehicle and some jumper cables to start your vehicle. Be sure to use the following steps to do it safely.

⚠ CAUTION:

Batteries can hurt you. They can be dangerous because:

- **They contain acid that can burn you.**
- **They contain gas that can explode or ignite.**
- **They contain enough electricity to burn you.**

If you do not follow these steps exactly, some or all of these things can hurt you.

Notice: **Ignoring these steps could result in costly damage to your vehicle that would not be covered by your warranty.**

Trying to start your vehicle by pushing or pulling it will not work, and it could damage your vehicle.

1. Check the other vehicle. It must have a 12-volt battery with a negative ground system.

Notice: **If the other vehicle's system is not a 12-volt system with a negative ground, both vehicles can be damaged. Only use vehicles with 12-volt systems with negative grounds to jump start your vehicle.**

2. Get the vehicles close enough so the jumper cables can reach, but be sure the vehicles are not touching each other. If they are, it could cause a ground connection you do not want. You would not be able to start your vehicle, and the bad grounding could damage the electrical systems.

   To avoid the possibility of the vehicles rolling, set the parking brake firmly on both vehicles involved in the jump start procedure. Put an automatic transmission in PARK (P) or a manual transmission in NEUTRAL before setting the parking brake.

Notice: **If you leave your radio or other accessories on during the jump starting procedure, they could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Always turn off your radio and other accessories when jump starting your vehicle.**

3. Turn off the ignition on both vehicles. Unplug unnecessary accessories plugged into the cigarette lighter or accessory power outlets. Turn off the radio and all lamps that are not needed. This will avoid sparks and help save both batteries. And it could save your radio!

4. Open the hoods and locate the positive (+) and negative (–) terminal locations of the other vehicle.

   Your vehicle has a remote positive (+) jump starting terminal and a remote negative (–) jump starting terminal. You should always use these remote terminals instead of the terminals on the battery.

The remote positive (+) terminal is located near the engine accessory drive bracket. On some vehicles, the terminal may be covered by a red plastic cover. To access the remote positive (+) terminal, open the cover.

The remote negative (–) terminal is located on the engine accessory drive bracket and is marked GND.

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for more information on the location of the remote terminals.

⚠ CAUTION:

Using a match near a battery can cause battery gas to explode. People have been hurt doing this, and some have been blinded. Use a flashlight if you need more light.

Be sure the battery has enough water. You do not need to add water to the battery installed in your new vehicle. But if a battery has filler caps, be sure the right amount of fluid is there. If it is low, add water to take care of that first. If you do not, explosive gas could be present.

Battery fluid contains acid that can burn you. Do not get it on you. If you accidentally get it in your eyes or on your skin, flush the place with water and get medical help immediately.

5. Check that the jumper cables do not have loose or missing insulation. If they do, you could get a shock. The vehicles could be damaged too.

   Before you connect the cables, here are some basic things you should know. Positive (+) will go to positive (+) or to a remote positive terminal (+) if the vehicle has one. Negative (–) will go to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part or to a remote negative (–) terminal, if the vehicle has one.

   Do not connect positive (+) to negative (–) or you will get a short that would damage the battery and maybe other parts too.

⚠ CAUTION:

Fans or other moving engine parts can injure you badly. Keep your hands away from moving parts once the engine is running.

6. Connect the red positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the dead battery. Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.
7. Do not let the other end touch metal. Connect it to the positive (+) terminal of the good battery. Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.

8. Now connect the black negative (–) cable to the negative (–) terminal of the good battery. Use a remote negative (–) terminal if the vehicle has one.

   Do not let the other end touch anything until the next step. The other end of the negative (–) cable does not go to the dead battery. It goes to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part or to a remote negative (–) terminal on the vehicle with the dead battery.

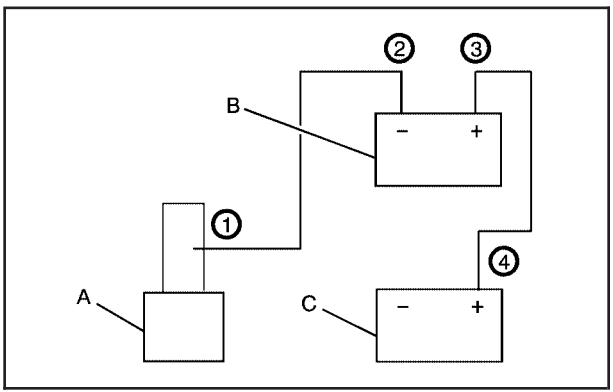
9. Connect the other end of the negative (–) cable at least 18 inches (45 cm) away from the dead battery, but not near engine parts that move. The electrical connection is just as good there, and the chance of sparks getting back to the battery is much less.

   Use a remote negative (–) terminal if the vehicle has one. Your vehicle's remote negative (–) terminal is marked GND.

10. Now start the vehicle with the good battery and run the engine for awhile.

11. Try to start the vehicle that had the dead battery. If it will not start after a few tries, it probably needs service.

Notice: **If the jumper cables are removed in the wrong order, electrical shorting may occur and damage the vehicle. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Remove the jumper cables in the correct order, making sure that the cables do not touch each other or other metal.**



Jumper Cable Removal

A. Heavy, Unpainted Metal Engine Part or Remote Negative (–) Terminal

B. Good Battery or Remote Positive (+) and Negative (–) Terminals

C. Dead Battery or Remote Positive (+) Terminal

To disconnect the jumper cables from both vehicles do the following:

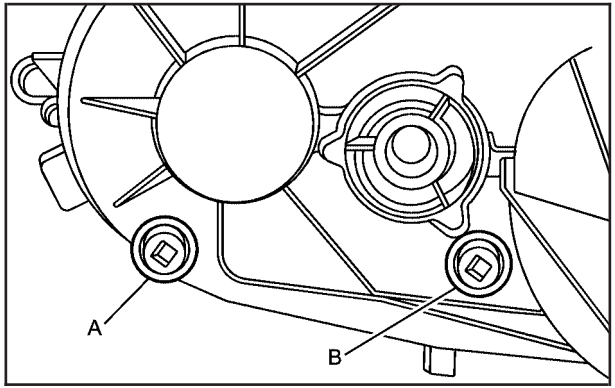
1. Disconnect the black negative (–) cable from the vehicle that had the dead battery.
2. Disconnect the black negative (–) cable from the vehicle with the good battery.
3. Disconnect the red positive (+) cable from the vehicle with the good battery.
4. Disconnect the red positive (+) cable from the other vehicle.
5. Return the positive (+) remote terminal cover to its original position.

All-Wheel Drive

Transfer Case

It is not necessary to regularly check transfer case fluid unless you suspect there is a leak or you hear an unusual noise. A fluid loss could indicate a problem. Have it inspected and repaired.

How to Check Lubricant



(A) Drain Plug (B) Filler Plug

To get an accurate reading, the vehicle should be on a level surface.

If the level is below the bottom of the filler plug hole, located on the transfer case, you'll need to add some lubricant. Add enough lubricant to raise the level to the bottom of the filler plug hole. Use care not to overtighten the plug.

What to Use

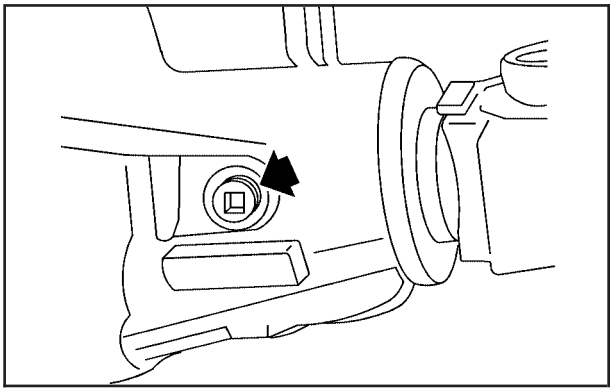
Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine what kind of lubricant to use. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-13*.

Rear Axle

When to Check Lubricant

It is not necessary to regularly check rear axle fluid unless you suspect there is a leak or you hear an unusual noise. A fluid loss could indicate a problem. Have it inspected and repaired.

How to Check Lubricant



To get an accurate reading, the vehicle should be on a level surface.

The proper level is from 5/8 inch to 1-5/8 inch (15 mm to 40 mm) below the bottom of the filler plug hole, located on the rear axle. Add only enough fluid to reach the proper level.

What to Use

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine what kind of lubricant to use. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-13*.

Front Axle

When to Check and Change Lubricant

It is not necessary to regularly check front axle fluid unless you suspect there is a leak or you hear an unusual noise. A fluid loss could indicate a problem. Have it inspected and repaired.

How to Check Lubricant

To get an accurate reading, the vehicle should be on a level surface.

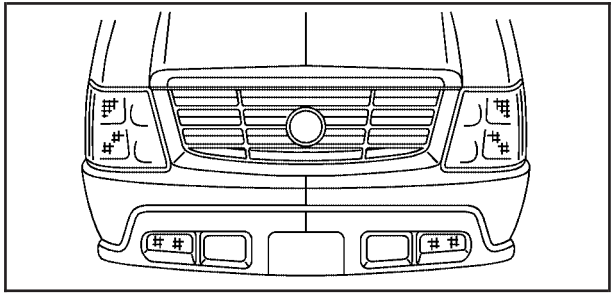
If the level is below the bottom of the filler plug hole, located on the front axle, you may need to add some lubricant:

- When the differential is cold, add enough lubricant to raise the level from 1/2 inch (12 mm) to about 5/8 inch (18 mm) below the filler plug hole.
- When the differential is at operating temperature (warm), add enough lubricant to raise the level to the bottom of the filler plug hole.

What to Use

Refer to the Maintenance Schedule to determine what kind of lubricant to use. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-13*.

Headlamp Aiming



Your vehicle has a visual optical headlamp aiming system equipped with horizontal aim indicators. The aim has been preset at the factory and should need no further adjustment. This is true even though your horizontal aim indicators may not fall exactly on the “0” (zero) marks on their scales.

If your vehicle is damaged in an accident, the headlamp aim may be affected. Aim adjustment to the low beam may be necessary if it is difficult to see lane markers (for horizontal aim), or if oncoming drivers flash their high beams at you (for vertical aim).

If you believe your headlamps need to be re-aimed, we recommend that you take your vehicle to your dealer for service. However, it is possible for you to re-aim your headlamps as described in the following procedure.

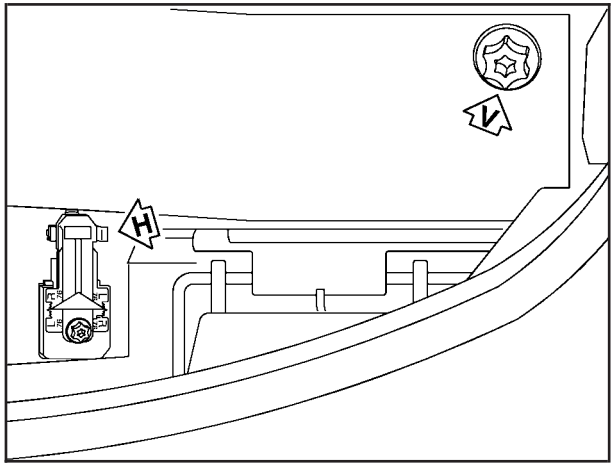
Notice: **To make sure your headlamps are aimed properly, read all the instructions before beginning. Failure to follow these instructions could cause damage to headlamp parts.**

The vehicle should be properly prepared as follows:

- The vehicle should be placed so the headlamps are 25 ft. (7.6 m) from a light colored wall or other flat surface.
- The vehicle must have all four tires on a perfectly level surface which is level all the way to the wall or other flat surface.
- The vehicle should be placed so it is perpendicular to the wall or other flat surface.
- The vehicle should not have any snow, ice or mud attached to it.
- The vehicle should be fully assembled and all other work stopped while headlamp aiming is being done.
- The vehicle should be normally loaded with a full tank of fuel and one person or 160 lbs (75 kg) on the driver’s seat.
- Tires should be properly inflated.
- Start the vehicle and rock it to level the suspension.

Headlamp aiming is done with the vehicle low-beam lamps. The high-beam lamps will be correctly aimed if the low-beam lamps are aimed properly.

The headlamp aiming devices are under the hood near the headlamps.

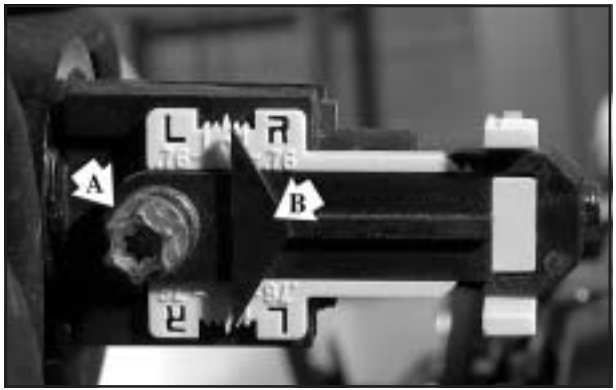


If you believe your headlamps need horizontal (H) (left/right) adjustment, follow the horizontal aiming procedure. If you believe your headlamps need only vertical (V) (up/down) adjustment, follow only the vertical aiming procedure.

Adjustment screws can be turned with an E8 Torx® socket or T15 Torx® screwdriver.

Headlamp Horizontal Aiming

Turn the horizontal aiming screw (A) until the indicator (B) is lined up with zero.

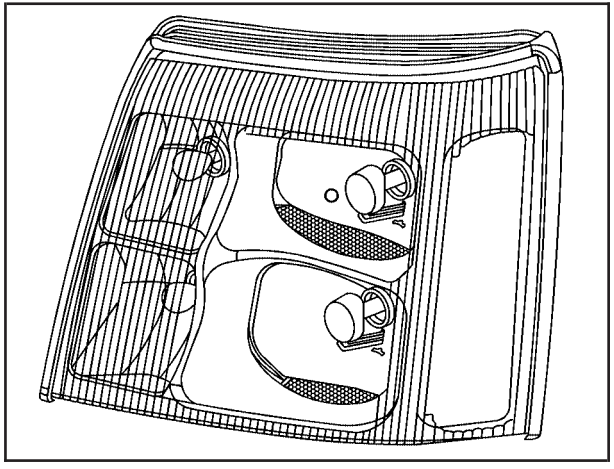


Once the horizontal aim is adjusted, then adjust the vertical aim.

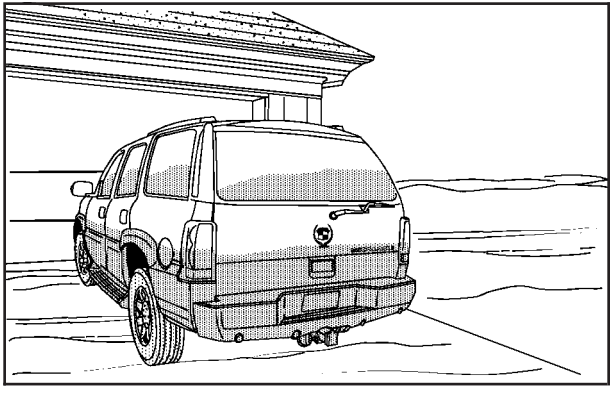
Headlamp Vertical Aiming

Notice: **Horizontal aiming must be performed before making any adjustments to the vertical aim. Adjusting the vertical aim first will result in an incorrect headlamp aim.**

To adjust the headlamp veritcal aiming, do the following:

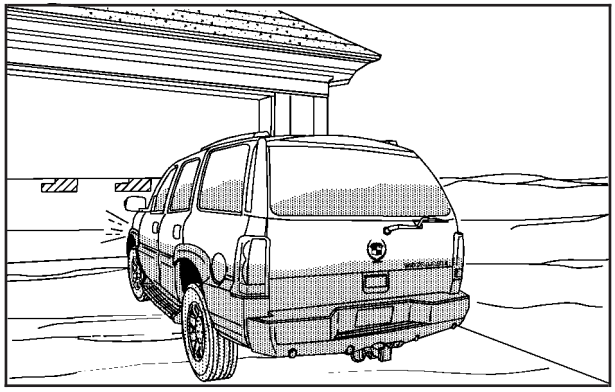


1. Find the aim dot on the lens of the low beam lamps.
2. Measure the distance from the ground to the aim dot on each low beam lamp. Record this distance.
3. At the wall or other flat surface, measure from the ground upward the recorded distance from Step 2 and draw or tape a horizontal line the width of the vehicle.



4. Turn on the low-beam headlamps and place a piece of cardboard or equivalent in front of the headlamp not being aimed. This should allow only the beam of light from the headlamp being aimed to be seen on the flat surface.

Notice: **Do not cover a headlamp to improve beam cut-off when aiming. Covering a headlamp may cause excessive heat build-up which may cause damage to the headlamp.**



5. Turn the vertical aiming screw (V) until the headlamp beam is aimed to the horizontal tape line. The top edge of the cut-off should be positioned at the bottom edge of the horizontal tape line.
6. Repeat Steps 4 and 5 for the opposite headlamp.

Bulb Replacement

For the proper type of replacement bulbs, see *Replacement Bulbs on page 5-58*.

For any bulb changing procedure not listed in this section, contact your dealer.

High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting

⚠ CAUTION:

The low beam high intensity discharge lighting system operates at a very high voltage. If you try to service any of the system components, you could be seriously injured. Have your dealer or a qualified technician service them.

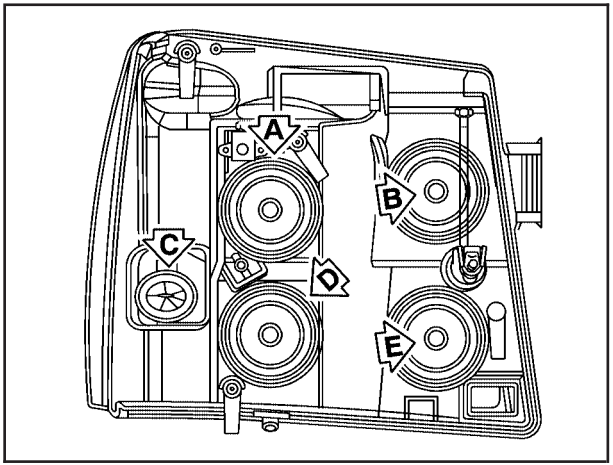
Your vehicle may have HID headlamps. After your vehicle's HID headlamp bulb has been replaced, you may notice that the beam is a slightly different shade than it was originally. This is normal.

Halogen Bulbs

⚠ CAUTION:

Halogen bulbs have pressurized gas inside and can burst if you drop or scratch the bulb. You or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the instructions on the bulb package.

Headlamps



A. Low-Beam Headlamp (HID)

B. Daytime Running Lamp (DRL)

C. Sidemarker Lamp

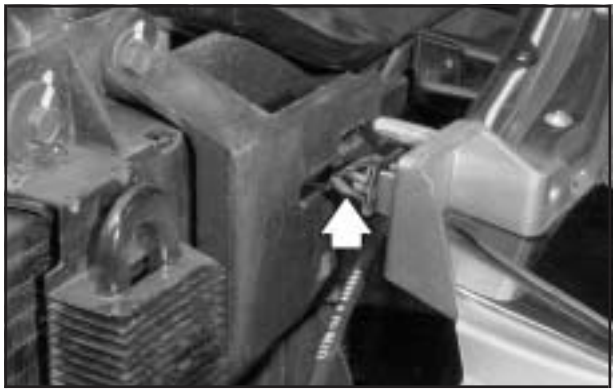
D. High-Beam Headlamp

E. Front Parking/Turn Signal Lamp

To replace a headlamp bulb, do the following:

1. Open the hood of the vehicle. See *Hood Release on page 5-11* for more information.

2. Pry up the eight fastener plugs on the radiator cover and pull the fasteners out.
3. Lift off the radiator cover.



4. Pull the top left or right corner of the grill out so the clips release. This will give you the needed clearance for removing the headlamp assembly.

5. Remove the horizontal pin from the headlamp assembly by lifting the end of the pin upward until it unsnaps and then pulling it toward the center of the vehicle.

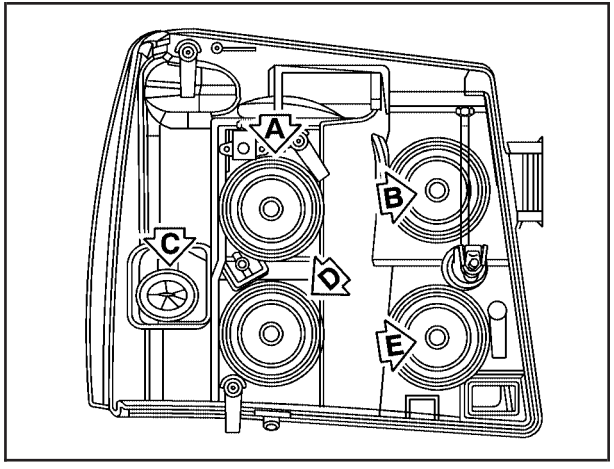
6. Remove the vertical pin from the headlamp assembly by turning the end of the pin away from you until it unsnaps and then pulling it upward.
7. Remove the headlamp assembly by lifting it up and then pulling it out and away from the front of the vehicle.
8. Disconnect the electrical connector from the lower corner of the headlamp assembly. This will give you better access to the headlamp assembly.

9. Remove the rubber, circular-shaped bulb cap of the affected bulb from the headlamp assembly.

10. Turn the bulb connector counterclockwise and remove it with the old bulb from the headlamp assembly.
11. Unplug the electrical connector from the old bulb.
12. Plug in the electrical connector to the new bulb, using care not to touch the bulb with your hands, fingers or anything damp or oily.

13. Place the headlamp assembly back into the vehicle, being sure to align the lower locator tab with the pocket on the vehicle (see arrow). Push the headlamp assembly straight in and then down into position.
14. Install the two pins and snap the ends into their locked position.
15. Reinstall the grille and radiator cover by reversing the removal procedure described previously.

Front Turn Signal, Sidemarker and Daytime Running Lamps



A. Low-Beam Headlamp (HID)

B. Daytime Running Lamp (DRL)

C. Sidemarker Lamp

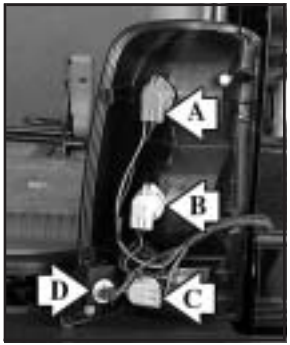
D. High-Beam Headlamp

E. Front Parking/Turn Signal Lamp

To replace a front turn signal, sidemarker or DRL bulb, do the following:

1. Remove the headlamp assembly as described previously. See *Headlamps on page 5-52* for more information.
2. Remove the rubber, circular-shaped bulb cap for the affected bulb from the headlamp assembly.
3. Press the locking release lever, turn the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove it from the headlamp assembly. (There is no lock for the sidemarker lamp.)
4. Remove the old bulb from the bulb socket.
5. Put the new bulb into the bulb socket.
6. Put the bulb socket into the turn signal housing and turn it clockwise until it locks. (There is no lock for the sidemarker lamp.)
7. Reverse the steps to reinstall.

Taillamps



A. Turn Signal/Taillamp
B. Stoplamp/Taillamp
C. Back-up Lamp
D. Sidemarker Lamp

To replace a taillamp bulb, do the following:

1. Remove the two screws from the lamp assembly.
2. Remove the lamp assembly.
3. Press the release tab and turn the bulb socket counterclockwise to remove it from the taillamp housing. The sidemarker lamp does not have a release tab.

4. Pull the bulb straight out from the socket.

5. Press a new bulb into the socket, insert it into the taillamp housing and turn the socket clockwise into the taillamp housing until it clicks. The sidemarker lamp does not have a release tab and therefore will not click when it is installed.
6. Reinstall the rear lamp assembly and tighten the screws.

Replacement Bulbs

Exterior Lamp	Bulb Number
Back-up Lamp	3157K
Daytime Running Lamp (DRL)	4114K
Front Marker Lamp	194
Front Parking and Turn Signal Lamps	3157AK
High-Beam Headlamp	9005 or 9005 LL
Rear Turn Signal, Stoplamp and Taillamp	3157K
Sidemarker Lamp	194

For replacement bulbs not listed here, contact your dealer.

Windshield Wiper Blade Replacement

Windshield wiper blades should be inspected at least twice a year for wear and cracking. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4* for more information.

Replacement blades come in different types and are removed in different ways. For proper type and length, see *Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts on page 6-15*.

To replace the windshield wiper blade assembly do the following:

1. Lift the wiper arm and turn the blade until it is facing away from the windshield.

2. Push the release lever and slide the wiper assembly toward the driver's side of the vehicle.
3. Install a new blade by reversing Steps 1 and 2.

Tires

Your new vehicle comes with high-quality tires made by a leading tire manufacturer. If you ever have questions about your tire warranty and where to obtain service, see your GM Warranty booklet for details. For additional information refer to the tire manufacturer's booklet included with your vehicle's Owner's Manual.

⚠ CAUTION:

Poorly maintained and improperly used tires are dangerous.

- **Overloading your tires can cause overheating as a result of too much friction. You could have an air-out and a serious accident. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-47*.**

CAUTION: (Continued)

CAUTION: (Continued)

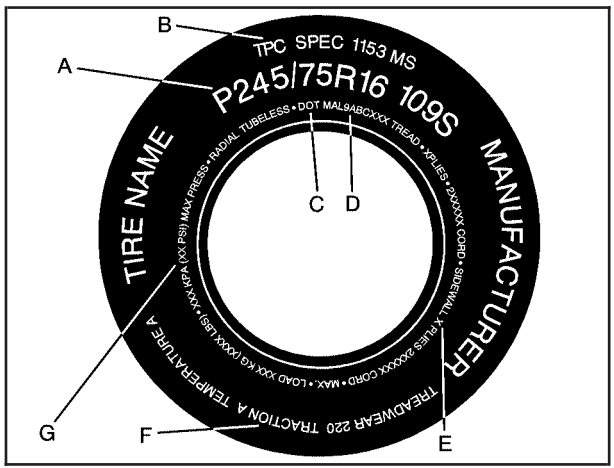
- **Underinflated tires pose the same danger as overloaded tires. The resulting accident could cause serious injury. Check all tires frequently to maintain the recommended pressure. Tire pressure should be checked when your tires are cold. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-67*.**
- **Overinflated tires are more likely to be cut, punctured or broken by a sudden impact — such as when you hit a pothole. Keep tires at the recommended pressure.**
- **Worn, old tires can cause accidents. If your tread is badly worn, or if your tires have been damaged, replace them.**

20-Inch Tires

If your vehicle has the optional 20-inch P275/55R20 size tires, they are classified as touring tires and are designed for on road use. The low-profile, wide tread design is not recommended for "off-road" driving. See *Operating Your All-Wheel-Drive Vehicle Off Paved Roads on page 4-18*, for additional information.

Tire Sidewall Labelling

Useful information about a tire is molded into the sidewall. The following illustrations are examples of a typical P-Metric and a LT-Metric tire sidewall.



Passenger (P-Metric) Tire

(A) Tire Size: The tire size code is a combination of letters and numbers used to define a particular tire's width, height, aspect ratio, construction type and service description. See the "Tire Size" illustration later in this section for more detail.

(B) TPC Spec (Tire Performance Criteria Specification): Original equipment tires designed to GM's specific tire performance criteria have a TPC specification code molded onto the sidewall. GM's TPC specifications meet or exceed all federal safety guidelines.

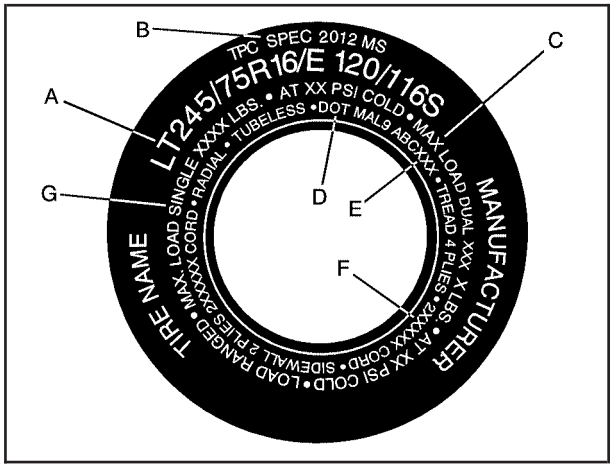
(C) DOT (Department of Transportation): The Department of Transportation (DOT) code indicates that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

(D) Tire Identification Number (TIN): The letters and numbers following DOT code are the Tire Identification Number (TIN). The TIN shows the manufacturer and plant code, tire size, and date the tire was manufactured. The TIN is molded onto both sides of the tire, although only one side may have the date of manufacture.

(E) Tire Ply Material: The type of cord and number of plies in the sidewall and under the tread.

(F) Uniform Tire Quality Grading (UTQG): Tire manufacturers are required to grade tires based on three performance factors: treadwear, traction and temperature resistance. For more information, see *Uniform Tire Quality Grading on page 5-75*.

(G) Maximum Cold Inflation Load Limit: Maximum load that can be carried and the maximum pressure needed to support that load. For information on recommended tire pressure see *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-67* and *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-47*.



Light Truck (LT-Metric) Tire

(A) Tire Size: The tire size code is a combination of letters and numbers used to define a particular tire's width, height, aspect ratio, construction type and service description. See the "Tire Size" illustration later in this section for more detail.

(B) TPC Spec (Tire Performance Criteria Specification): Original equipment tires designed to GM's specific tire performance criteria have a TPC specification code molded onto the sidewall. GM's TPC specifications meet or exceed all federal safety guidelines.

(C) Dual Tire Maximum Load: Maximum load that can be carried and the maximum pressure needed to support that load when used in a dual configuration. For information on recommended tire pressure see *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-67* and *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-47*.

(D) DOT (Department of Transportation): The Department of Transportation (DOT) code indicates that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation Motor Vehicle Safety Standards.

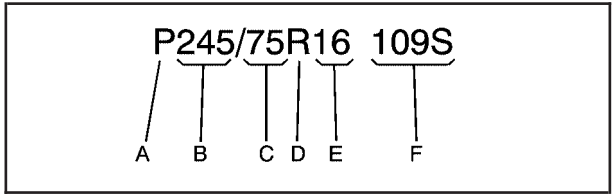
(E) Tire Identification Number (TIN): The letters and numbers following DOT code are the Tire Identification Number (TIN). The TIN shows the manufacturer and plant code, tire size, and date the tire was manufactured. The TIN is molded onto both sides of the tire, although only one side may have the date of manufacture.

(F) Tire Ply Material: The type of cord and number of plies in the sidewall and under the tread.

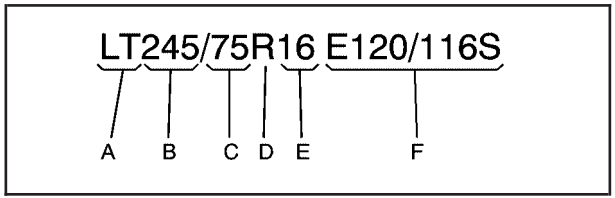
(G) Single Tire Maximum Load: Maximum load that can be carried and the maximum pressure needed to support that load when used as a single. For information on recommended tire pressure see *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-67* and *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-47*.

Tire Size

The following examples show the different parts of a tire size.



Passenger (P-Metric) Tire



Light Truck (LT-Metric) Tire

(A) Passenger (P-Metric) Tire: The United States version of a metric tire sizing system. The letter P as the first character in the tire size means a passenger vehicle tire engineered to standards set by the U.S. Tire and Rim Association.

(A) Light Truck (LT-Metric) Tire: The United States version of a metric tire sizing system. The letters LT as the first two characters in the tire size means a light truck tire engineered to standards set by the U.S. Tire and Rim Association.

(B) Tire Width: The three-digit number indicates the tire section width in millimeters from sidewall to sidewall.

(C) Aspect Ratio: A two-digit number that indicates the tire height-to-width measurements. For example, if the tire size aspect ratio is 75, as shown in item C of the light truck (LT-Metric) tire illustration, it would mean that the tire's sidewall is 75% as high as it is wide.

(D) Construction Code: A letter code is used to indicate the type of ply construction in the tire. The letter R means radial ply construction; the letter D means diagonal or bias ply construction; and the letter B means belted-bias ply construction.

(E) Rim Diameter: Diameter of the wheel in inches.

(F) Service Description: The service description indicates the load range and speed rating of a tire. The load index can range from 1 to 279. Speed ratings range from A to Z.

Tire Terminology and Definitions

Air Pressure: The amount of air inside the tire pressing outward on each square inch of the tire. Air pressure is expressed in pounds per square inch (psi) or kiloPascal (kPa).

Accessory Weight: This means the combined weight of optional accessories. Some examples of optional accessories are, automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, and air conditioning.

Aspect Ratio: The relationship of a tire's height to its width.

Belt: A rubber coated layer of cords that is located between the plies and the tread. Cords may be made from steel or other reinforcing materials.

Bead: The tire bead contains steel wires wrapped by steel cords that hold the tire onto the rim.

Bias Ply Tire: A pneumatic tire in which the plies are laid at alternate angles less than 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Cold Inflation Pressure: The amount of air pressure in a tire, measured in pounds per square inch (psi) or kilopascals (kPa) before a tire has built up heat from driving. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-67*.

Curb Weight: This means the weight of a motor vehicle with standard and optional equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil and coolant, but without passengers and cargo.

DOT Markings: A code molded into the sidewall of a tire signifying that the tire is in compliance with the U.S. Department of Transportation (DOT) motor vehicle safety standards. The DOT code includes the Tire Identification Number (TIN), an alphanumeric designator which can also identify the tire manufacturer, production plant, brand and date of production.

GVWR: Gross Vehicle Weight Rating, see *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-47*.

GAWR FRT: Gross Axle Weight Rating for the front axle, see *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-47*.

GAWR RR: Gross Axle Weight Rating for the rear axle, see *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-47*.

Intended Outboard Sidewall: The side of an asymmetrical tire, that must always face outward when mounted on a vehicle.

KiloPascal (kPa): The metric unit for air pressure.

Light Truck (LT-Metric) Tire: A tire used on light duty trucks and some multipurpose passenger vehicles.

Load Index: An assigned number ranging from 1 to 279 that corresponds to the load carrying capacity of a tire.

Maximum Inflation Pressure: The maximum air pressure to which a cold tire may be inflated. The maximum air pressure is molded onto the sidewall.

Maximum Load Rating: The load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

Maximum Loaded Vehicle Weight: The sum of curb weight; accessory weight; vehicle capacity weight; and production options weight.

Normal Occupant Weight: The number of occupants a vehicle is designed to seat multiplied by 150 lbs (68 kg). See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-47*.

Occupant Distribution: Designated seating positions.

Outward Facing Sidewall: The side of an asymmetrical tire that has a particular side that faces outward when mounted on a vehicle. The side of the tire that contains a whitewall, bears white lettering or bears manufacturer, brand, and/or model name molding that is higher or deeper than the same moldings on the other sidewall of the tire.

Passenger (P-Metric) Tire: A tire used on passenger cars and some light duty trucks and multipurpose vehicles.

Recommended Inflation Pressure: Vehicle manufacturer's recommended tire inflation pressure and shown on the tire placard. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-67* and *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-47*.

Radial Ply Tire: A pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Rim: A metal support for a tire and upon which the tire beads are seated.

Sidewall: The portion of a tire between the tread and the bead.

Speed Rating: An alphanumeric code assigned to a tire indicating the maximum speed at which a tire can operate.

Traction: The friction between the tire and the road surface. The amount of grip provided.

Tread: The portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

Treadwear Indicators: Narrow bands, sometimes called "wear bars," that show across the tread of a tire when only 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) of tread remains. See *When It Is Time for New Tires on page 5-73*.

UTQGS (Uniform Tire Quality Grading Standards): A tire information system that provides consumers with ratings for a tire's traction, temperature, and treadwear. Ratings are determined by tire manufacturers using government testing procedures. The ratings are molded into the sidewall of the tire. See *Uniform Tire Quality Grading on page 5-75*.

Vehicle Capacity Weight: The number of designated seating positions multiplied by 150 lbs (68 kg) plus the rated cargo load. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-47*.

Vehicle Maximum Load on the Tire: Load on an individual tire due to curb weight, accessory weight, occupant weight, and cargo weight.

Vehicle Placard: A label permanently attached to a vehicle showing the vehicle's capacity weight and the original equipment tire size and recommended inflation pressure. See "Tire and Loading Information Label" under *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-47*.

Inflation - Tire Pressure

Tires need the correct amount of air pressure to operate effectively.

Notice: **Do not let anyone tell you that under-inflation or over-inflation is all right. It is not. If your tires do not have enough air (under-inflation), you can get the following:**

- **Too much flexing**
- **Too much heat**
- **Tire overloading**
- **Premature or irregular wear**
- **Poor handling**
- **Reduced fuel economy**

If your tires have too much air (over-inflation), you can get the following:

- **Unusual wear**
- **Poor handling**
- **Rough ride**
- **Needless damage from road hazards**

A Tire and Loading Information label is attached to the vehicle's center pillar (B-pillar), below the driver's door lock post (striker). This label lists your vehicle's original equipment tires and their recommended cold tire inflation pressures. The recommended cold tire inflation pressure, shown on the label, is the minimum amount of air pressure needed to support your vehicle's maximum load carrying capacity.

For additional information regarding how much weight your vehicle can carry, and an example of the tire and loading information label, see *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-47*.

When to Check

Check your tires once a month or more. Do not forget to check the spare tire. For additional information regarding the spare tire, see *Spare Tire on page 5-98*.

How to Check

Use a good quality pocket-type gage to check tire pressure. You cannot tell if your tires are properly inflated simply by looking at them. Radial tires may look properly inflated even when they're underinflated. Check the tire's inflation pressure when the tires are cold. Cold means your vehicle has been sitting for at least three hours or driven no more than 1 mile (1.6 km).

Remove the valve cap from the tire valve stem. Press the tire gage firmly onto the valve to get a pressure measurement. If the cold tire inflation pressure matches the recommended pressure on the Tire and Loading Information label, no further adjustment is necessary. If the inflation pressure is low, add air until you reach the recommended amount.

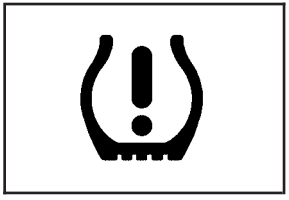
If you overfill the tire, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the tire valve. Recheck the tire pressure with the tire gage.

Be sure to put the valve caps back on the valve stems. They help prevent leaks by keeping out dirt and moisture.

Tire Pressure Monitor System

The Tire Pressure Monitor (TPM) system uses radio and sensor technology to check tire pressure levels. If your vehicle has this feature, sensors are mounted on each tire and wheel assembly, except the spare tire. The TPM sensors transmit tire pressure readings to a receiver located in the vehicle.

When a low tire pressure condition is detected, the TPM system will display the CHECK TIRE PRESSURE warning message on the Driver Information Center (DIC); and at the same time illuminate the low tire pressure warning symbol. For additional information and details about the DIC operation and displays, see *DIC Operation and Displays on page 3-50* and *DIC Warnings and Messages on page 3-53*.



When the tire pressure monitoring system warning light is lit, one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

You should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure as indicated on the vehicle's tire information placard. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability. Each tire, including the spare, should be checked monthly when cold and set to the recommended inflation pressure as specified in the vehicle placard and owner's manual.

The Tire and Loading Information label (tire information placard) shows the size of your vehicle's original tires and the correct inflation pressure for your vehicle's tires when they are cold. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-67*. For the location of the tire and loading information label, see *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-47*.

Your vehicle's TPM system can alert you about a low tire pressure condition but it does not replace normal tire maintenance. See *Tire Inspection and Rotation on page 5-71* and *Tires on page 5-60*.

Notice: **Do not use a tire sealant if your vehicle is equipped with Tire Pressure Monitors. The liquid sealant can damage the tire pressure monitor sensors.**

TPM Sensor Identification Codes

Each TPM sensor has a unique identification code. Any time you rotate your vehicle's tires or replace one or more of the TPM sensors, the identification codes will need to be matched to the new tire/wheel position. Each tire/wheel position is matched to a sensor, by increasing or decreasing the tire's air pressure. The sensors are matched to the tire/wheel positions in the following order: left front (LF); right front (RF); right rear (RR) and left rear (LR).

You will have one minute to match the first tire/wheel position, and five minutes overall to match all four tire/wheel positions. If it takes longer than one minute, to match the first tire and wheel, or more than five minutes to match all four tire and wheel positions the matching process stops and you will need to start over.

The TPM sensor matching process is outlined below:

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Turn the ignition switch to RUN with the engine off.
3. Turn the exterior lamp switch from the off position to the on position four times within three seconds. A double horn chirp will sound and the TPM low tire warning light will begin to flash. The double horn chirp and flashing TPM warning light indicate that the TPM matching process has started. The TPM warning light should continue flashing throughout the matching procedure. The SERVICE TIRE MONITOR message will be displayed on the Driver Information Center (DIC).
4. Start with the left (driver's side) front tire.

5. Remove the valve cap from the valve cap stem. Activate the TPM sensor by increasing or decreasing the tire's air pressure for 10 seconds, then stop and listen for a single horn chirp. The single horn chirp should sound within 15 seconds, confirming that the sensor identification code has been matched to this tire and wheel position. If you do not hear the confirming single horn chirp, you will need to start over with step number one. To let air-pressure out of a tire you can use the pointy end of the valve cap, a pencil-style air pressure gage or a key.
6. Proceed to the right (passenger's side) front tire, and repeat the procedure in Step 5.
7. Proceed to the right (passenger's side) rear tire, and repeat the procedure in Step 5.
8. Proceed to the left (driver's side) rear tire, and repeat the procedure in Step 5.
9. After hearing the confirming horn chirp for the left rear tire, check to see if the TPM warning light is still flashing. If yes, turn the ignition switch to OFF.
10. Set all four tires to the recommended air pressure level as indicated on the Tire and Loading Information label.
11. Put the valve caps back on the valve stems

The spare tire does not have a TPM sensor. If you replace one of the road tires with the spare, the CHECK TIRE PRESSURE message will be displayed on the DIC screen. This message should go off once you re-install the road tire containing the TPM sensor. The SERVICE TIRE MONITOR message is displayed when the TPM system is malfunctioning. One or more missing or inoperable TPM sensors will cause the service tire monitor message to be displayed. See your dealer for service.

Federal Communications Commission and Industry and Science Canada

The TPM system operates on a radio frequency subject to Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Rules and with Industry and Science Canada.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry and Science Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Changes or modifications to this system by other than an authorized service facility could void authorization to use this equipment.

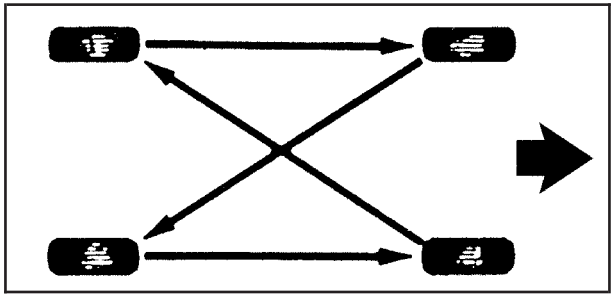
Tire Inspection and Rotation

Tires should be rotated every 5,000 to 8,000 miles (8 000 to 13 000 km).

Any time you notice unusual wear, rotate your tires as soon as possible and check wheel alignment. Also check for damaged tires or wheels. See *When It Is Time for New Tires on page 5-73* and *Wheel Replacement on page 5-76* for more information.

Make sure the spare tire is stored securely. Push, pull, and then try to rotate or turn the tire. If it moves, use the ratchet/wheel wrench to tighten the cable. See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 5-79*.

The purpose of regular rotation is to achieve more uniform wear for all tires on the vehicle. The first rotation is the most important. See *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4*.



When rotating your tires, always use the correct rotation pattern shown here.

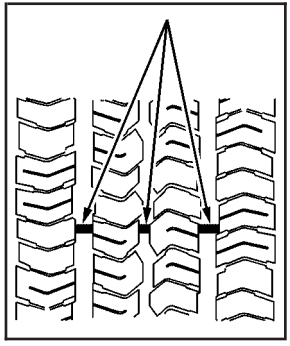
Do not include the spare tire in your tire rotation.

After the tires have been rotated, adjust the front and rear inflation pressures as shown on the tire and loading information label. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-47* and *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-67*, for more information. Make certain that all wheel nuts are properly tightened. See “Wheel Nut Torque” under *Capacities and Specifications on page 5-119*.

⚠ CAUTION:

Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel nuts become loose after a time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When you change a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, you can use a cloth or a paper towel to do this; but be sure to use a scraper or wire brush later, if needed, to get all the rust or dirt off. See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 5-79*.

When It Is Time for New Tires



One way to tell when it's time for new tires is to check the treadwear indicators, which will appear when your tires have only 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) or less of tread remaining. Some commercial truck tires may not have treadwear indicators.

You need a new tire if any of the following statements are true:

- You can see the indicators at three or more places around the tire.
- You can see cord or fabric showing through the tire's rubber.
- The tread or sidewall is cracked, cut or snagged deep enough to show cord or fabric.
- The tire has a bump, bulge or split.
- The tire has a puncture, cut or other damage that can't be repaired well because of the size or location of the damage.

Buying New Tires

To find out what kind and size of tires you need, look at the Certification/Tire label or the Tire and Loading Information label. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-47* for more information about these labels and where they can be found on your vehicle.

The tires installed on your vehicle when it was new had a Tire Performance Criteria Specifications (TPC Spec) number on each tire's sidewall. When you get new tires, GM recommends that you get tires with that same TPC Spec number. That way your vehicle will continue to have tires that are designed to give proper endurance, handling, speed rating, load range, traction, ride, tire pressure monitoring system performance and other things during normal service on your vehicle. If your tires have an all-season tread design, the TPC number will be followed by an "MS" (for mud and snow).

Whenever you replace your tires with those not having a TPC Spec number, make sure they are the same size, load range, speed rating and construction type (bias, bias-belted or radial) as your original tires.

If you replace your vehicle's tires with those not having a TPC Spec number, the tire pressure monitoring system may give an inaccurate low pressure warning. Non-TPC Spec tires may give a low pressure warning that is higher or lower than the proper warning level you would get with TPC Spec numbered tires.

⚠ CAUTION:

Mixing tires could cause you to lose control while driving. If you mix tires of different sizes or types (radial and bias-belted tires), the vehicle may not handle properly, and you could have a crash. Using tires of different sizes may also cause damage to your vehicle. Be sure to use the same size and type tires on all wheels.

Your vehicle may be equipped with a different size spare than the road tires (those originally installed on your vehicle). When new, your vehicle included a spare tire and wheel assembly with a similar overall diameter as your vehicle's road tires and wheels, so it is all right to drive on it. Because this spare was developed for use on your vehicle, it will not affect vehicle handling.

⚠ CAUTION:

If you use bias-ply tires on your vehicle, the wheel rim flanges could develop cracks after many miles of driving. A tire and/or wheel could fail suddenly, causing a crash. Use only radial-ply tires with the wheels on your vehicle.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A

The following information relates to the system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration, which grades tires by treadwear, traction and temperature performance. (This applies only to vehicles sold in the United States.)

The grades are molded on the sidewalls of most passenger car tires. The Uniform Tire Quality Grading system does not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches (25 to 30 cm), or to some limited-production tires.

While the tires available on General Motors passenger cars and light trucks may vary with respect to these grades, they must also conform to federal safety requirements and additional General Motors Tire Performance Criteria (TPC) standards.

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and a half (1.5) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction – AA, A, B, C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance. Warning: The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature – A, B, C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance

The wheels on your vehicle were aligned and balanced carefully at the factory to give you the longest tire life and best overall performance.

If you notice unusual tire wear or your vehicle pulling one way or the other, the alignment may need to be reset. If you notice your vehicle vibrating when driving on a smooth road, your wheels may need to be rebalanced.

Wheel Replacement

Replace any wheel that is bent, cracked, or badly rusted or corroded. If wheel nuts keep coming loose, the wheel, wheel bolts and wheel nuts should be replaced. If the wheel leaks air, replace it (except some aluminum wheels, which can sometimes be repaired). See your dealer if any of these conditions exist.

Your dealer will know the kind of wheel you need.

Each new wheel should have the same load-carrying capacity, diameter, width, offset and be mounted the same way as the one it replaces.

If you need to replace any of your wheels, wheel bolts or wheel nuts, replace them only with new GM original equipment parts. This way, you will be sure to have the right wheel, wheel bolts and wheel nuts for your vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION:

Using the wrong replacement wheels, wheel bolts or wheel nuts on your vehicle can be dangerous. It could affect the braking and handling of your vehicle, make your tires lose air and make you lose control. You could have a collision in which you or others could be injured. Always use the correct wheel, wheel bolts and wheel nuts for replacement.

Notice: **The wrong wheel can also cause problems with bearing life, brake cooling, speedometer or odometer calibration, headlamp aim, bumper height, vehicle ground clearance and tire clearance to the body and chassis.**

See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 5-79* for more information.

Used Replacement Wheels

⚠ CAUTION:

Putting a used wheel on your vehicle is dangerous. You can't know how it's been used or how far it's been driven. It could fail suddenly and cause a crash. If you have to replace a wheel, use a new GM original equipment wheel.

Tire Chains

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not use tire chains. There is not enough clearance. Tire chains used on a vehicle without the proper amount of clearance can cause damage to the brakes, suspension or other vehicle parts. The area damaged by the tire chains could cause you to lose control of your vehicle and you or others may be injured in a crash. Use another type of traction device only if its manufacturer recommends it for use on your vehicle and tire size combination and road conditions. Follow that manufacturer's instructions. To help avoid damage to your vehicle, drive slowly, re-adjust or remove the device if it is contacting your vehicle, and do not spin your wheels. If you do find traction devices that will fit, install them on the rear tires.

If a Tire Goes Flat

It's unusual for a tire to "blowout" while you're driving, especially if you maintain your tires properly. If air goes out of a tire, it's much more likely to leak out slowly. But if you should ever have a "blowout," here are a few tips about what to expect and what to do:

If a front tire fails, the flat tire will create a drag that pulls the vehicle toward that side. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and grip the steering wheel firmly. Steer to maintain lane position, and then gently brake to a stop well out of the traffic lane.

A rear blowout, particularly on a curve, acts much like a skid and may require the same correction you'd use in a skid. In any rear blowout, remove your foot from the accelerator pedal. Get the vehicle under control by steering the way you want the vehicle to go. It may be very bumpy and noisy, but you can still steer. Gently brake to a stop, well off the road if possible.

⚠ CAUTION:

Lifting a vehicle and getting under it to do maintenance or repairs is dangerous without the appropriate safety equipment and training. The jack provided with your vehicle is designed only for changing a flat tire. If it is used for anything else, you or others could be badly injured or killed if the vehicle slips off the jack. Use the jack provided with your vehicle only for changing a flat tire.

If a tire goes flat, the next part shows how to use your jacking equipment to change a flat tire safely.

Changing a Flat Tire

If a tire goes flat, avoid further tire and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on your hazard warning flashers.

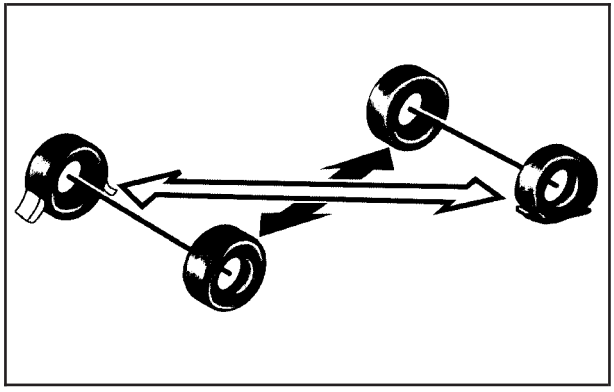
⚠ CAUTION:

Changing a tire can be dangerous. The vehicle can slip off the jack and roll over or fall on you or other people. You and they could be badly injured or even killed. Find a level place to change your tire. To help prevent the vehicle from moving:

1. **Set the parking brake firmly.**
2. **Put the shift lever in PARK (P).**
3. **Turn off the engine and do not restart while the vehicle is raised.**
4. **Do not allow passengers to remain in the vehicle.**

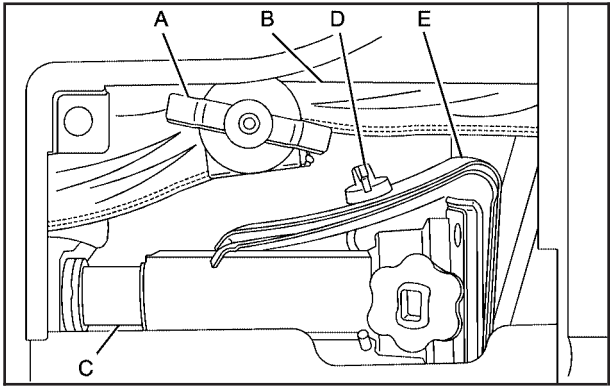
To be even more certain the vehicle will not move, you should put blocks at the front and rear of the tire farthest away from the one being changed. That would be the tire, on the other side, at the opposite end of the vehicle.

When you have a flat tire, use the following example as a guide to assist you in the placement of wheel blocks.



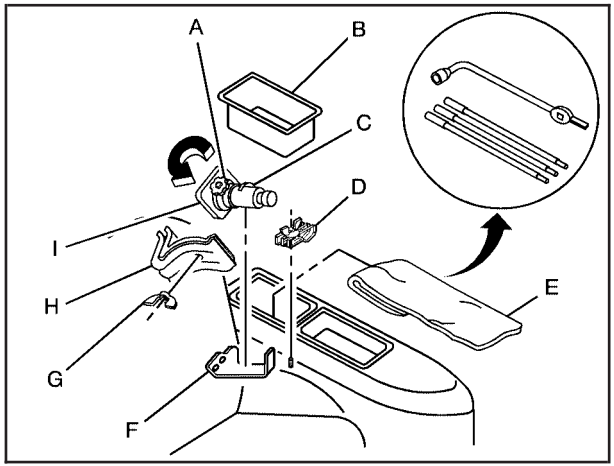
The following information will tell you next how to use the jack and change a tire.

Removing the Spare Tire and Tools



Escalade Rear Access Panel

A. Retaining Bracket and Wing Nut
B. Tool Kit and Jack Tools
C. Jack
D. Wing Nut Holding Tire Blocks
E. Wheel Blocks



Escalade ESV

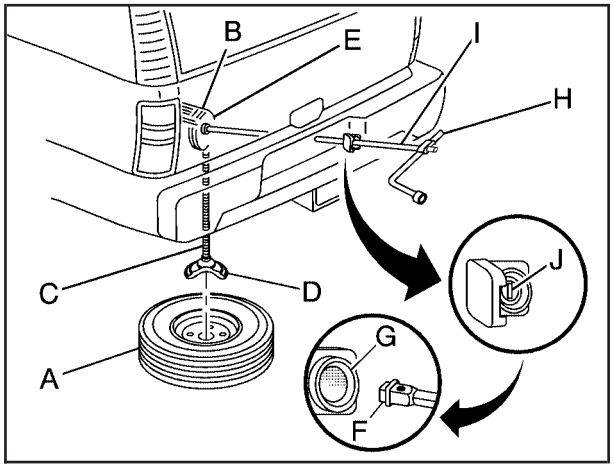
A. Knob
B. Removable Tray
C. Retaining Hook
D. Retaining Bracket and Wing Nut
E. Tool Kit and Jack Tools
F. Mounting Bracket
G. Wing Nut Holding Tire Blocks
H. Wheel Blocks
I. Jack

For Escalade, the equipment is located behind the left trim panel in the rear of the vehicle. Unlatch the release lever to open the trim panel door. Skip the first step and follow the last three steps only for the Escalade.

For Escalade ESV, the equipment you'll need is under the storage tray in the left trim panel.

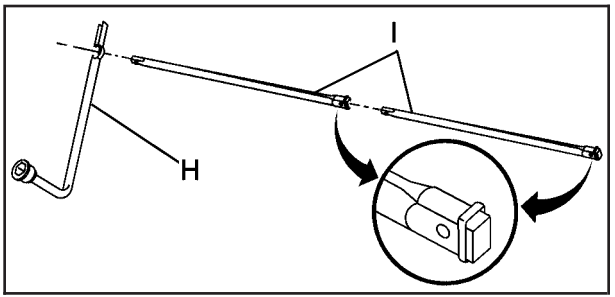
1. Remove the tray to access the tools.
2. Release the jack from its holder by turning the knob on the jack counterclockwise to lower the jack head.
3. Remove the wing nut used to retain the tool kit by turning the wing nut counterclockwise.
4. Remove the wheel blocks and the wheel block retainer by turning the wing nut counterclockwise.

You'll use the jack handle extensions and the wheel wrench to remove the underbody-mounted spare tire.

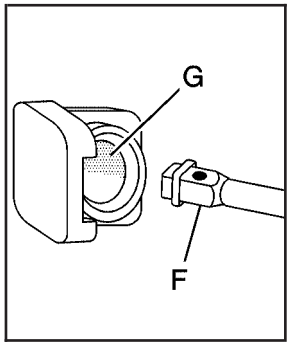


A. Spare Tire (Valve Stem Pointed Down)
B. Hoist Assembly
C. Hoist Cable
D. Tire Retainer
E. Hoist Shaft
F. Hoist End of Extension Tool
G. Hoist Shaft Access Hole
H. Wheel Wrench
I. Jack Handle Extensions
J. Hoist Lock (If Equipped)

1. Open the spare tire lock cover on the bumper and use the ignition key to remove the lock if your vehicle is equipped with a hoist lock (J).



2. Assemble the wheel wrench (H) and the two jack handle extensions (I) as shown.

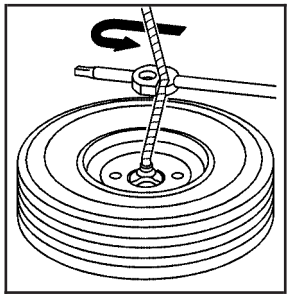


3. Insert the hoist end (open end) (F) of the extension through the hole (G) in the rear bumper.

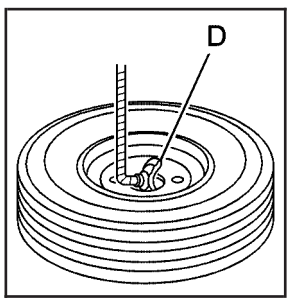
Be sure the hoist end of the extension connects to the hoist shaft (E). The ribbed square end of the extension is used to lower the spare tire.

4. Turn the wheel wrench (H) counterclockwise to lower the spare tire to the ground. Continue to turn the wheel wrench until the spare tire can be pulled out from under the vehicle.

   If the spare tire does not lower to the ground, the secondary latch is engaged and preventing the tire from lowering. See *Secondary Latch System on page 5-90* for instructions on lowering the spare tire.



5. Use the wheel wrench hook that allows you to pull the hoist cable towards you to assist in reaching the spare tire.

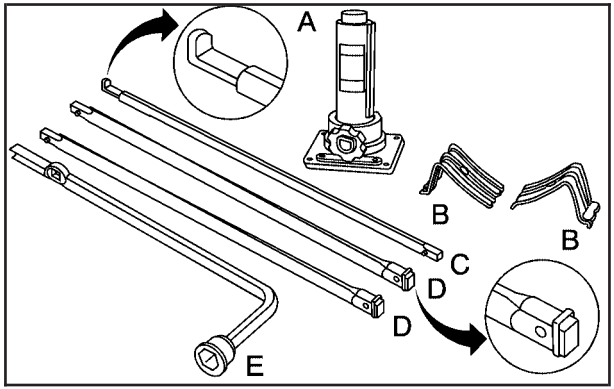


6. Tilt the retainer (D) at the end of the cable when the tire has been lowered, so it can be pulled up through the wheel opening.

7. Put the spare tire near the flat tire.

Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire

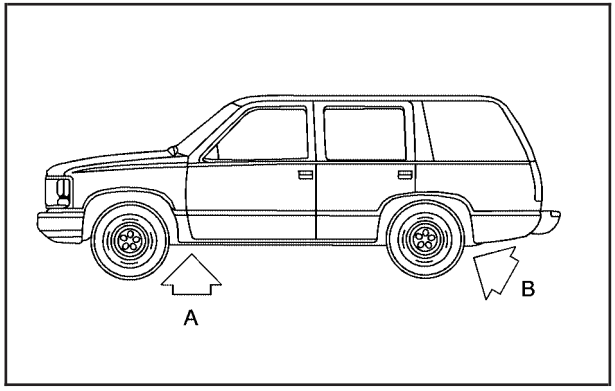
Use the following pictures and instructions to remove the flat tire and raise the vehicle.



The tools you'll be using include the jack (A), the wheel blocks (B), the jack handle (C), the jack handle extensions (D), and the wheel wrench (E).

1. Remove the center cap by placing the chisel end of the wheel wrench in the slot on the wheel and gently prying the cap out.

2. Use the wheel wrench to loosen all the wheel nuts. Turn the wheel wrench counterclockwise to loosen the wheel nuts. Don't remove the wheel nuts yet.



Jack Positions (Overall View)

These locations for the front (A) and rear (B) are the general area of jack placement. See text and art following for the exact jack placement.

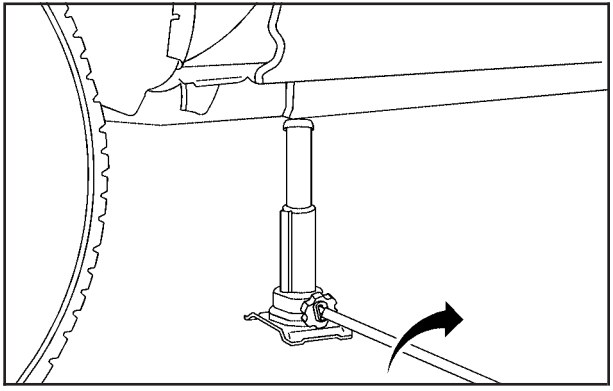
⚠ CAUTION:

Getting under a vehicle when it is jacked up is dangerous. If the vehicle slips off the jack you could be badly injured or killed. Never get under a vehicle when it is supported only by a jack.

⚠ CAUTION:

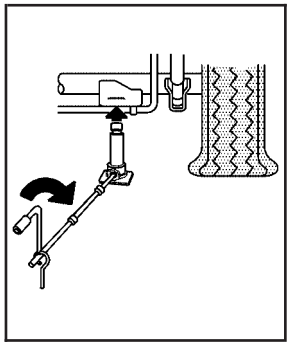
Raising your vehicle with the jack improperly positioned can damage the vehicle and even make the vehicle fall. To help avoid personal injury and vehicle damage, be sure to fit the jack lift head into the proper location before raising the vehicle.

3. Position the jack under the vehicle.



Front Position

Front Tire Flat: If the flat tire is on a front tire of the vehicle, you'll need to use the jack handle (C) and only one jack handle extension (D). Attach the wheel wrench to the jack handle extension. Attach the jack handle to the jack. Position the jack on the frame behind the flat tire where the frame sections overlap. Turn the wheel wrench clockwise to raise the vehicle. Raise the vehicle far enough off the ground so there is enough room for the spare tire to clear the ground.



Rear Position

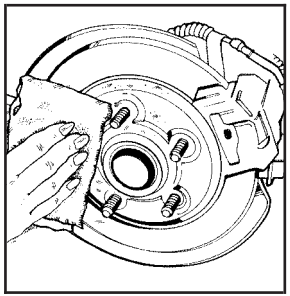
Rear Tire Flat: If the flat tire is on a rear tire of the vehicle, you'll need to use the jack handle (C) and both jack handle extensions (D). Attach the wheel wrench to the jack handle extensions. Attach the jack handle to the jack. Use the jacking pad provided on the rear axle.

4. Turn the wheel wrench clockwise to raise the vehicle. Raise the vehicle far enough off the ground so there is enough room for the spare tire to clear the ground.

5. Remove all the wheel nuts and take off the flat tire.

⚠ CAUTION:

Rust or dirt on the wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make the wheel nuts become loose after a time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When you change a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from the places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, you can use a cloth or a paper towel to do this; but be sure to use a scraper or wire brush later, if you need to, to get all the rust or dirt off.



6. Remove any rust or dirt from the wheel bolts, mounting surfaces and spare wheel.

7. Put the wheel nuts back on after mounting the spare, with the rounded end of the nuts toward the wheel. Tighten each wheel nut by hand. Then use the wheel wrench to tighten the nuts until the wheel is held against the hub.

⚠ CAUTION:

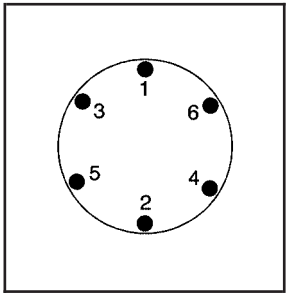
Never use oil or grease on studs or nuts. If you do, the nuts might come loose. Your wheel could fall off, causing a serious accident.

8. Turn the wheel wrench counterclockwise to lower the vehicle. Lower the jack completely.

⚠ CAUTION:

Incorrect wheel nuts or improperly tightened wheel nuts can cause the wheel to come loose and even come off. This could lead to an accident. Be sure to use the correct wheel nuts. If you have to replace them, be sure to get new GM original equipment wheel nuts. Stop somewhere as soon as you can and have the nuts tightened with a torque wrench to the proper torque specification. See *Capacities and Specifications on page 5-119* for wheel nut torque specification.

Notice: **Improperly tightened wheel nuts can lead to brake pulsation and rotor damage. To avoid expensive brake repairs, evenly tighten the wheel nuts in the proper sequence and to the proper torque specification. See *Capacities and Specifications on page 5-119* for the wheel nut torque specification.**



9. Tighten the nuts firmly in a crisscross sequence as shown by turning the wheel wrench clockwise.

When you reinstall the regular wheel and tire, you must also reinstall the center cap. Place the cap on the wheel and tap it into place until it seats flush with the wheel. The cap only goes on one way. Be sure to line up the tab on the center cap with the indentation on the wheel.

Secondary Latch System

Your vehicle has an underbody-mounted tire hoist assembly equipped with a secondary latch system. It is designed to stop the spare tire from suddenly falling off your vehicle. For the secondary latch to work, the spare must be installed with the valve stem pointing down. See *Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools on page 5-94*.

⚠ CAUTION:

Before beginning this procedure read all the instructions. Failure to read and follow the instructions could damage the hoist assembly and you and others could get hurt. Read and follow the instructions listed below.

To release the spare tire from the secondary latch, do the following:

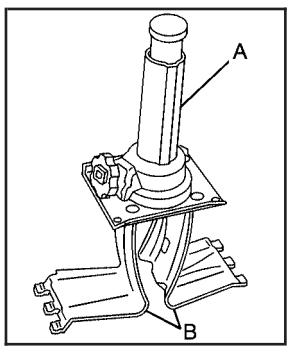
1. Check under the vehicle to see if the cable end is visible.

   If the cable is not visible proceed to Step 6.

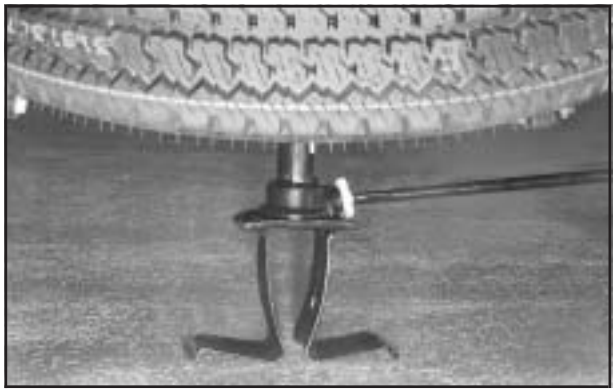
2. If it is visible, first try to tighten the cable by turning the wheel wrench clockwise until you hear two clicks or feel it skip twice. You cannot overtighten the cable.

3. Loosen the cable by turning the wrench counterclockwise three or four turns.

4. Repeat this procedure at least two times. If the spare tire lowers to the ground, continue with Step 5 of *Removing the Spare Tire and Tools on page 5-80*.
5. If the spare does not lower, turn the wrench counterclockwise until approximately 6 inches (15 cm) of cable is exposed.
6. Stand the wheel blocks on their shortest ends, with the backs facing each other.



7. Place the bottom edge of the jack (A) on the wheel blocks (B), separating them so that the jack is balanced securely.



8. Attach the jack handle, extension, and wheel wrench to the jack and place it (with the wheel blocks) under the vehicle toward the front of the rear bumper.

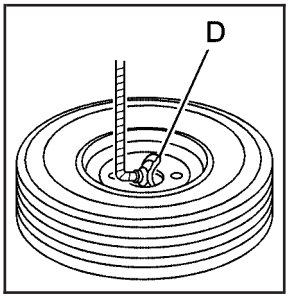
9. Position the center lift point of the jack under the center of the spare tire.
10. Turn the wrench clockwise to raise the jack until it lifts the end fitting.
11. Continue raising the jack until the spare tire stops moving upward and is held firmly in place. The secondary latch has released and the spare tire is balancing on the jack.
12. Lower the jack by turning the wheel wrench counterclockwise. Keep lowering the jack until the spare tire slides off the jack or is hanging by the cable.

⚠ CAUTION:

Someone standing too close during the procedure could be injured by the jack. If the spare tire does not slide off the jack completely, make sure no one is behind you or on either side of you as you pull the jack out from the spare.

13. Disconnect the jack handle from the jack and carefully remove the jack. Use one hand to push against the spare while firmly pulling the jack out from under the spare tire with the other hand.

    If the spare tire is hanging from the cable, insert the hoist handle, extension and wheel wrench into the hoist shaft hole in the bumper and turn the wheel wrench counterclockwise to lower the spare the rest of the way.



14. Tilt the retainer (D) at the end of the cable and pull it through the wheel opening. Pull the tire out from under the vehicle.

15. Turn the wheel wrench in the hoist shaft hole in the bumper clockwise to raise the cable back up if the cable is hanging under the vehicle.

Have the hoist assembly inspected as soon as you can. You will not be able to store a spare or flat tire using the hoist assembly until it has been replaced.

To continue changing the flat tire, see *Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire on page 5-84*.

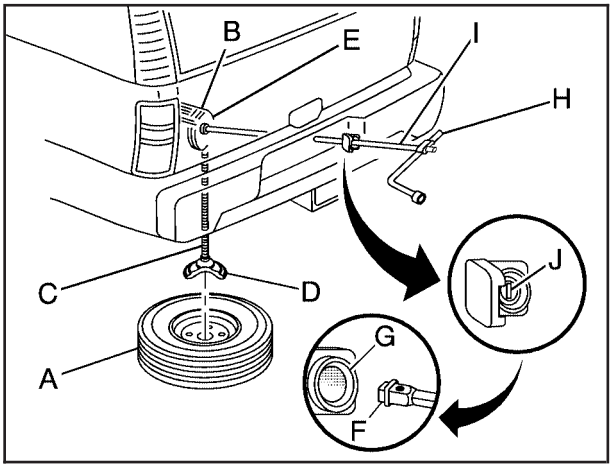
Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools

⚠ CAUTION:

Storing a jack, a tire, or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store all these in the proper place.

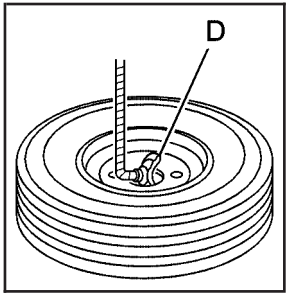
Notice: **Storing an aluminum wheel with a flat tire under your vehicle for an extended period of time or with the valve stem pointing up may damage the wheel. Always stow the wheel with the valve stem pointing down and have the wheel/tire repaired as soon as possible.**

Store the tire under the rear of the vehicle in the spare tire carrier. Use the art and text following to help you:

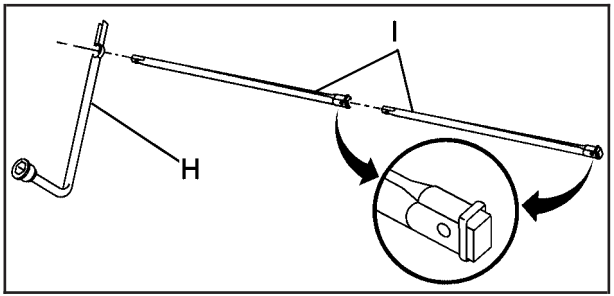


A. Spare Tire (Valve Stem Pointed Down)
B. Hoist Assembly
C. Hoist Cable
D. Tire Retainer
E. Hoist Shaft
F. Hoist End of Extension Tool
G. Hoist Shaft Access Hole
H. Wheel Wrench
I. Jack Handle Extensions
J. Hoist Lock (If Equipped)

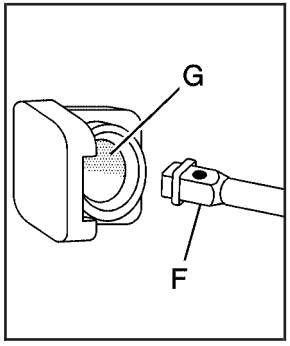
1. Put the tire on the ground at the rear of the vehicle with the valve stem pointed down and to the rear of the vehicle.



2. Tilt the retainer (D) downward and through the wheel opening. Make sure the retainer is fully seated across the underside of the wheel.

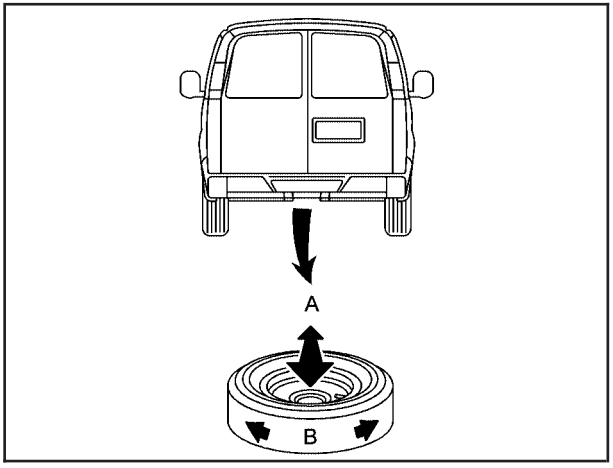


3. Attach the wheel wrench (H) and extensions (I) together.



4. Insert the hoist end (F) through the hole (G) in the rear bumper and into the hoist shaft.

5. Raise the tire part way upward. Make sure the retainer is seated in the wheel opening.
6. Raise the tire fully against the underside of the vehicle by turning the wheel wrench clockwise until you hear two clicks or feel it skip twice. You cannot overtighten the cable.



7. Make sure the tire is stored securely. Push, pull (A), and then try to turn (B) the tire. If the tire moves, use the wheel wrench to tighten the cable.
8. Reinstall the spare tire lock (if equipped).

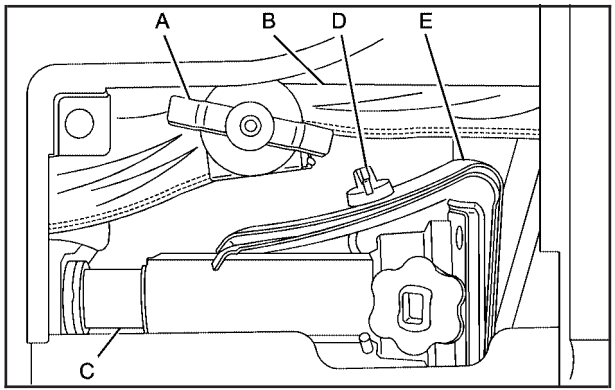
To store the tools, follow these procedures:

For Escalade, do the following:

1. Put the tool kit and the jack tools in the tool bag and place in the retaining clip above the jack.
2. Tighten down with the wing nut.
3. Assemble wheel blocks and jack together with the wing nut and retaining hook.
4. Position behind the jack storage cover in the left rear side panel and tighten, adjusting clockwise until the jack is secured tight in the mounting bracket. Be sure to position the holes in the base of the jack onto the pin in the mounting bracket.

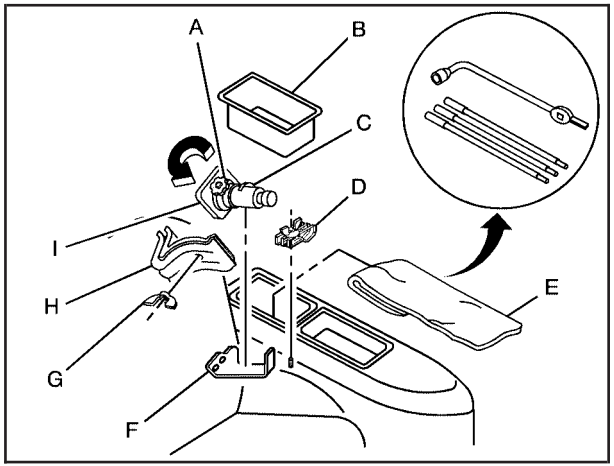
For Escalade ESV, do the following:

1. Return the tool kit and jack tools to the tool bag.
2. Assemble wheel blocks and jack together with the wing nut and retaining hook.
3. Position under the jack storage tray in the left rear side panel below the wheelbase and tighten, adjusting clockwise until the jack is secured tight in the mounting bracket. Be sure to position the holes in the base of the jack onto the pin in the mounting bracket.
4. Use the retaining clip to fasten the tool kit on the stud in the storage compartment in the rear left trim panel and turn the wing nut clockwise to secure.
5. Return the storage tray.



Escalade Rear Access Panel

A. Retaining Bracket and Wing Nut
B. Tool Kit and Jack Tools
C. Jack
D. Wing Nut Holding Tire Blocks
E. Wheel Blocks



Escalade ESV

A. Knob
B. Removable Tray
C. Retaining Hook
D. Retaining Bracket and Wing Nut
E. Tool Kit and Jack Tools
F. Mounting Bracket
G. Wing Nut Holding Tire Blocks
H. Wheel Blocks
I. Jack

Spare Tire

Your vehicle, when new, had a fully-inflated spare tire. A spare tire may lose air over time, so check its inflation pressure regularly. See *Inflation - Tire Pressure on page 5-67* and *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-47* for information regarding proper tire inflation and loading your vehicle. For instruction on how to remove, install or store a spare tire, see *Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire on page 5-84* and *Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools on page 5-94*.

After installing the spare tire on your vehicle, you should stop as soon as possible and make sure the spare is correctly inflated. Have the damaged or flat road tire repaired or replaced as soon as you can and installed back onto your vehicle. This way, a spare tire will be available in case you need it again.

Your vehicle may have a different size spare tire than the road tires, those originally installed on your vehicle. This spare tire was developed for use on your vehicle, so it is all right to drive on it.

Appearance Care

Cleaning products can be hazardous. Some are toxic. Other cleaning products can burst into flames if a match is struck near them or if they get on a hot part of the vehicle. Some are dangerous if their fumes are inhaled in an enclosed space. When anything from a container is used to clean the vehicle, be sure to follow the manufacturer's warnings and instructions. Always open the doors or windows of the vehicle when cleaning the inside.

Never use these to clean the vehicle:

- Gasoline
- Benzene
- Naphtha
- Carbon Tetrachloride
- Acetone
- Paint Thinner
- Turpentine
- Lacquer Thinner
- Nail Polish Remover

They can all be hazardous — some more than others — and they can all damage the vehicle, too.

Do not use any of these products unless this manual says you can. In many uses, these will damage the vehicle:

- Alcohol
- Laundry Soap
- Bleach
- Reducing Agents

Fabric/Carpet

Use a vacuum cleaner often to get rid of dust and loose dirt. Wipe vinyl, leather, plastic, and painted surfaces with a clean, damp cloth.

GM-approved cleaning products can be obtained from your dealer.

Here are some cleaning tips:

- Always read the instructions on the cleaner label.
- Clean up stains as soon as you can before they set.
- Carefully scrape off any excess stain.
- Use a clean cloth or sponge, and change to a clean area often. A soft brush may be used if stains are stubborn.
- To avoid forming a ring on fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately or it will set.

Most stains can be removed with club soda water. To clean, use the following instructions:

1. For liquids: blot with a clean, soft, white cloth. For solids: remove as much as possible and then vacuum or brush.
2. Apply club soda water to a clean, soft, white cloth. Do not over-saturate; the cloth should not drip water.
3. Clean the entire area. Avoid getting the fabric too wet.
4. Start cleaning from the seams into the stain to avoid a ring effect.
5. Continue cleaning, using a clean area of the cloth each time it becomes soiled.
6. When the stain is removed, blot the cleaned area with another dry, clean, soft, white cloth.

Using Cleaner on Fabric

1. First, try the cleaner on an area of the fabric that is not easily seen to make sure the cleaner does not affect the color of the fabric.
2. For liquids: blot with a clean, soft, white cloth. For solids: remove as much as possible and then vacuum or brush.
3. Spray a small amount of the cleaner onto a clean soft, white, cloth. Do not apply spray directly to the fabric.
4. Start cleaning from the seams into the stain to avoid a ring effect.
5. Continue cleaning, using a clean area of the cloth each time it becomes soiled.
6. When the stain is removed, blot the cleaned area with another dry, clean, soft, white cloth.
7. If the cleaner leaves a ring effect, follow up with the club soda water instructions given earlier in this section.

Special Fabric Cleaning Problems

Stains caused by such things as catsup, black coffee, egg, fruit, fruit juice, milk, soft drinks, vomit, urine, and blood can be removed using the club soda water instructions given earlier in this section. If an odor lingers after cleaning vomit or urine, treat the area with a water and baking soda solution: 1 teaspoon (5 ml) of baking soda to 1 cup (250 ml) of lukewarm water. Let dry.

Stains caused by oil and grease can be cleaned with an approved GM cleaner and a clean, white cloth.

1. Carefully scrape off excess stain.
2. Clean with cool water and allow to dry completely.
3. If a stain remains, follow the “Using Cleaner on Fabric” instructions described earlier.

Vinyl

Use warm water and a clean cloth.

- Rub with a clean, damp cloth to remove dirt. This may have to be done more than once.
- Things like tar, asphalt, and shoe polish will stain if they are not removed quickly. Use a clean cloth and vinyl cleaner. See your dealer for this product.

Leather

Use a soft cloth with lukewarm water and a mild soap or saddle soap and wipe dry with a soft cloth. Then, let the leather dry naturally. Do not use heat to dry.

- For stubborn stains, use a leather cleaner.
- Never use oils, varnishes, solvent-based or abrasive cleaners, furniture polish, or shoe polish on leather.
- Soiled or stained leather should be cleaned immediately. If dirt is allowed to work into the finish, it can harm the leather.

Instrument Panel

Use only mild soap and water to clean the top surfaces of the instrument panel. Sprays containing silicones or waxes may cause annoying reflections in the windshield and even make it difficult to see through the windshield under certain conditions.

Interior Plastic Components

Use only a mild soap and water solution on a soft cloth or sponge. Commercial cleaners may affect the surface finish.

Wood Panels

Use a clean cloth moistened in warm, soapy water (use mild dish washing soap). Dry the wood immediately with a clean cloth.

Speaker Covers

Vacuum around a speaker cover gently, so that the speaker will not be damaged. Clean spots with just water and mild soap.

Glass Surfaces

Glass should be cleaned often. GM Glass Cleaner or a liquid household glass cleaner will remove normal tobacco smoke and dust films on interior glass. See *Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials on page 5-106*.

Notice: **If you use abrasive cleaners when cleaning glass surfaces on your vehicle, you could scratch the glass and/or cause damage to the rear window defogger and the integrated radio antenna. When cleaning the glass on your vehicle, use only a soft cloth and glass cleaner.**

Care of Safety Belts

Keep belts clean and dry.

⚠ CAUTION:

Do not bleach or dye safety belts. If you do, it may severely weaken them. In a crash, they might not be able to provide adequate protection. Clean safety belts only with mild soap and lukewarm water.

Weatherstrips

Silicone grease on weatherstrips will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak. Apply silicone grease with a clean cloth. During very cold, damp weather frequent application may be required. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-13*.

Washing Your Vehicle

The paint finish on the vehicle provides beauty, depth of color, gloss retention, and durability.

The best way to preserve the vehicle's finish is to keep it clean by washing it often with lukewarm or cold water.

Do not wash the vehicle in the direct rays of the sun. Use a car washing soap. Do not use strong soaps or chemical detergents. Be sure to rinse the vehicle well, removing all soap residue completely. GM-approved cleaning products can be obtained from your dealer. See *Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials on page 5-106*. Do not use cleaning agents that are petroleum based, or that contain acid or abrasives. All cleaning agents should be flushed promptly and not allowed to dry on the surface, or they could stain. Dry the finish with a soft, clean chamois or an all-cotton towel to avoid surface scratches and water spotting.

High pressure car washes may cause water to enter the vehicle.

Cleaning Exterior Lamps/Lenses

Use only lukewarm or cold water, a soft cloth and a car washing soap to clean exterior lamps and lenses. Follow instructions under *Washing Your Vehicle on page 5-103*.

Finish Care

Occasional waxing or mild polishing of the vehicle by hand may be necessary to remove residue from the paint finish. GM-approved cleaning products can be obtained from your dealer. See *Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials on page 5-106*.

The vehicle has a "basecoat/clearcoat" paint finish. The clearcoat gives more depth and gloss to the colored basecoat. Always use waxes and polishes that are non-abrasive and made for a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish.

Notice: **Machine compounding or aggressive polishing on a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish may damage it. Use only non-abrasive waxes and polishes that are made for a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish on your vehicle.**

Foreign materials such as calcium chloride and other salts, ice melting agents, road oil and tar, tree sap, bird droppings, chemicals from industrial chimneys, etc., can damage the vehicle's finish if they remain on painted surfaces. Wash the vehicle as soon as possible. If necessary, use non-abrasive cleaners that are marked safe for painted surfaces to remove foreign matter.

Exterior painted surfaces are subject to aging, weather, and chemical fallout that can take their toll over a period of years. To help keep the paint finish looking new, keep the vehicle in a garage or covered whenever possible.

Windshield, Backglass, and Wiper Blades

If the windshield is not clear after using the windshield washer, or if the wiper blade chatters when running, wax, sap or other material may be on the blade or windshield.

Clean the outside of the windshield with a full-strength glass cleaning liquid. The windshield is clean if beads do not form when you rinse it with water.

Grime from the windshield will stick to the wiper blades and affect their performance. Clean the blade by wiping vigorously with a cloth soaked in full-strength windshield washer solvent. Then rinse the blade with water.

Check the wiper blades and clean them as necessary; replace blades that look worn.

Aluminum or Chrome-Plated Wheels

The vehicle may be equipped with either aluminum or chrome-plated wheels.

Keep the wheels clean using a soft clean cloth with mild soap and water. Rinse with clean water. After rinsing thoroughly, dry with a soft clean towel. A wax may then be applied.

Notice: **If you use strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes, cleaners, brushes, or cleaners that contain acid on aluminum or chrome-plated wheels, you could damage the surface of the wheel(s). The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Use only GM-approved cleaners on aluminum or chrome-plated wheels.**

The surface of these wheels is similar to the painted surface of your vehicle. Do not use strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes, abrasive cleaners, cleaners with acid, or abrasive cleaning brushes on them because you could damage the surface. Do not use chrome polish on aluminum wheels.

Notice: **Using chrome polish on aluminum wheels could damage the wheels. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Use chrome polish on chrome wheels only.**

Use chrome polish only on chrome-plated wheels, but avoid any painted surface of the wheel, and buff off immediately after application.

Notice: **If you drive your vehicle through an automatic car wash that has silicone carbide tire cleaning brushes, you could damage the aluminum or chrome-plated wheels. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty. Never drive a vehicle equipped with aluminum or chrome-plated wheels through an automatic car wash that uses silicone carbide tire cleaning brushes.**

Do not take your vehicle through an automatic car wash that has silicone carbide tire cleaning brushes. These brushes can also damage the surface of these wheels.

Tires

To clean the tires, use a stiff brush with tire cleaner.

Notice: **Using petroleum-based tire dressing products on your vehicle may damage the paint finish and/or tires. When applying a tire dressing, always wipe off any overspray from all painted surfaces on your vehicle.**

Sheet Metal Damage

If the vehicle is damaged and requires sheet metal repair or replacement, make sure the body repair shop applies anti-corrosion material to parts repaired or replaced to restore corrosion protection.

Original manufacturer replacement parts will provide the corrosion protection while maintaining the warranty.

Finish Damage

Any stone chips, fractures or deep scratches in the finish should be repaired right away. Bare metal will corrode quickly and may develop into major repair expense.

Minor chips and scratches can be repaired with touch-up materials available from your GM dealer. Larger areas of finish damage can be corrected in your GM dealer's body and paint shop.

Underbody Maintenance

Chemicals used for ice and snow removal and dust control can collect on the underbody. If these are not removed, corrosion and rust can develop on the underbody parts such as fuel lines, frame, floor pan, and exhaust system even though they have corrosion protection.

At least every spring, flush these materials from the underbody with plain water. Clean any areas where mud and debris can collect. Dirt packed in close areas of the frame should be loosened before being flushed. Your GM dealer or an underbody car washing system can do this for you.

Chemical Paint Spotting

Some weather and atmospheric conditions can create a chemical fallout. Airborne pollutants can fall upon and attack painted surfaces on the vehicle. This damage can take two forms: blotchy, ring-shaped discolorations, and small, irregular dark spots etched into the paint surface.

Although no defect in the paint job causes this, GM will repair, at no charge to the owner, the surfaces of new vehicles damaged by this fallout condition within 12 months or 12,000 miles (20 000 km) of purchase, whichever occurs first.

Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials

See your GM dealer for more information on purchasing the following products.

Description	Usage
Polishing Cloth Wax-Treated	Interior and exterior polishing cloth.
Tar and Road Oil Remover	Removes tar, road oil, and asphalt.
Chrome Cleaner and Polish	Use on chrome or stainless steel.
White Sidewall Tire Cleaner	Removes soil and black marks from whitewalls.
Vinyl Cleaner	Cleans vinyl tops, upholstery, and convertible tops.
Glass Cleaner	Removes dirt, grime, smoke and fingerprints.
Chrome and Wire Wheel Cleaner	Removes dirt and grime from chrome wheels and wire wheel covers.
Finish Enhancer	Removes dust, fingerprints, and surface contaminants. Spray on and wipe off.

Description	Usage
Swirl Remover Polish	Removes swirl marks, fine scratches, and other light surface contamination.
Cleaner Wax	Removes light scratches and protects finish.
Foaming Tire Shine Low Gloss	Cleans, shines, and protects in one step. No wiping necessary.
Wash Wax Concentrate	Medium foaming shampoo. Cleans and lightly waxes. Biodegradable and phosphate free.
Spot Lifter	Quickly removes spots and stains from carpets, vinyl, and cloth upholstery.
Odor Eliminator	Odorless spray odor eliminator used on fabrics, vinyl, leather and carpet.
See your General Motors parts department for these products. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-13*.	

Vehicle Identification

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

This is the legal identifier for your vehicle. It appears on a plate in the front corner of the instrument panel, on the driver's side. You can see it if you look through the windshield from outside your vehicle. The VIN also appears on the Vehicle Certification and Service Parts labels and the certificates of title and registration.

Engine Identification

The eighth character in your VIN is the engine code. This code will help you identify your engine, specifications and replacement parts.

Service Parts Identification Label

You will find this label on the inside of the glove box. It is very helpful if you ever need to order parts. On this label, you will find the following:

- VIN
- Model designation
- Paint information
- Production options and special equipment

Be sure that this label is not removed from the vehicle.

Electrical System

Add-On Electrical Equipment

Notice: **Don't add anything electrical to your vehicle unless you check with your dealer first. Some electrical equipment can damage your vehicle and the damage wouldn't be covered by your warranty. Some add-on electrical equipment can keep other components from working as they should.**

Your vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to add anything electrical to your vehicle, see *Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle on page 1-85*.

Windshield Wiper Fuses

The windshield wiper motor is protected by an internal circuit breaker and a fuse. If the motor overheats due to heavy snow, etc., the wiper will stop until the motor cools. If the overload is caused by some electrical problem and not snow, etc., be sure to get it fixed.

Power Windows and Other Power Options

Circuit breakers protect the power windows and other power accessories. When the current load is too heavy, the circuit breaker opens and closes, protecting the circuit until the problem is fixed or goes away.

Fuses and Circuit Breakers

The wiring circuits in your vehicle are protected from short circuits by a combination of fuses, circuit breakers and fusible thermal links. This greatly reduces the chance of fires caused by electrical problems.

Look at the silver-colored band inside the fuse. If the band is broken or melted, replace the fuse. Be sure you replace a bad fuse with a new one of the identical size and rating.

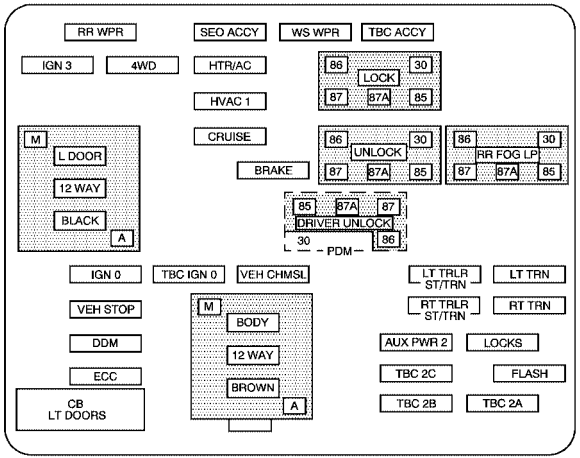
If you ever have a problem on the road and don't have a spare fuse, you can borrow one that has the same amperage. Just pick some feature of your vehicle that you can get along without – like the radio or cigarette lighter – and use its fuse, if it is the correct amperage. Replace it as soon as you can.

Instrument Panel Fuse Block

The fuse block access door is located on the driver's side edge of the instrument panel. Pull off the cover to access the fuse block.

To remove fuses if you don't have a fuse extractor, hold the end of the fuse between your thumb and index finger and pull straight out.

You may have spare fuses located behind the fuse block access door. These can be used to replace a bad fuse. However, make sure it is of the correct amperage.



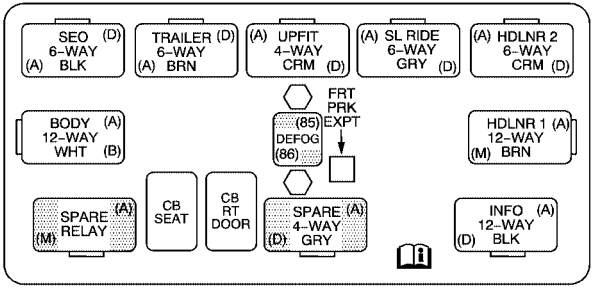
Fuses	Usage
RR Wiper	Rear Window Wiper Switch
SEO ACCY	Special Equipment Option Accessory
WS WPR	Windshield Wipers
TBC ACCY	Truck Body Controller Accessory
IGN 3	Rear Heated Seats Module
4WD	Four-Wheel Drive Switch, Air Suspension Switch/Module
HTR A/C	Not Used
LOCK	Power Door Lock Relay (Lock Function)
HVAC 1	Inside Rearview Mirror, Climate Control System
L DOOR	Driver's Door Harness Connection
CRUISE	Cruise Control
UNLOCK	Power Door Lock Relay (Unlock Function)

Fuses	Usage
RR FOG LP	Not Used
BRAKE	Brake Switch
DRIVER UNLOCK	Power Door Lock Relay (Driver's Door Unlock Function)
IGN 0	Brake Transmission Shift Interlock, Powertrain Control Module, Transmission
TBC IGN 0	Truck Body Controller
VEH CHMSL	Vehicle and Trailer High Mounted Stoplamp
LT TRLR ST/TRN	Left Turn Signal/Stop Trailer
LT TRN	Left Turn Signals and Sidemarkers
VEH STOP	Vehicle Stoplamps, Brake Module, Electronic Throttle Control Module
RT TRLR ST/TRN	Right Turn Signal/Stop Trailer
RT TRN	Right Turn Signals and Sidemarkers

Fuses	Usage
BODY	Harness Connector
DDM	Driver Door Module
AUX PWR 2	Instrument Panel Outlets, Rear Cargo Area Power Outlets
LOCKS	Rear Doors and Liftgate Power Lock Relay Feed
ECC	Liftgate
TBC 2C	Truck Body Controller
FLASH	Flasher Module
CB LT DOORS	Left Rear Power Window Circuit Breaker and Driver Door Module
TBC 2B	Truck Body Controller
TBC 2A	Truck Body Controller

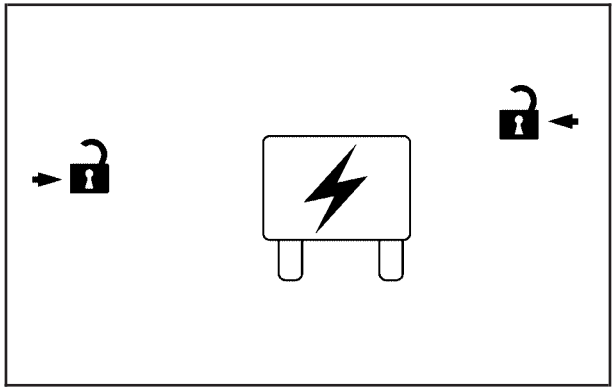
Center Instrument Panel Fuse Block

The center instrument panel utility block is located underneath the instrument panel, to the left of the steering column.



Device	Usage
SEO	Special Equipment Option/Off-road Lamps Harness Connector
TRAILER	Trailer Brake Wiring
UPFIT	Upfitter (Not Used)
SL RIDE	Ride Control (Not Used)
HDLR 2	Headliner Wiring Connector 2
BODY	Body Wiring Connector
DEFOG	Rear Defogger Relay
HDLNR 1	Headliner Wiring Connector 1
SPARE RELAY	Not Used
CB SEAT	Driver and Passenger Seat Module Circuit Breaker
CB RT DOOR	Rear Right Power Window, Passenger Door Module
SPARE	Not Used
INFO	Not Used

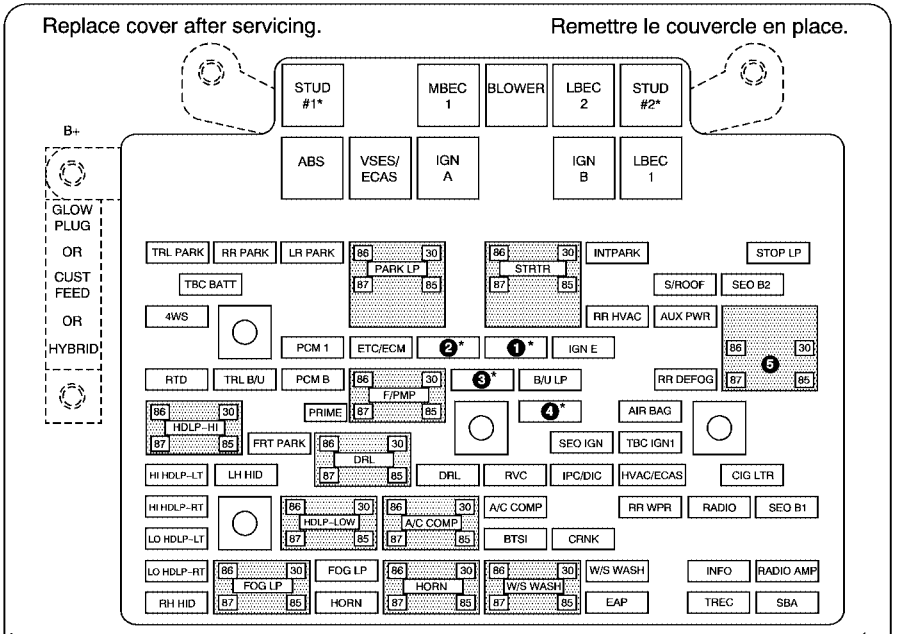
Underhood Fuse Block



The underhood fuse block in the engine compartment is located on the driver's side of the vehicle near the battery. Lift the cover for access to the fuse/relay block.

To remove fuses if you don't have a fuse extractor, hold the end of the fuse between your thumb and index finger and pull straight out.

See *Engine Compartment Overview on page 5-12* for more information on its location.



* NOTE: The function and amperage of these fuses are different for gas and diesel fueled engines. See Owners Manual for functions of studs #1 and #2.

FUNCTION/AMP--GAS
FONCTION/INTENSITÉ--ESSENCE

1. INJ 2/15A
2. INJ 1/15A
3. 02A/15A
4. 02B/15A
5. IGN 1

FUNCTION/AMP--DIESEL
FONCTION/INTENSITÉ--DIESEL

1. EDU/25A
2. ECMRPV/15A
3. FUEL HT/15A
4. ECMI/15A
5. EDU

* REMARQUE: La fonction et l'intensité de ces fusibles sont différentes pour les moteurs à essence et les moteurs diesel. Voir le Guide du propriétaire pour les fonctions des plots 1 et 2.

Fuses	Usage
GLOW PLUG	Not Used
CUST FEED	Gasoline Accessory Power
HYBRID	Hybrid
STUD #1	Accessory Power/Trailer Wiring
MBEC 1	Mid Bussed Electrical Center Power Feed, Front Seats, Right Doors
BLOWER	Front Climate Control Fan
LBEC 2	Left Bussed Electrical Center, Door Modules, Door Locks, Auxiliary Power Outlet—Rear Cargo Area and Instrument Panel
STUD #2	Accessory Power/Trailer Wiring Brake Feed
ABS	Anti-Lock Brakes
VSES/ECAS	Electronically Controlled Air Suspension

Fuses	Usage
IGN A	Ignition Switch
IGN B	Ignition Switch
LBEC 1	Left Bussed Electrical Center, Left Doors, Truck Body Controller, Flasher Module
TRL PARK	Parking Lamps Trailer Wiring
RR PARK	Right Rear Parking and Sidemarker Lamps
LR PARK	Left Rear Parking and Sidemarker Lamps
PARK LP	Parking Lamps Relay
STRTR	Starter Relay
INTPARK	Roof Marker Lamps
STOP LP	Stoplamps
TBC BATT	Truck Body Controller Battery Feed
S/ROOF	Sunroof
SEO B2	Off-Road Lamps

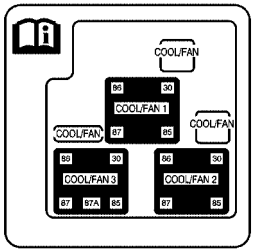
Fuses	Usage
4WS	Vent Solenoid Canister
RR HVAC	Not Used
AUX PWR	Auxiliary Power Outlet — Console
IGN 1	PCM Ignition
PCM 1	Powertrain Control Module
ETC/ECM	Electronic Throttle Control, Electronic Brake Controller
INJ 1	Ignition Coil, Fuel Injectors-Bank 1
INJ 2	Ignition Coil, Fuel Injectors-Bank 2
IGN E	Instrument Panel Cluster, Air Conditioning Relay, Turn Signal/Hazard Switch, Starter Relay, Electronic Brake Controller TC2 Mode Switch
RTD	Electronic Brake Controller Battery Feed
TRL B/U	Backup Lamps Trailer Wiring
PCM B	Powertrain Control Module, Fuel Pump

Fuses	Usage
F/PMP	Fuel Pump (Relay)
02A	Oxygen Sensors
B/U LP	Back-up Lamps, Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control System
RR DEFOG	Rear Window Defogger
HDLP-HI	Headlamp High Beam Relay
PRIME	Not Used
O2B	Oxygen Sensors
AIRBAG	Supplemental Inflatable Restraint System
FRT PARK	Front Parking Lamps, Sidemarker Lamps
DRL	Daytime Running Lamps (Relay)
SEO IGN	Rear Defog Relay
TBC IGN1	Truck Body Controller Ignition
HI HDLP-LT	High Beam Headlamp-Left
LH HID	Not Used

Fuses	Usage
DRL	Daytime Running Lamps
RVC	Regulated Voltage Control
IPC/DIC	Instrument Panel Cluster/Driver Information Center
HVAC/ECAS	Climate Control Controller/Electronically Controlled Air Suspension
CIG LTR	Cigarette Lighter
HI HDLP-RT	High Beam Headlamp-Right
HDLP-LOW	Headlamp Low Beam Relay
A/C COMP	Air Conditioning Compressor Relay
A/C COMP	Air Conditioning Compressor
RR WPR	Rear Wiper/Washer
RADIO	Audio System
SEO B1	Mid Bussed Electrical Center, HomeLink, Rear Heated Seats
LO HDLP-LT	Headlamp Low Beam-Left

Fuses	Usage
BTSI	Brake Transmission Shift Interlock System
CRNK	Starting System
LO HDLP-RT	Headlamp Low Beam-Right
FOG LP	Not Used
FOG LP	Not Used
HORN	Horn Relay
W/S WASH	Windshield and Rear Window Washer Pump Relay
W/S WASH	Windshield and Rear Window Washer Pump
INFO	OnStar®
RADIO AMP	Radio Amplifier
RH HID	Not Used
HORN	Horn
EAP	Not Used
TREC	All-Wheel Drive Module
SBA	Not Used

Auxiliary Electric Cooling Fan Fuse Block



The auxiliary electric cooling fan fuse block is located in the engine compartment on the driver's side of the vehicle next to the underhood fuse block.

Lift the cover for access to the fuse/relay block.

Fuses	Usage
COOL/FAN	Cooling Fan
COOL/FAN	Cooling Fan Relay Fuse
COOL/FAN	Cooling Fan Fuse

Relays	Usage
COOL/FAN 1	Cooling Fan Relay 1
COOL/FAN 3	Cooling Fan Relay 3
COOL/FAN 2	Cooling Fan Relay 2

Capacities and Specifications

The following approximate capacities are given in English and metric conversions. See *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-13* for more information.

Application	Capacities	
	English	**Metric**
Air Conditioning Refrigerant Escalade Escalade ESV	See refrigerant label located in the engine compartment.	
Cooling System Capacity VORTEC™ 5300 V8 VORTEC™ 6000 H.O. V8	 17.2 qt 16.8 qt	 16.3 L 15.9 L
Crankcase Capacity	6.0 qt	5.7 L
Fuel Tank Capacity Escalade Escalade ESV	 26.0 gal 31.0 gal	 98.0 L 117.0 L
Wheel Nut Torque	140 ft lb	190 N•m
All capacities are approximate. When adding, be sure to fill to the approximate level, as recommended in this manual. Recheck fluid level after filling.		

Capacities and Specifications

Engine	VIN Code	Transmission	Spark Plug Gap
VORTEC™ 5300 V8	T	Automatic	0.040 inches (1.01 mm)
VORTEC™ 6000 H.O. V8	N	Automatic	0.040 inches (1.01 mm)

Section 6 Maintenance Schedule

Maintenance Schedule 6-2
Introduction 6-2
Maintenance Requirements 6-2
Your Vehicle and the Environment 6-2
Using Your Maintenance Schedule 6-2
Scheduled Maintenance 6-4
Additional Required Services 6-6
Maintenance Footnotes 6-7
Owner Checks and Services 6-9
At Each Fuel Fill 6-9
At Least Once a Month 6-10
At Least Once a Year 6-10
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 6-13
Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts 6-15
Maintenance Record 6-16

Maintenance Schedule

Introduction

Important: Keep engine oil at the proper level and change as recommended.

Have you purchased the GM Protection Plan? The Plan supplements your new vehicle warranties. See your Warranty and Owner Assistance booklet or your dealer for details.

Maintenance Requirements

Notice: **Maintenance intervals, checks, inspections, replacement parts and recommended fluids and lubricants as prescribed in this manual are necessary to keep your vehicle in good working condition. Any damage caused by failure to follow scheduled maintenance may not be covered by warranty.**

Your Vehicle and the Environment

Proper vehicle maintenance not only helps to keep your vehicle in good working condition, but also helps the environment. All recommended maintenance is important. Improper vehicle maintenance can even affect the quality of the air we breathe. Improper fluid levels or the wrong tire inflation can increase the level of emissions from your vehicle. To help protect our environment, and to keep your vehicle in good condition, be sure to maintain your vehicle properly.

Using Your Maintenance Schedule

We at General Motors want to help you keep your vehicle in good working condition. But we do not know exactly how you will drive it. You may drive very short distances only a few times a week. Or you may drive long distances all the time in very hot, dusty weather. You may use your vehicle in making deliveries. Or you may drive it to work, to do errands or in many other ways.

Because of all the different ways people use their vehicles, maintenance needs vary. You may need more frequent checks and replacements. So please read the following and note how you drive. If you have any questions on how to keep your vehicle in good condition, see your GM Goodwrench® dealer.

This schedule is for vehicles that:

- carry passengers and cargo within recommended limits. You will find these limits on the tire and loading information label. See *Loading Your Vehicle on page 4-47*.
- are driven on reasonable road surfaces within legal driving limits.
- are driven off-road in the recommended manner. See *Operating Your All-Wheel-Drive Vehicle Off Paved Roads on page 4-18*.
- use the recommended fuel. See *Gasoline Octane on page 5-5*.

The services in *Scheduled Maintenance on page 6-4* should be performed when indicated. See *Additional Required Services on page 6-6* and *Maintenance Footnotes on page 6-7* for further information.

⚠ CAUTION:

Performing maintenance work on a vehicle can be dangerous. In trying to do some jobs, you can be seriously injured. Do your own maintenance work only if you have the required know-how and the proper tools and equipment for the job. If you have any doubt, see your GM Goodwrench® dealer to have a qualified technician do the work.

Some maintenance services can be complex. So, unless you are technically qualified and have the necessary equipment, you should have your GM Goodwrench® dealer do these jobs.

When you go to your GM Goodwrench® dealer for your service needs, you will know that GM-trained and supported service technicians will perform the work using genuine GM parts.

If you want to purchase service information, see *Service Publications Ordering Information on page 7-13*.

Owner Checks and Services on page 6-9 tells you what should be checked, when to check it and what you can easily do to help keep your vehicle in good condition.

The proper replacement parts, fluids and lubricants to use are listed in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-13* and *Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts on page 6-15*. When your vehicle is serviced, make sure these are used. All parts should be replaced and all necessary repairs done before you or anyone else drives the vehicle. We recommend the use of genuine GM parts.

Scheduled Maintenance

When the CHANGE ENGINE OIL message comes on, it means that service is required for your vehicle. Have your vehicle serviced as soon as possible within the next 600 miles (1 000 km). It is possible that, if you are driving under the best conditions, the engine oil life system may not indicate that vehicle service is necessary for over a year. However, your engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and at this time the system must be reset. Your GM Goodwrench® dealer has GM-trained service technicians who will perform this work using genuine GM parts and reset the system.

If the engine oil life system is ever reset accidentally, you must service your vehicle within 3,000 miles (5 000 km) since your last service. Remember to reset the oil life system whenever the oil is changed. See *Engine Oil Life System on page 5-16* for information on the Engine Oil Life System and resetting the system.

When the CHANGE ENGINE OIL message appears, certain services, checks and inspections are required. Required services are described in the following for “Maintenance I” and “Maintenance II.” Generally, it is recommended that your first service be Maintenance I, your second service be Maintenance II and that you alternate Maintenance I and Maintenance II thereafter. However, in some cases, Maintenance II may be required more often.

Maintenance I — Use Maintenance I if the CHANGE ENGINE OIL message comes on within 10 months since the vehicle was purchased or Maintenance II was performed.

Maintenance II — Use Maintenance II if the previous service performed was Maintenance I. Always use Maintenance II whenever the message comes on 10 months or more since the last service or if the message has not come on at all for one year.

Scheduled Maintenance

Service	Maintenance I	Maintenance II
Change engine oil and filter. See *Engine Oil on page 5-13*. Reset oil life system. See *Engine Oil Life System on page 5-16*. *An Emission Control Service.*	•	•
Lubricate chassis components. *See footnote #.*	•	•
Visually check for any leaks or damage. *See footnote (j).*	•	•
Inspect engine air cleaner filter or change indicator (if equipped). If necessary, replace filter. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 5-18*. *An Emission Control Service. See footnotes † and (k).*		•
Rotate tires and check inflation pressures and wear. See *Tires on page 5-60*.	•	•
Inspect brake system. *See footnote (a).*	•	•
Check engine coolant and windshield washer fluid levels and add fluid as needed.	•	•
Perform any needed additional services. See “Additional Required Services” in this section.	•	•
Inspect suspension and steering components. *See footnote (b).*		•
Inspect engine cooling system. *See footnote (c).*		•
Inspect wiper blades. *See footnote (d).*		•
Inspect restraint system components. *See footnote (e).*		•
Lubricate body components. *See footnote (f).*		•
Check transmission fluid level and add fluid as needed.		•

Additional Required Services

The following services should be performed at the first maintenance service (I or II) after the indicated miles (kilometers) shown for each item.

Additional Required Services

Service and Miles (Kilometers)	25,000 (41 500)	50,000 (83 000)	75,000 (125 000)	100,000 (166 000)	125,000 (207 500)	150,000 (240 000)
Inspect fuel system for damage or leaks.	•	•	•	•	•	•
Inspect exhaust system for loose or damaged components.	•	•	•	•	•	•
Vehicles without a filter restriction indicator: Replace engine air cleaner filter. See *Engine Air Cleaner/Filter on page 5-18*. *An Emission Control Service.*		•		•		•
Change automatic transmission fluid and filter (severe service). *See footnote (h).*		•		•		•
Change automatic transmission fluid and filter (normal service).				•		
Inspect evaporative control system. *An Emission Control Service. See footnotes † and (g).*		•		•		•

Additional Required Services (cont'd)

Service and Miles (Kilometers)	25,000 (41 500)	50,000 (83 000)	75,000 (125 000)	100,000 (166 000)	125,000 (207 500)	150,000 (240 000)
Replace spark plugs and inspect spark plug wires. *An Emission Control Service.*				•		
Engine cooling system service (or every 5 years, whichever occurs first). *An Emission Control Service. See footnote (i).*						•
Inspect engine accessory drive belt. *An Emission Control Service.*						•

Maintenance Footnotes

† *The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency or the California Air Resources Board has determined that the failure to perform this maintenance item will not nullify the emission warranty or limit recall liability prior to the completion of the vehicle's useful life. We, however, urge that all recommended maintenance services be performed at the indicated intervals and the maintenance be recorded.*

Lubricate the front suspension, ball joints, steering linkage, transmission shift linkage and parking brake cable guides. Ball joints should not be lubricated unless their temperature is 10°F (-12°C) or higher, or they could be damaged.

(a) *Visually inspect brake lines and hoses for proper hook-up, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc. Inspect disc brake pads for wear and rotors for surface condition. Inspect other brake parts, including calipers, parking brake, etc.*

(b) *Visually inspect front and rear suspension and steering system for damaged, loose or missing parts, signs of wear or lack of lubrication. Inspect power steering lines and hoses for proper hook-up, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc. Visually check constant velocity joints, rubber boots and axle seals for leaks.*

(c) *Visually inspect hoses and have them replaced if they are cracked, swollen or deteriorated. Inspect all pipes, fittings and clamps; replace with genuine GM parts as needed. To help ensure proper operation, a pressure test of the cooling system and pressure cap and cleaning the outside of the radiator and air conditioning condenser is recommended at least once a year.*

(d) *Visually inspect wiper blades for wear or cracking. Replace blade inserts that appear worn or damaged or that streak or miss areas of the windshield.*

(e) *Make sure the safety belt reminder light and all your belts, buckles, latch plates, retractors and anchorages are working properly. Look for any other loose or damaged safety belt system parts. If you see anything that might keep a safety belt system from doing its job, have it repaired. Have any torn or frayed safety belts replaced. Also look for any opened or broken airbag coverings, and have them repaired or replaced. (The airbag system does not need regular maintenance.)*

(f) *Lubricate all key lock cylinders, hood latch assembly, secondary latch, pivots, spring anchor, release pawl, rear compartment hinges, outer tailgate handle pivot points, latch bolt, fuel door hinge and folding seat hardware. More frequent lubrication may be required when exposed to a corrosive environment. Applying silicone grease on weatherstrips with a clean cloth will make them last longer, seal better and not stick or squeak.*

(g) *Inspect system. Check all fuel and vapor lines and hoses for proper hook-up, routing and condition. Check that the purge valve works properly (if equipped). Replace as needed.*

(h) *Change automatic transmission fluid and filter if the vehicle is mainly driven under one or more of these conditions:*

- *In heavy city traffic where the outside temperature regularly reaches 90°F (32°C) or higher.*
- *In hilly or mountainous terrain.*
- *When doing frequent trailer towing.*
- *Uses such as found in taxi, police or delivery service.*

(i) *Drain, flush and refill cooling system. This service can be complex; you should have your dealer perform this service. See Engine Coolant on page 5-23 for what to use. Inspect hoses. Clean radiator, condenser, pressure cap and filler neck. Pressure test the cooling system and pressure cap.*

(j) *A fluid loss in any vehicle system could indicate a problem. Have the system inspected and repaired and the fluid level checked. Add fluid if needed.*

(k) *If you drive regularly under dusty conditions, inspect the filter at each engine oil change.*

Owner Checks and Services

These owner checks and services should be performed at the intervals specified to help ensure the safety, dependability and emission control performance of your vehicle. Your GM Goodwrench® dealer can assist you with these checks and services.

Be sure any necessary repairs are completed at once. Whenever any fluids or lubricants are added to your vehicle, make sure they are the proper ones, as shown in *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants on page 6-13*.

At Each Fuel Fill

It is important to perform these underhood checks at each fuel fill.

Engine Oil Level Check

Check the engine oil level and add the proper oil if necessary. See *Engine Oil on page 5-13* for further details.

Notice: **It is important to check your oil regularly and keep it at the proper level. Failure to keep your engine oil at the proper level can cause damage to your engine not covered by your warranty.**

Engine Coolant Level Check

Check the engine coolant level and add DEX-COOL® coolant mixture if necessary. See *Engine Coolant on page 5-23* for further details.

Windshield Washer Fluid Level Check

Check the windshield washer fluid level in the windshield washer tank and add the proper fluid if necessary.

At Least Once a Month

Tire Inflation Check

Visually inspect your tires and make sure tires are inflated to the correct pressures. Do not forget to check your spare tire. See *Tires on page 5-60* for further details. Check to make sure the spare tire is stored securely. Push, pull and then try to turn the spare tire. If it moves, tighten it. See *Changing a Flat Tire on page 5-79*.

At Least Once a Year

Starter Switch Check

⚠ CAUTION:

When you are doing this inspection, the vehicle could move suddenly. If the vehicle moves, you or others could be injured.

1. Before you start, be sure you have enough room around the vehicle.
2. Firmly apply both the parking brake and the regular brake. See *Parking Brake on page 2-25* if necessary.

   Do not use the accelerator pedal, and be ready to turn off the engine immediately if it starts.
3. Try to start the engine in each gear. The starter should work only in PARK (P) or NEUTRAL (N). If the starter works in any other position, contact your GM Goodwrench® dealer for service.

Automatic Transmission Shift Lock Control System Check

⚠ CAUTION:

When you are doing this inspection, the vehicle could move suddenly. If the vehicle moves, you or others could be injured.

1. Before you start, be sure you have enough room around the vehicle. It should be parked on a level surface.
2. Firmly apply the parking brake. See *Parking Brake on page 2-25* if necessary.

   Be ready to apply the regular brake immediately if the vehicle begins to move.
3. With the engine off, turn the ignition to RUN, but do not start the engine. Without applying the regular brake, try to move the shift lever out of PARK (P) with normal effort. If the shift lever moves out of PARK (P), contact your GM Goodwrench® dealer for service.

Ignition Transmission Lock Check

While parked, and with the parking brake set, try to turn the ignition to LOCK in each shift lever position.

- The ignition should turn to LOCK only when the shift lever is in PARK (P).
- The key should come out only in LOCK.

Contact your GM Goodwrench® dealer if service is required.

Parking Brake and Automatic Transmission Park (P) Mechanism Check

⚠ CAUTION:

When you are doing this check, your vehicle could begin to move. You or others could be injured and property could be damaged. Make sure there is room in front of your vehicle in case it begins to roll. Be ready to apply the regular brake at once should the vehicle begin to move.

Park on a fairly steep hill, with the vehicle facing downhill. Keeping your foot on the regular brake, set the parking brake.

- To check the parking brake's holding ability: With the engine running and transmission in NEUTRAL (N), slowly remove foot pressure from the regular brake pedal. Do this until the vehicle is held by the parking brake only.
- To check the PARK (P) mechanism's holding ability: With the engine running, shift to PARK (P). Then release the parking brake followed by the regular brake.

Contact your GM Goodwrench® dealer if service is required.

Underbody Flushing Service

At least every spring, use plain water to flush any corrosive materials from the underbody. Take care to clean thoroughly any areas where mud and other debris can collect.

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

Fluids and lubricants identified below by name, part number or specification may be obtained from your dealer.

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Engine Oil	Engine oil which meets GM Standard GM6094M and displays the American Petroleum Institute Certified for Gasoline Engines starburst symbol. GM Goodwrench® oil meets all the requirements for your vehicle. To determine the proper viscosity for your vehicle's engine, see *Engine Oil on page 5-13*.
Engine Coolant	50/50 mixture of clean, drinkable water and use only DEX-COOL® Coolant. See *Engine Coolant on page 5-23*.
Hydraulic Brake System	Delco Supreme 11 Brake Fluid or equivalent DOT-3 brake fluid.
Windshield Washer Solvent	GM Optikleen® Washer Solvent.

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Power Steering System	GM Power Steering Fluid (GM Part No. U.S. 89021184, in Canada 89021186).
Automatic Transmission	DEXRON®-III Automatic Transmission Fluid. Look for "Approved for the H-Specification" on the label.
Key Lock Cylinders	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 10953474).
Chassis Lubrication	Chassis Lubricant (GM Part No. U.S. 12377985, in Canada 88901242) or lubricant meeting requirements of NLGI #2, Category LB or GC-LB.
Front and Rear Axle	SAE 75W-90 Synthetic Axle Lubricant (GM Part No. U.S. 12378261, in Canada 10953455) meeting GM Specification 9986115.

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Transfer Case	DEXRON®-III Automatic Transmission Fluid. Look for “Approved for the H-Specification” on the label.
Front Axle Propshaft Spline or One-Piece Propshaft Spline (Two-Wheel Drive with Auto. Trans.)	Spline Lubricant, Special Lubricant (GM Part No. U.S. 12345879, in Canada 10953511) or lubricant meeting requirements of GM 9985830.
Hood Hinges	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 10953474).

Usage	Fluid/Lubricant
Body Door Hinge Pins, Tailgate Hinge and Linkage, Folding Seats and Fuel Door Hinge	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 10953474).
Outer Tailgate Handle Pivot Points	Multi-Purpose Lubricant, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12346241, in Canada 10953474).
Weatherstrip Conditioning	Dielectric Silicone Grease (GM Part No. U.S. 12345579, in Canada 992887).
Weatherstrip Squeaks	Synthetic Grease with Teflon, Superlube (GM Part No. U.S. 12371287, in Canada 10953437).

Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts

Replacement parts identified below by name, part number or specification can be obtained from your GM dealer.

Part	GM Part Number	ACDelco® Part Number
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter		
5300 V8	25313349	A1518C
5300 V8 (High Capacity) and 6000 V8	25313348	A1519C
Oil Filter	88984215	PF46
Spark Plugs	12571164	41-985
Wiper Blades		
Front – 22.0 inches (56.0 cm)	15153642	—
Rear – 14.0 inches (35.5 cm)	22121329	—

Maintenance Record

After the scheduled services are performed, record the date, odometer reading, who performed the service and the type of services performed in the boxes provided. See *Maintenance Requirements on page 6-2* in this section.
Any additional information from *Owner Checks and Services on page 6-9* can be added on the following record pages. Also, you should retain all maintenance receipts.

Maintenance Record

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Maintenance I or Maintenance II	Services Performed

Maintenance Record (cont'd)

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Maintenance I or Maintenance II	Services Performed

Maintenance Record (cont'd)

Date	Odometer Reading	Serviced By	Maintenance I or Maintenance II	Services Performed

Section 7 Customer Assistance and Information

Customer Assistance and Information 7-2
Customer Satisfaction Procedure 7-2
Online Owner Center 7-4
Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users 7-4
Customer Assistance Offices 7-4
GM Mobility Reimbursement Program 7-6
Roadside Service 7-6
Courtesy Transportation 7-8
Vehicle Data Collection and Event Data Recorders 7-10
Reporting Safety Defects 7-12
Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government 7-12
Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government 7-12
Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors 7-13
Service Publications Ordering Information 7-13

Customer Assistance and Information

Customer Satisfaction Procedure

Your satisfaction and goodwill are important to your dealer and to Cadillac. Normally, any concerns with the sales transaction or the operation of your vehicle will be resolved by your dealer's sales or service departments. Sometimes, however, despite the best intentions of all concerned, misunderstandings can occur. If your concern has not been resolved to your satisfaction, the following steps should be taken:

STEP ONE: Discuss your concern with a member of dealership management. Normally, concerns can be quickly resolved at that level. If the matter has already been reviewed with the sales, service or parts manager, contact the owner of the dealership or the general manager.

STEP TWO: If after contacting a member of dealership management, it appears your concern cannot be resolved by the dealership without further help, contact the Cadillac Customer Assistance Center, 24 hours a day, by calling 1-800-458-8006. In Canada, contact the Canadian Cadillac Customer Communication Centre by calling 1-888-446–2000.

We encourage you to call the toll-free number in order to give your inquiry prompt attention. Please have the following information available to give the Customer Assistance Representative:

- Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). This is available from the vehicle registration or title, or the plate at the top left of the instrument panel and visible through the windshield.
- Dealership name and location.
- Vehicle delivery date and present mileage.

When contacting Cadillac, please remember that your concern will likely be resolved at a dealer's facility. That is why we suggest you follow Step One first if you have a concern.

STEP THREE: Both General Motors and your dealer are committed to making sure you are completely satisfied with your new vehicle. However, if you continue to remain unsatisfied after following the procedure outlined in Steps One and Two, you should file with the BBB Auto Line Program to enforce any additional rights you may have. Canadian owners refer to your Warranty and Owner Assistance Information booklet for information on the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The BBB Auto Line Program is an out of court program administered by the Council of Better Business Bureaus to settle automotive disputes regarding vehicle repairs or the interpretation of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Although you may be required to resort to this informal dispute resolution program prior to filing a court action, use of the program is free of charge and your case will generally be heard within 40 days. If you do not agree with the decision given in your case, you may reject it and proceed with any other venue for relief available to you.

You may contact the BBB Auto Line Program using the toll-free telephone number or write them at the following address:

BBB Auto Line Program
Council of Better Business Bureaus, Inc.
4200 Wilson Boulevard
Suite 800
Arlington, VA 22203-1838

Telephone: 1-800-955-5100

This program is available in all 50 states and the District of Columbia. Eligibility is limited by vehicle age, mileage and other factors. General Motors reserves the right to change eligibility limitations and/or discontinue its participation in this program.

Online Owner Center

The Owner Center is a resource for your GM ownership needs. Specific vehicle information can be found in one place.

The Online Owner Center allows you to:

- Get e-mail service reminders.
- Access information about your specific vehicle, including tips and videos and an electronic version of this owner's manual (United States only).
- Keep track of your vehicle's service history and maintenance schedule.
- Find GM dealers for service nationwide.
- Receive special promotions and privileges only available to members (United States only).

Refer to the web for updated information.

To register your vehicle, visit www.MyGMLink.com (United States) or My GM Canada within www.gmcanada.com (Canada).

Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users

To assist customers who are deaf, hard of hearing, or speech-impaired and who use Text Telephones (TTYs), Cadillac has TTY equipment available at its Customer Assistance Center. Any TTY user can communicate with Cadillac by dialing: 1-800-833-CMCC (2622). (TTY users in Canada can dial 1-800-263-3830.)

Customer Assistance Offices

Cadillac encourages customers to call the toll-free number for assistance. If a U.S. customer wishes to write to Cadillac, the letter should be addressed to Cadillac's Customer Assistance Center.

United States — Customer Assistance

Cadillac Customer Assistance Center
Cadillac Motor Car Division
P.O. Box 33169
Detroit, MI 48232-5169

1-800-458-8006
1-800-833-2622 (For Text Telephone devices (TTYs)
Roadside Assistance: 1-800-882-1112
Fax Number: 313-381-0022

From Puerto Rico:
1-800-496-9992 (English)
1-800-496-9993 (Spanish)
Fax Number: 313-381-0022

From U.S. Virgin Islands:
1-800-496-9994
Fax Number: 313-381-0022

Canada — Customer Assistance

General Motors of Canada Limited
Canadian Cadillac Customer Communication Centre, 163-005
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

1-888-446-2000
1-800-263-3830 (For Text Telephone devices (TTYs)
Roadside Assistance: 1-800-882-1112

Overseas — Customer Assistance

Please contact the local General Motors Business Unit.

Mexico, Central America and Caribbean Islands/Countries (Except Puerto Rico and U.S. Virgin Islands) — Customer Assistance

General Motors de Mexico, S. de R.L. de C.V.
Customer Assistance Center
Paseo de la Reforma # 2740
Col. Lomas de Bezares
C.P. 11910, Mexico, D.F.
01-800-508-0000
Long Distance: 011-52-53 29 0 800

GM Mobility Reimbursement Program

This program, available to qualified applicants, can reimburse you up to $1,000 toward eligible aftermarket driver's or passenger's adaptive equipment you may require for your vehicle, such as hand controls and wheelchair/scooter lifts.

The offer is available for a limited period of time from the date of vehicle purchase/lease. For more details, or to determine your vehicle's eligibility, visit gmmobility.com or call the GM Mobility Assistance Center at 1-800-323-9935. Text telephone (TTY) users, call 1-800-833-9935.

GM of Canada also has a Mobility Program.
Call 1-800-GM-DRIVE (463-7483) for details.
TTY users call 1-800-263-3830.

Roadside Service

Cadillac's exceptional Roadside Service is more than an auto club or towing service. It provides every Cadillac owner with the advantage of contacting a Cadillac advisor and, where available, a Cadillac trained dealer technician who can provide on-site service.

Each technician travels with a specially equipped service vehicle complete with the necessary Cadillac parts and tools required to handle most roadside repairs.

Cadillac Roadside Service® can be reached by dialing 1-800-882-1112, 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. This service is provided at no charge for any warranty-covered situation and for a nominal charge if the Cadillac is no longer under warranty. Roadside Service is available only in the United States and Canada.

Cadillac Owner Privileges™

Roadside Service provides several Cadillac Owner Privileges™ at “no charge,” throughout your *Cadillac Warranty Period — 48 months/50,000 miles (80 000 km).*

Emergency Road Service is performed on site for the following situations:

- Towing Service
- Battery Jump Starting
- Lock Out Assistance
- Fuel Delivery
- Flat Tire Change (Covers change only)
- Trip Interruption — If your trip is interrupted due to a warranty failure, incidental expenses may be reimbursed during the 48 months/50,000 miles (80 000 km) warranty period. Items covered are hotel, meals, and rental car.

Roadside Service Availability

Wherever you drive in the United States or Canada, an advisor is available to assist you over the phone. A dealer technician, if available, can travel to your location within a 30 mile (50 km) radius of a participating Cadillac dealership. If beyond this radius, we will arrange to have your car towed to the nearest Cadillac dealership.

Reaching Roadside Service

Dial the toll-free Roadside Service number: 1-800-882-1112. A Roadside Service Advisor will assist you and request the following information:

- A description of the problem
- Name, home address, home telephone number
- Location of your Cadillac and number you are calling from
- The model year, Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), mileage, and date of delivery

Roadside Service for the Hearing or Speech Impaired

Roadside Service is prepared to assist owners who have hearing difficulties or are speech impaired. Cadillac has installed special telecommunication devices called Text Telephone (TTY) in the Roadside Service Center.

Any customer who has access to a (TTY) or a conventional teletypewriter can communicate with Cadillac by dialing from the United States or Canada 1-888-889-2438 — daily, 24 hours.

Courtesy Transportation

Cadillac has always exemplified quality and value in its offering of motor vehicles. To enhance your ownership experience, we and our participating dealers are proud to offer Courtesy Transportation, a customer support program for new vehicles.

The Courtesy Transportation program is offered to retail purchase/lease customers in conjunction with the Bumper-to-Bumper coverage provided by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. Several transportation options are available when warranty repairs are required. This will reduce your inconvenience during warranty repairs.

Scheduling Service Appointments

When your vehicle requires warranty service, you should contact your dealer and request an appointment. By scheduling a service appointment and advising your service consultant of your transportation needs, your dealer can help minimize your inconvenience.

If your vehicle cannot be scheduled into the service department immediately, keep driving it until it can be scheduled for service, unless, of course, the problem is safety-related. If it is, please call your dealership, let them know this, and ask for instructions.

If the dealer requests that you simply drop the vehicle off for service, you are urged to do so as early in the work day as possible to allow for same day repair.

Transportation Options

Warranty service can generally be completed while you wait. However, if you are unable to wait Cadillac helps minimize your inconvenience by providing several transportation options. Depending on the circumstances, your dealer can offer you one of the following:

Shuttle Service

Participating dealers can provide you with shuttle service to get you to your destination with minimal interruption of your daily schedule. This includes a one way or round trip shuttle service to a destination up to 10 miles from the dealership.

Public Transportation or Fuel Reimbursement

If your vehicle requires overnight warranty repairs, reimbursement of up to a five-day maximum may be available for the use of public transportation such as a taxi or bus. In addition, should you arrange transportation through a friend or relative, reimbursement for reasonable fuel expenses of up to a five-day maximum may be available. Claim amounts should reflect actual costs and be supported by original receipts.

Courtesy Rental Vehicle

Your GM dealer may arrange to provide you with a courtesy rental vehicle or reimburse you for a rental vehicle that you obtain if your vehicle is kept for a warranty repair. Reimbursement will be limited to a maximum of $40 a day and must be supported by receipts. This requires that you sign and complete a rental agreement and meet state, local and rental vehicle provider requirements. Requirements vary and may include minimum age requirements, insurance coverage, credit card, etc. You are responsible for fuel usage charges and may also be responsible for taxes, levies, usage fees, excessive mileage, or rental usage beyond the completion of the repair.

Generally it is not possible to provide a like-vehicle as a courtesy rental.

Additional Program Information

Courtesy Transportation is available during the Bumper-to-Bumper warranty coverage period, but it is not part of the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. A separate booklet entitled *Warranty and Owner Assistance Information* furnished with each new vehicle provides detailed warranty coverage information.

Courtesy Transportation is available only at participating dealers and all program options, such as shuttle service, may not be available at every dealer. Please contact your dealer for specific information about availability. All Courtesy Transportation arrangements will be administered by appropriate dealer personnel.

Canadian Vehicles: For warranty repairs during the Complete Vehicle Coverage period of the General Motors of Canada New Vehicle Limited Warranty, alternative transportation may be available under the Courtesy Transportation Program. Please consult your dealer for details.

General Motors reserves the right to unilaterally modify, change or discontinue Courtesy Transportation at any time and to resolve all questions of claim eligibility pursuant to the terms and conditions described herein at its sole discretion.

Vehicle Data Collection and Event Data Recorders

Your vehicle, like other modern motor vehicles, has a number of sophisticated computer systems that monitor and control several aspects of the vehicle's performance. Your vehicle uses on-board vehicle computers to monitor emission control components to optimize fuel economy, to monitor conditions for airbag deployment and, if so equipped, to provide anti-lock braking and to help the driver control the vehicle in difficult driving situations. Some information may be stored during regular operations to facilitate repair of detected malfunctions; other information is stored only in a crash event by computer systems, such as those commonly called event data recorders (EDR).

In a crash event, computer systems, such as the Airbag Sensing and Diagnostic Module (SDM) in your vehicle may record information about the condition of the vehicle and how it was operated, such as data related to engine speed, brake application, throttle position, vehicle speed, safety belt usage, airbag readiness, airbag performance, and the severity of a collision. If your vehicle is equipped with StabiliTrak®, steering performance, including yaw rate, steering wheel angle, and lateral acceleration, is also recorded. This information has been used to improve vehicle crash performance and may be used to improve crash performance of future vehicles and driving safety.

Unlike the data recorders on many airplanes, these on-board systems do not record sounds, such as conversation of vehicle occupants.

To read this information, special equipment is needed and access to the vehicle or the device that stores the data is required. GM will not access information about a crash event or share it with others other than:

- with the consent of the vehicle owner or, if the vehicle is leased, with the consent of the lessee,
- in response to an official request of police or similar government office,
- as part of GM's defense of litigation through the discovery process, or
- as required by law.

In addition, once GM collects or receives data, GM may:

- use the data for GM research needs,
- make it available for research where appropriate confidentiality is to be maintained and need is shown, or
- share summary data which is not tied to a specific vehicle with non-GM organizations for research purposes.

Others, such as law enforcement, may have access to the special equipment that can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the device that stores the data.

If your vehicle is equipped with OnStar®, please check the OnStar® subscription service agreement or manual for information on its operations and data collection.

Reporting Safety Defects

Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), in addition to notifying General Motors.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or General Motors.

To contact NHTSA, you may either call the Auto Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-800-424-9393 (or 366-0123 in the Washington, D.C. area) or write to:

NHTSA, U.S. Department of Transportation
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from the hotline.

Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government

If you live in Canada, and you believe that your vehicle has a safety defect, you should immediately notify Transport Canada, in addition to notifying General Motors of Canada Limited. You may write to:

Transport Canada
330 Sparks Street
Tower C
Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0N5

Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors

In addition to notifying NHTSA (or Transport Canada) in a situation like this, we certainly hope you will notify us. Please call us at 1-800-458-8006, or write:

Cadillac Customer Assistance Center
Cadillac Motor Car Division
P.O. Box 33169
Detroit, MI 48232-5169

In Canada, please call us at 1-888- 446-2000. Or, write:

Canadian Cadillac Customer Communication Centre, 163-005
General Motors of Canada Limited
1908 Colonel Sam Drive
Oshawa, Ontario L1H 8P7

Service Publications Ordering Information

Service Manuals

Service Manuals have the diagnosis and repair information on engines, transmission, axle suspension, brakes, electrical, steering, body, etc.

Transmission, Transaxle, Transfer Case Unit Repair Manual

This manual provides information on unit repair service procedures, adjustments, and specifications for GM transmissions, transaxles, and transfer cases.

Service Bulletins

Service Bulletins give technical service information needed to knowledgeably service General Motors cars and trucks. Each bulletin contains instructions to assist in the diagnosis and service of your vehicle.

In Canada, information pertaining to Product Service Bulletins can be obtained by contacting your General Motors dealer or by calling 1-800-GM-DRIVE (1-800-463-7483).

Owner's Information

Owner publications are written specifically for owners and intended to provide basic operational information about the vehicle. The owner's manual will include the Maintenance Schedule for all models.

In-Portfolio: Includes a Portfolio, Owner's Manual, and Warranty Booklet.

RETAIL SELL PRICE: $35.00

Without Portfolio: Owner's Manual only.

RETAIL SELL PRICE: $25.00

Current and Past Model Order Forms

Service Publications are available for current and past model GM vehicles. To request an order form, please specify year and model name of the vehicle.

ORDER TOLL FREE: 1-800-551-4123 Monday-Friday 8:00 AM - 6:00 PM Eastern Time

For Credit Card Orders Only (VISA-MasterCard-Discover), visit Helm, Inc. on the World Wide Web at: www.helminc.com

Or you can write to:

Helm, Incorporated
P.O. Box 07130
Detroit, MI 48207

Prices are subject to change without notice and without incurring obligation. Allow ample time for delivery.

Note to Canadian Customers: All listed prices are quoted in U.S. funds. Canadian residents are to make checks payable in U.S. funds.

A

Accessory Power Outlets 3-21
Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped
  Vehicle 1-86
Additives, Fuel 5-6
Add-On Electrical Equipment 5-108
Adjustable Throttle and Brake Pedal 2-20
Air Cleaner/Filter, Engine 5-18
Air Conditioning 3-22
Airbag
  Passenger Status Indicator 3-35
  Readiness Light 3-34
Airbag Sensing and Diagnostic Module (SDM) 7-10
Airbag System 1-72
  Adding Equipment to Your Airbag-Equipped
    Vehicle 1-86
  How Does an Airbag Restrain? 1-78
  Passenger Sensing System 1-80
  Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 1-85
  What Makes an Airbag Inflate? 1-78
  What Will You See After an Airbag Inflates? 1-79
  When Should an Airbag Inflate? 1-77
  Where Are the Airbags? 1-74
All-Wheel Drive 5-45
All-Wheel Drive (AWD) System 2-25
Analog Clock 3-22
Antenna, Diversity Antenna System 3-106
Antenna, XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System ... 3-106
Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) 4-7
Anti-Lock Brake, System Warning Light 3-39
Appearance Care 5-99
  Aluminum or Chrome-Plated Wheels 5-104
  Care of Safety Belts 5-102
  Chemical Paint Spotting 5-106
  Cleaning Exterior Lamps/Lenses 5-103
  Fabric/Carpet 5-99
  Finish Care 5-103
  Finish Damage 5-105
  Glass Surfaces 5-102
  Instrument Panel 5-101
  Interior Plastic Components 5-101
  Leather 5-101
  Sheet Metal Damage 5-105
  Speaker Covers 5-102
  Tires 5-105
  Underbody Maintenance 5-106
  Vehicle Care/Appearance Materials 5-106
  Vinyl 5-101
  Washing Your Vehicle 5-103
  Weatherstrips 5-102
  Windshield, Backglass, and Wiper Blades 5-104
  Wood Panels 5-101
Ashtrays 3-21
Audio System(s) 3-69
  Audio Steering Wheel Controls 3-102
  Care of Your Cassette Tape Player 3-104
  Care of Your CD and DVD Player 3-105
  Care of Your CD Player 3-105
  Care of Your CDs and DVDs 3-105

Audio System(s) (cont.)
CD Changer 3-99
Chime Level Adjustment 3-106
Diversity Antenna System 3-106
Navigation/Radio System 3-96
Radio with Cassette and CD 3-70
Rear Seat Audio (RSA) 3-97
Setting the Time 3-70
Theft-Deterrent Feature 3-102
Understanding Radio Reception 3-103
XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System 3-106
Automatic Headlamp System 3-15
Automatic Transmission
Fluid 5-20
Operation 2-22

B

Battery 5-40
Run-Down Protection 3-18
Before Leaving on a Long Trip 4-38
Bench Seat 1-19
Bench Seat Split (50/50) 1-13
Bench Seat, Split (60/40) 1-11
Brake
Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS) 4-7
Emergencies 4-8
Parking 2-25
System Warning Light 3-37
Brake (cont.)
Brake Pedal, Throttle 2-20
Brakes 5-36
Braking 4-6
Braking in Emergencies 4-8
Break-In, New Vehicle 2-18
Bucket Seats, Rear 1-25
Bulb Replacement 5-51
Front Turn Signal, Sidemarker and Daytime Running Lamps 5-56
Halogen Bulbs 5-52
Headlamp Aiming 5-48
Headlamps 5-52
High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting 5-51
Replacement Bulbs 5-58
Taillamps 5-57
Buying New Tires 5-74

C

California Fuel 5-6
Canadian Owners ii
Capacities and Specifications 5-119
Carbon Monoxide 2-13, 2-28, 4-41, 4-54
Care of
Safety Belts 5-102
Your Cassette Tape Player 3-104
Your CD and DVD Player 3-105
Your CD Player 3-105

Care of (cont.)
Your CDs and DVDs 3-105
Cargo Cover 2-44
CD Changer 3-99
Center Console Storage Area 2-42
Center Passenger Position, Safety Belts 1-41
Chains, Tire 5-78
Charging System Light 3-36
Check
Engine Light 3-42
Checking Things Under the Hood 5-10
Chemical Paint Spotting 5-106
Child Restraints
Child Restraint Systems 1-54
Infants and Young Children 1-50
Lower Anchorages and Top Tethers for Children (LATCH System) 1-62
Older Children 1-48
Securing a Child Restraint Designed for the LATCH System 1-64
Securing a Child Restraint in a Center Rear Seat Position 1-67
Securing a Child Restraint in a Rear Outside Seat Position 1-65
Securing a Child Restraint in the Right Front Seat Position 1-68
Top Strap 1-58
Top Strap Anchor Location 1-60
Where to Put the Restraint 1-57
Chime Level Adjustment 3-106
Cigarette Lighter 3-21
Cleaning
Aluminum or Chrome-Plated Wheels 5-104
Exterior Lamps/Lenses 5-103
Fabric/Carpet 5-99
Finish Care 5-103
Glass Surfaces 5-102
Instrument Panel 5-101
Interior Plastic Components 5-101
Leather 5-101
Speaker Covers 5-102
Tires 5-105
Underbody Maintenance 5-106
Vinyl 5-101
Washing Your Vehicle 5-103
Weatherstrips 5-102
Windshield, Backglass, and Wiper Blades 5-104
Wood Panels 5-101
Climate Control System
Dual Automatic 3-22
Outlet Adjustment 3-28
Rear 3-29
Clock 3-22
Comfort Guides, Rear Safety Belt 1-45
Content Theft-Deterrent 2-16
Control of a Vehicle 4-6
Convenience Net 2-43
Coolant
Engine Temperature Gage 3-40
Heater, Engine 2-21

Coolant (cont.)
Surge Tank Pressure Cap 5-26
Cooled Seats 1-5, 1-10
Cooling System 5-29
Cruise Control Lever 3-11
Cruise Control Light 3-47
Cupholder(s) 2-41
Customer Assistance Information
Courtesy Transportation 7-8
Customer Assistance for Text Telephone (TTY) Users 7-4
Customer Assistance Offices 7-4
Customer Satisfaction Procedure 7-2
GM Mobility Reimbursement Program 7-6
Reporting Safety Defects to General Motors 7-13
Reporting Safety Defects to the Canadian Government 7-12
Reporting Safety Defects to the United States Government 7-12
Roadside Service 7-6
Service Publications Ordering Information 7-13

D

Daytime Running Lamps 3-15
Defensive Driving 4-2
Delayed Locking 2-9
Diversity Antenna System 3-106
Doing Your Own Service Work 5-4
Dome Lamps 3-17
Door
Delayed Locking 2-9
Locks 2-8
Power Door Locks 2-9
Programmable Automatic Door Locks 2-10
Rear Door Security Locks 2-12
Driver
Position, Safety Belt 1-33
Driver Information Center (DIC) 3-49
DIC Operation and Displays 3-50
DIC Vehicle Customization 3-63
DIC Warnings and Messages 3-53

Driving
At Night 4-31
City 4-36
Defensive 4-2
Drunken 4-2
Freeway 4-37
Hill and Mountain Roads 4-39
In Rain and on Wet Roads 4-33
Recovery Hooks 4-46
Rocking Your Vehicle to Get it Out 4-46
Winter 4-41
Dual Automatic Climate Control System 3-22
DVD
Rear Seat Entertainment System 3-84

E

Electrical System
Add-On Equipment 5-108
Center Instrument Panel Fuse Block 5-112
Fuses and Circuit Breakers 5-109
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 5-109
Power Windows and Other Power Options 5-108
Underhood Fuse Block 5-113
Windshield Wiper Fuses 5-108
Engine
Air Cleaner/Filter 5-18
Battery 5-40
Check and Service Engine Soon Light 3-42
Engine (cont.)
Coolant 5-23
Coolant Heater 2-21
Coolant Temperature Gage 3-40
Engine Compartment Overview 5-12
Exhaust 2-28
Fan Noise 5-34
Oil 5-13
Overheated Protection Operating Mode 5-28
Overheating 5-26
Starting 2-19
Entry/Exit Lighting 3-17
Event Data Recorders (EDR) 7-10
Extender, Safety Belt 1-47
Exterior Lamps 3-14

F

Filter
Engine Air Cleaner 5-18
Finish Damage 5-105
Flash-to-Pass 3-9
Flat Tire 5-78
Flat Tire, Changing 5-79
Flat Tire, Storing 5-94
Fluid
Automatic Transmission 5-20
Power Steering 5-34
Windshield Washer 5-35

Fluid (cont.)
Fog Lamps 3-16
Front Axle 5-47
Fuel 5-5
Additives 5-6
California Fuel 5-6
Filling a Portable Fuel Container 5-10
Filling Your Tank 5-8
Fuels in Foreign Countries 5-7
Gage 3-48
Gasoline Octane 5-5
Gasoline Specifications 5-5
Low Warning Light 3-48
Fuses
Center Instrument Panel Fuse Block 5-112
Fuses and Circuit Breakers 5-109
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 5-109
Underhood Fuse Block 5-113
Windshield Wiper 5-108

G

Gage
Engine Coolant Temperature 3-40
Fuel 3-48
Oil Pressure 3-45
Speedometer 3-33
Tachometer 3-33
Transmission Temperature 3-41
Gage (cont.)
Voltmeter Gage 3-37
Garage Door Opener 2-37
Gasoline
Octane 5-5
Specifications 5-5
Glove Box 2-41
GM Mobility Reimbursement Program 7-6

H

Hazard Warning Flashers 3-6
Head Restraints 1-7
Headlamp
Aiming 5-48
Horizontal Aiming 5-49
Vertical Aiming 5-50
Headlamps 5-52
Automatic Headlamp System 3-15
Bulb Replacement 5-51
Daytime Running Lamps 3-15
Flash-to-Pass 3-9
Front Turn Signal, Sidemarker and Daytime Running Lamps 5-56
Halogen Bulbs 5-52
High Intensity Discharge (HID) Lighting 5-51
High/Low Beam Changer 3-8
On Reminder 3-15
Heated Seats 1-4, 1-5, 1-10

Heater 3-22
Highbeam On Light 3-47
Highway Hypnosis 4-39
Hill and Mountain Roads 4-39
HomeLink® Transmitter 2-37
HomeLink® Transmitter, Programming 2-37
Hood
  Checking Things Under 5-10
  Release 5-11
Horn 3-6
How to Use This Manual ii
How to Wear Safety Belts Properly 1-33

I

Ignition Positions 2-18
Infants and Young Children, Restraints 1-50
Inflation -- Tire Pressure 5-67
Instrument Panel
  Brightness 3-17
  Cluster 3-32
  Overview 3-4
  Storage Area 2-41

J

Jump Starting 5-41

K

Keyless Entry System 2-4
Keys 2-3

L

Labelling, Tire Sidewall 5-61
Lamps
  Battery Run-Down Protection 3-18
  Dome 3-17
  Exterior 3-14
  Fog 3-16
  Reading 3-18
LATCH System
  Child Restraints 1-62
  Securing a Child Restraint Designed for
    the LATCH System 1-64
Liftgate/Liftglass 2-13
Liftglass/Liftgate 2-13
Light
  Airbag Readiness 3-34
  Anti-Lock Brake System Warning 3-39
  Brake System Warning 3-37
  Charging System 3-36
  Cruise Control 3-47
  Highbeam On 3-47

Light (cont.)
Low Fuel Warning 3-48
Low Tire Pressure Warning Light 3-39
Malfunction Indicator 3-42
Passenger Airbag Status Indicator 3-35
Safety Belt Reminder 3-33
Security 3-46
Tow/Haul Mode 3-47
Traction Off 3-40
Lighting
Entry/Exit 3-17
Lockout Protection 2-12
Locks
Delayed Locking 2-9
Door 2-8
Lockout Protection 2-12
Power Door 2-9
Programmable Automatic Door Locks 2-10
Rear Door Security Locks 2-12
Loss of Control 4-17
Low Fuel Warning Light 3-48
Luggage Carrier 2-42
Lumbar
Power Controls 1-4

M

Maintenance Schedule
Additional Required Services 6-6
At Each Fuel Fill 6-9
At Least Once a Month 6-10
At Least Once a Year 6-10
Introduction 6-2
Maintenance Footnotes 6-7
Maintenance Record 6-16
Maintenance Requirements 6-2
Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts 6-15
Owner Checks and Services 6-9
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 6-13
Scheduled Maintenance 6-4
Using Your 6-2
Your Vehicle and the Environment 6-2
Malfunction Indicator Light 3-42
Memory Seat 2-46
Message
DIC Warnings and Messages 3-53
Mirrors
Automatic Dimming Rearview with OnStar®,
Compass and Temperature Display 2-30

Mirrors (cont.)
Outside Automatic Dimming Mirror with Curb View Assist 2-35
Outside Convex Mirror 2-34
Outside Heated Mirrors 2-34
Outside Power Mirrors 2-33
MyGMLink.com 7-4

N

Navigation/Radio System 3-96
New Vehicle Break-In 2-18
Normal Maintenance Replacement Parts 6-15

O

Odometer 3-33
Off-Road Recovery 4-15
Oil
Engine 5-13
Pressure Gage 3-45
Older Children, Restraints 1-48
Online Owner Center 7-4
OnStar® System 2-35
Operating Your All-Wheel-Drive Vehicle Off Paved Roads 4-18
Other Warning Devices 3-6
Outlet Adjustment 3-28
Outside
Outside (cont.)
Automatic Dimming Mirror with Curb View Assist 2-35
Convex Mirror 2-34
Heated Mirrors 2-34
Power Mirrors 2-33
Overheated Engine Protection Operating Mode ... 5-28
Owner Checks and Services 6-9
Owners, Canadian ii

P

Park Aid 3-18
Park (P)
Shifting Into 2-26
Shifting Out of 2-27
Parking
Assist 3-18
Brake 2-25
Over Things That Burn 2-28
Passenger Airbag Status Indicator 3-35
Passenger Sensing System 1-80
Passing 4-15
Passlock® 2-17
Power
Accessory Outlets 3-21
Door Locks 2-9
Electrical System 5-108
Lumbar Controls 1-4

Power (cont.)
Retained Accessory (RAP) 2-19
Seat 1-3
Steering Fluid 5-34
Windows 2-15
Programmable Automatic Door Locks 2-10
Programming the HomeLink® Transmitter 2-37

Q

Questions and Answers About Safety Belts 1-32

R

Radios 3-69
Care of Your Cassette Tape Player 3-104
Care of Your CD and DVD Player 3-105
Care of Your CD Player 3-105
Care of Your CDs and DVDs 3-105
CD Changer 3-99
Navigation/Radio System 3-96
Radio with Cassette and CD 3-70
Rear Seat Audio 3-97
Setting the Time 3-70
Theft-Deterrent 3-102
Understanding Reception 3-103
Reading Lamps 3-18
Rear Axle 5-46
Rear Climate Control System 3-29
Rear Door Security Locks 2-12
Rear Heated Seats 1-10
Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides 1-45
Rear Seat Armrest 2-43
Rear Seat Audio (RSA) 3-97
Rear Seat Entertainment System 3-84
Rear Seat Operation 1-8
Rear Seat Passengers, Safety Belts 1-42
Rearview Mirror, Automatic Dimming with
OnStar®, Compass and Temperature Display ... 2-30
Reclining Seatbacks 1-6
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 6-13
Recovery Hooks 4-46
Recreational Vehicle Towing 4-53
Remote Keyless Entry System 2-4
Remote Keyless Entry System, Operation 2-5
Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare
Tire 5-84
Removing the Spare Tire and Tools 5-80
Replacement Bulbs 5-58
Reporting Safety Defects
Canadian Government 7-12
General Motors 7-13
United States Government 7-12
Restraint System Check
Checking Your Restraint Systems 1-86
Replacing Restraint System Parts After a
Crash 1-87
Restraint Systems
Checking 1-86

Restraint Systems (cont.)
Replacing Parts 1-87
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) 2-19
Right Front Passenger Position, Safety Belts 1-41
Road Sensing Suspension 4-9
Roadside
Service 7-6
Rocking Your Vehicle to Get it Out 4-46
Running Your Engine While You Are Parked 2-29

S

Safety Belt
Reminder Light 3-33
Safety Belts
Care of 5-102
Center Passenger Position 1-41
Driver Position 1-33
How to Wear Safety Belts Properly 1-33
Questions and Answers About Safety Belts 1-32
Rear Safety Belt Comfort Guides for Children and Small Adults 1-45
Rear Seat Passengers 1-42
Right Front Passenger Position 1-41
Safety Belt Extender 1-47
Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy 1-40
Safety Belts Are for Everyone 1-28
Safety Warnings and Symbols iii
Scheduled Maintenance 6-4
Seats
50/50 Split Bench Seat 1-13
60/40 Split Bench Seat 1-11
Bench Seat 1-19
Bucket Seats, Rear 1-25
Head Restraints 1-7
Heated and Cooled Seats 1-5, 1-10
Heated Seats 1-4
Heated Seats, Rear 1-10
Memory 2-46
Power Lumbar 1-4
Power Seats 1-3
Rear Seat Operation 1-8
Reclining Seatbacks 1-6
Secondary Latch System 5-90
Securing a Child Restraint
Center Rear Seat Position 1-67
Designed for the LATCH System 1-64
Rear Outside Seat Position 1-65
Right Front Seat Position 1-68
Security Light 3-46
Service 5-3
Adding Equipment to the Outside of Your Vehicle 5-4
Doing Your Own Work 5-4
Engine Soon Light 3-42
Publications Ordering Information 7-13
Servicing Your Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 1-85
Setting the Time 3-70
Sheet Metal Damage 5-105

Shifting Into Park (P) 2-26
Shifting Out of Park (P) 2-27
Signals, Turn and Lane-Change 3-8
Spare Tire 5-98
  Installing 5-84
  Removing 5-80
  Storing 5-94
Specifications, Capacities 5-119
Speedometer 3-33
Split Bench Seat (50/50) 1-13
Split Bench Seat (60/40) 1-11
StabiliTrak® System 4-9
Starting Your Engine 2-19
Steering 4-13
Steering Wheel Controls, Audio 3-102
Steering Wheel, Tilt Wheel 3-7
Storage Areas
  Center Console Storage Area 2-42
  Convenience Net 2-43
  Cupholder(s) 2-41
  Glove Box 2-41
  Instrument Panel Storage Area 2-41
  Luggage Carrier 2-42
  Rear Seat Armrest 2-43
Stuck in Sand, Mud, Ice or Snow 4-45
Sun Visors 2-15
Sunroof 2-45

T

Tachometer 3-33
Taillamps 5-57
Theft-Deterrent, Radio 3-102
Theft-Deterrent Systems 2-16
  Content Theft-Deterrent 2-16
  Passlock® 2-17
Throttle, Adjustable 2-20
Tilt Wheel 3-7
Tires 5-60
  Aluminum or Chrome-Plated Wheels,
    Cleaning 5-104
  Buying New Tires 5-74
  Chains 5-78
  Changing a Flat Tire 5-79
  Cleaning 5-105
  If a Tire Goes Flat 5-78
  Inflation -- Tire Pressure 5-67
  Inspection and Rotation 5-71
  Installing the Spare Tire 5-84
  Pressure Monitor System 5-68
  Removing the Flat Tire 5-84
  Removing the Spare Tire and Tools 5-80
  Secondary Latch System 5-90
  Spare Tire 5-98

Tires (cont.)
Storing a Flat or Spare Tire and Tools 5-94
Tire Sidewall Labelling 5-61
Tire Terminology and Definitions 5-64
Uniform Tire Quality Grading 5-75
Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance 5-76
Wheel Replacement 5-76
When It Is Time for New Tires 5-73
Top Strap 1-58
Top Strap Anchor Location 1-60
Tow/Haul Mode 2-24
Tow/Haul Mode Light 3-47
Towing
Recreational Vehicle 4-53
Towing a Trailer 4-54
Your Vehicle 4-53
Traction
Off Light 3-40
Road Sensing Suspension 4-9
Stabilitrak® System 4-9
Trailer
Recommendations 4-54
Transmission
Fluid, Automatic 5-20
Temperature Gage 3-41
Transmission Operation, Automatic 2-22
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 3-8
Turn Signal/Multifunction Lever 3-7

U

Ultrasonic Rear Parking Assist (URPA) 3-18
Understanding Radio Reception 3-103
Uniform Tire Quality Grading 5-75

V

Vehicle
Control 4-6
Damage Warnings iv
Symbols iv
Vehicle Customization, DIC 3-63
Vehicle Data Collection and Event Data
Recorders 7-10
Vehicle Identification
Number (VIN) 5-107
Service Parts Identification Label 5-108
Vehicle Personalization
Memory Seat 2-46
Ventilation Adjustment 3-28
Visors 2-15
Voltmeter Gage 3-37

W

Warning Lights, Gages and Indicators 3-31
Warnings
DIC Warnings and Messages 3-53
Hazard Warning Flashers 3-6
Other Warning Devices 3-6
Safety and Symbols iii
Vehicle Damage iv
Wheels
Alignment and Tire Balance 5-76
Replacement 5-76
Where to Put the Restraint 1-57
Windows 2-14
Power 2-15
Windshield
Backglass, and Wiper Blades, Cleaning 5-104
Windshield Washer 3-10
Fluid 5-35
Windshield Wiper
Blade Replacement 5-59
Fuses 5-108
Windshield Wipers 3-9
Winter Driving 4-41

X

XM™ Satellite Radio Antenna System 3-106

Y

Your Vehicle and the Environment 6-2